

# Data Science Workshops

April 2020



# Contents

<b>Table of Contents</b>	<b>9</b>
Contributors . . . . .	9
<b>I General</b>	<b>11</b>
<b>1 Data Science Tools</b>	<b>13</b>
1.1 Tools for working with data . . . . .	13
1.2 The puzzle pieces . . . . .	14
1.3 Examples . . . . .	14
1.4 Data storage & retrieval . . . . .	15
1.5 Programming languages & statistics packages . . . . .	16
1.6 Creating reports . . . . .	26
1.7 Text editors & Integrated Development Environments . . . . .	26
1.8 Literate programming & notebooks . . . . .	28
1.9 Big data, annoying data, & computationally intensive methods . . . . .	28
1.10 Wrap up . . . . .	29
<b>II R</b>	<b>31</b>
<b>2 R Installation</b>	<b>33</b>
2.1 Troubleshooting session . . . . .	33
2.2 Materials . . . . .	34
2.3 Software . . . . .	34
2.4 Installing the <code>tidyverse</code> . . . . .	35

2.5	Installing <code>rmarkdown</code> (optional) . . . . .	37
2.6	Resources . . . . .	38
<b>3</b>	<b>R Introduction</b>	<b>39</b>
3.1	Setup . . . . .	39
3.2	R basics . . . . .	40
3.3	Manipulating data . . . . .	50
3.4	Plotting data . . . . .	58
3.5	Creating variables . . . . .	63
3.6	Aggregating variables . . . . .	68
3.7	Saving work . . . . .	72
3.8	Wrap-up . . . . .	73
<b>4</b>	<b>R Regression Models</b>	<b>75</b>
4.1	Setup . . . . .	75
4.2	Modeling workflow . . . . .	77
4.3	R modeling ecosystem . . . . .	77
4.4	Before fitting a model . . . . .	78
4.5	Models with continuous outcomes . . . . .	80
4.6	Interactions & factors . . . . .	95
4.7	Models with binary outcomes . . . . .	99
4.8	Multilevel modeling . . . . .	108
4.9	Wrap-up . . . . .	114
<b>5</b>	<b>R Graphics</b>	<b>117</b>
5.1	Setup . . . . .	117
5.2	Why <code>ggplot2</code> ? . . . . .	118
5.3	Geometric objects & aesthetics . . . . .	120
5.4	Statistical transformations . . . . .	137
5.5	Scales . . . . .	147
5.6	Faceting . . . . .	155
5.7	Themes . . . . .	157
5.8	Saving plots . . . . .	161
5.9	The #1 FAQ . . . . .	161
5.10	Wrap-up . . . . .	168

CONTENTS	5
<b>6 R Data Wrangling</b>	<b>169</b>
6.1 Setup . . . . .	169
6.2 Working with Excel worksheets . . . . .	172
6.3 Reading Excel data files . . . . .	180
6.4 Data cleanup . . . . .	182
6.5 Data organization & storage . . . . .	195
6.6 Complete code . . . . .	199
6.7 Wrap-up . . . . .	201
<b>III Python</b>	<b>203</b>
<b>7 Python Installation</b>	<b>205</b>
7.1 Troubleshooting session . . . . .	205
7.2 Materials . . . . .	206
7.3 Software . . . . .	206
7.4 Jupyter notebook interfaces . . . . .	207
7.5 Resources . . . . .	208
<b>8 Python Introduction</b>	<b>209</b>
8.1 Setup . . . . .	209
8.2 Python basics . . . . .	210
8.3 Using object methods & lists . . . . .	216
8.4 Iterating over collections of data . . . . .	226
8.5 Importing packages . . . . .	233
8.6 Wrap-up . . . . .	234
<b>9 Python Web-Scraping</b>	<b>237</b>
9.1 Setup . . . . .	237
9.2 Web scraping background . . . . .	238
9.3 Retrieve data in JSON format if you can . . . . .	239
9.4 Parsing HTML if you have to . . . . .	250
9.5 Scrapy: for large / complex projects . . . . .	260
9.6 Browser drivers: a last resort . . . . .	260
9.7 Wrap-up . . . . .	261

<b>IV Stata</b>	<b>263</b>
<b>10 Stata Introduction</b>	<b>265</b>
10.1 Setup . . . . .	265
10.2 Why stata? . . . . .	266
10.3 Reading data . . . . .	268
10.4 Statistics & graphs . . . . .	270
10.5 Basic data management . . . . .	272
10.6 Working on subsets . . . . .	273
10.7 Generating & replacing variables . . . . .	274
10.8 Exercise solutions . . . . .	276
10.9 Wrap-up . . . . .	278
<b>11 Stata Data Management</b>	<b>281</b>
11.1 Setup . . . . .	281
11.2 Opening Files . . . . .	282
11.3 Generating & replacing variables . . . . .	283
11.4 By processing . . . . .	287
11.5 Missing values . . . . .	288
11.6 Variable types . . . . .	290
11.7 Merging, appending, & joining . . . . .	293
11.8 Creating summarized data sets . . . . .	298
11.9 Exercise Solutions . . . . .	300
11.10 Wrap-up . . . . .	302
<b>12 Stata Modeling &amp; Graphing</b>	<b>303</b>
12.1 Setup . . . . .	303
12.2 Fitting models . . . . .	304
12.3 Simple regression . . . . .	305
12.4 Multiple Regression . . . . .	308
12.5 Interactions . . . . .	310
12.6 Exporting & saving results . . . . .	313
12.7 Graphing in Stata . . . . .	316
12.8 Univariate Graphics . . . . .	317

## CONTENTS

7

12.9 Bivariate Graphics . . . . .	322
12.10 Two-way Line Graphs . . . . .	326
12.11 Exporting Graphs . . . . .	329
12.12 Exercise Solutions . . . . .	329
12.13 Wrap-up . . . . .	330

Materials for the software workshops held at the Institute for Quantitative Social Science and Harvard Business School at Harvard University.



# Table of Contents

- Data Science Tools
- R Installation
- R Introduction
- R Regression Models
- R Graphics
- R Data Wrangling
- Python Installation
- Python Introduction
- Python Web-Scraping
- Stata Introduction
- Stata Data Management
- Stata Modeling & Graphing

## Contributors

The contents of these workshops are the result of a collaborative effort from members of the Data Science Services team at IQSS and the Research Computing Services team at HBS. The main contributors are: Ista Zahn, Steve Worthington, Bob Freeman, Jinjie Liu, Yihan Wang, and Victoria Liublinska.

These workshops are a work-in-progress, please provide feedback! Email: [help@iq.harvard.edu](mailto:help@iq.harvard.edu)



# **Part I**

# **General**



# Chapter 1

## Data Science Tools

### Topics

- Data science tool selection
- Data analysis pipelines
- Programming languages comparison
- Text editor and IDE comparison
- Tools for creating reports

### 1.1 Tools for working with data

Working with data effectively requires learning at least one programming or scripting language. You can get by without this, but it would be like trying to cook with only a butter knife; not recommended! Compared to using a menu-driven interface (e.g., SPSS or SAS) or a spreadsheet (e.g., Excel), using a programming language allows you to:

- reproduce results,
- correct errors and update output,
- reuse code,
- collaborate with others,
- automate repetitive tasks, and
- generate manuscripts, reports, and other documents from your code.

So, you need to learn a programming language for working with data, but which one should you learn? Since you'll be writing code you'll want to set up a comfortable environment for writing and editing that code. Which text editors are good for this? You'll probably also want to learn at least one markup language (e.g., LaTeX, Markdown) so that you can create reproducible manuscripts. What tools are good for this? These questions will guide our discussion, the goal of which is to help you decide which tools you should invest time in learning.

## 1.2 The puzzle pieces

As we've noted, working effectively with data requires using a number of tools.

### 1.2.1 Data analysis building blocks

The basic pieces are:

- a data storage and retrieval system,
- an editor for writing code,
- an interpreter or compiler for executing that code,
- a system for presenting results, and
- some “glue” to make all the pieces work together.

## 1.3 Examples

Before looking in detail at each of these building blocks we'll look at a few examples to get an intuitive feel for the basic elements.

### 1.3.1 Old-school example

In this example we're going to process data in a text file in a way that would be familiar to a statistician working forty years ago. Surprisingly, it's not much different from the way we would do it today. Programs come and go, but the basic ideas remain pretty much the same!

Specifically, we'll process the data in `1980_census.txt` by writing `fortran` code in the `vi` text editor and running it through the `fortran` compiler. Then we'll take the results and put them in to a `TeX` file, again using the `vi` editor to create the report. For “glue” we will use a terminal emulator running the bash shell. All of these tools were available in 1980, though some features have been added since that time.

OLD SCHOOL DEMO:

example	data storage	editor	program	report tool	glue
old school	ASCII text file	vi	fortran	TeX	Bourne (compatable) shell

### 1.3.2 Something old & something new

Next we're going to do the same basic process, this time using a modern text editor (**Atom**), a different programming language (**Python**), and a modern report generation system (**LaTeX** processed via **xelatex**). For the glue we're still going to use a shell.

OLD AND NEW DEMO:

example	data storage	editor	program	report tool	glue
old school	ASCII text file	vi	fortran	TeX	Bourne (compatable) shell
old and new	ASCII text file	Atom	python	LaTeX	Bash shell

### 1.3.3 A modern version

Finally, we'll produce the same report using modern tools. Remember, the process is basically the same: we're just using different tools.

MODERN DEMO:

example	data storage	editor	program	report tool	glue
old school	ASCII text file	vi	fortran	TeX	Bourne (compatable) shell
old and new	ASCII text file	Atom	python	LaTeX	Bash shell
modern	SQLite database	Rstudio	R	R Markdown	Rstudio

## 1.4 Data storage & retrieval

Data storage and retrieval is a fairly dry topic, so we won't spend too much time on it. There are roughly four types of technology for storing and retrieving data.

### 1.4.1 Text files

Storing data in text files (e.g., comma separated values, other delimited text formats) is simple and makes the data easy to access from just about any program. It is also good for archiving data since no specialized software is needed to read it. The main downsides are that retrieval is slow and often all-or-nothing, and the fact that storing metadata in plain text files is cumbersome.

### 1.4.2 Binary files

Many statistics packages and programming languages have a “native” binary data storage format. For example, Stata stores data in `.dta` files, and R stores data in `.rds` or `.Rdata` files. These storage formats usually more efficient than text files, and usually provide faster read/write access. They usually include a mechanism for storing metadata. The down side is that specialized software is required to read them (will Stata exist in 50 years? Are you sure?) and the ability to read them using other programs may be limited.

### 1.4.3 Databases

Storing data in a database requires more up-front planning and set up, but has several advantages. Databases provide fast selective retrieval and facilitate efficient storage and

flexible retrieval.

#### 1.4.4 Distributed file storage

Data that is too large to fit on a single hard drive may be stored and analyzed on a distributed file system or database such as the *Hadoop Distributed File System* or *Cassandra*. When working with data on this scale considerable infrastructure and specialized tools will be required.

### 1.5 Programming languages & statistics packages

There are tens of programs for statistics and data science available. Here we will focus only on the more popular programs that offer a wide range of features. Note that for specific applications a specialized program may be better, e.g., many people use Mplus for structural equation models and another program for everything else.

#### 1.5.1 Programming language features

Things we want a statistics program to do include:

- read/write data from/to a variety of data storage systems,
- manipulate data,
- perform statistical methods,
- visualize data and results,
- export results in a variety of formats,
- be easy to use,
- be well documented,
- have a large user community.

Note that this list is deceptively simple; each item may include a diversity of complicated features. For example, “read/write data from/to a variety of data storage systems” may include reading from databases, image files, .pdf files, .html and .xml files from a website, and any number of proprietary data storage formats.

#### 1.5.2 Program comparison

Program	Statistics	Visualization	Machine learning	Ease of use	Power/flexibility	Fun
Stata	Good	Servicable	Limited	Very easy	Low	Some
SPSS	OK	Servicable	Limited	Easy	Low	None
SAS	Good	Not great	Good	Moderate	Moderate	None
Matlab	Good	Good	Good	Moderate	Good	Some

Program	Statistics	Visualization	Machine learning	Ease of use	Power/flexibility	Fun
R	Excellent	Excellent	Good	Moderate	Excellent	Yes
Python	Good	Good	Excellent	Moderate	Excellent	Yes
Julia	OK	Excellent	Good	Hard	Excellent	Yes

### 1.5.3 Examples: Read data from a file & summarize

In this example we will compare the syntax for reading and summarizing data stored in a file.

- Stata

```
import delimited using "https://github.com/IQSS/dss-workshops/raw/master/R/Rgraphics/dataSets/EconistData.csv"
sum

set more off
"EconomistData.csv"
Picked up _JAVA_OPTIONS: -Dawt.useSystemAAFontSettings=gasp -Dswing.aatext=true -Dsun.java2d.opengl=on
(6 vars, 173 obs)
sum

Variable |      Obs       Mean    Std. Dev.      Min      Max
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
      v1 |     173        87    50.08493        1     173
country |      0
      hdirank |    173    95.28324    55.00767        1     187
       hdi |    173    .6580867    .1755888      .286     .943
       cpi |    173    4.052023    2.116782      1.5     9.5
-----+-----+
region |      0
```

- R

```
cpi <- read.csv("https://github.com/IQSS/dss-workshops/raw/master/R/Rgraphics/dataSets/EconomistData.csv")
summary(cpi)
```

X	Country	HDI.Rank	HDI
Min. : 1	Afghanistan: 1	Min. : 1.00	Min. : 0.2860
1st Qu.: 44	Albania : 1	1st Qu.: 47.00	1st Qu.: 0.5090
Median : 87	Algeria : 1	Median : 96.00	Median : 0.6980
Mean : 87	Angola : 1	Mean : 95.28	Mean : 0.6581
3rd Qu.: 130	Argentina : 1	3rd Qu.: 143.00	3rd Qu.: 0.7930
Max. : 173	Armenia : 1	Max. : 187.00	Max. : 0.9430

CPI	(Other) :167	Region
Min. :1.500	Americas :31	
1st Qu.:2.500	Asia Pacific :30	
Median :3.200	East EU Cemt Asia:18	
Mean :4.052	EU W. Europe :30	
3rd Qu.:5.100	MENA :18	
Max. :9.500	SSA :46	

- Matlab

```
tmpfile = websave(tempname(), 'https://github.com/IQSS/dss-workshops/raw/master/R/Rgraphics/data/cpi = readtable(tmpfile);
summary(cpi)
```

```
tmpfile = websave(tempname(), 'https://github.com/IQSS/dss-workshops/raw/master/R/Rgraphics/data/cpi = readtable(tmpfile);
summary(cpi)
```

Variables:

Var1: 173×1 cell array of character vectors

Country: 173×1 cell array of character vectors

HDI\_Rank: 173×1 double

Description: Original column heading: 'HDI.Rank'

Values:

Min	1
Median	96
Max	187

HDI: 173×1 double

Values:

Min	0.286
Median	0.698
Max	0.943

CPI: 173×1 double

Values:

Min	1.5
-----	-----

Median	3.2
Max	9.5

Region: 173×1 cell array of character vectors

'org\_babel\_eoe'

ans =

'org\_babel\_eoe'

- Python

```
import pandas as pd
cpi = pd.read_csv('https://github.com/IQSS/dss-workshops/raw/master/R/Rgraphics/dataSets/Economis.csv')
cpi.describe(include = 'all')
```

```
Python 3.6.2 (default, Jul 20 2017, 03:52:27)
[GCC 7.1.1 20170630] on linux
Type "help", "copyright", "credits" or "license" for more information.
      Unnamed: 0 Country      HDI.Rank        HDI        CPI Region
count    173.000000     173  173.000000  173.000000  173.000000    173
unique       NaN     173        NaN        NaN        NaN       6
top         NaN      Oman        NaN        NaN        NaN    SSA
freq        NaN        1        NaN        NaN        NaN      46
mean   87.000000      NaN  95.283237  0.658087  4.052023  NaN
std    50.084928      NaN  55.007670  0.175589  2.116782  NaN
min     1.000000      NaN  1.000000  0.286000  1.500000  NaN
25%    44.000000      NaN  47.000000  0.509000  2.500000  NaN
50%    87.000000      NaN  96.000000  0.698000  3.200000  NaN
75%   130.000000      NaN 143.000000  0.793000  5.100000  NaN
max   173.000000      NaN 187.000000  0.943000  9.500000  NaN
```

#### 1.5.4 Examples: Fit a linear regression

Fitting statistical models is pretty straight-forward in all popular programs.

- Stata

regress hdi cpi

regress hdi cpi

Source	SS	df	MS	Number of obs	=	173
Model	2.63475703	1	2.63475703	F(1, 171)	=	168.85
				Prob > F	=	0.0000

Residual	2.6682467	171	.015603782	R-squared =	0.4968
				Adj R-squared =	0.4939
Total	5.30300372	172	.030831417	Root MSE =	.12492
<hr/>					
hdi	Coef.	Std. Err.	t	P> t	[95% Conf. Interval]
cpi	.0584696	.0044996	12.99	0.000	.0495876 .0673515
_cons	.4211666	.0205577	20.49	0.000	.3805871 .4617462

- R

```
summary(lm(HDI ~ CPI, data = cpi))
```

Call:  
`lm(formula = HDI ~ CPI, data = cpi)`

Residuals:

Min	1Q	Median	3Q	Max
-0.28452	-0.08380	0.01372	0.09157	0.24104

Coefficients:

	Estimate	Std. Error	t value	Pr(> t )
(Intercept)	0.42117	0.02056	20.49	<2e-16 ***
CPI	0.05847	0.00450	12.99	<2e-16 ***

---

Signif. codes: 0 ‘\*\*\*’ 0.001 ‘\*\*’ 0.01 ‘\*’ 0.05 ‘.’ 0.1 ‘ ’ 1

Residual standard error: 0.1249 on 171 degrees of freedom  
Multiple R-squared: 0.4968, Adjusted R-squared: 0.4939  
F-statistic: 168.9 on 1 and 171 DF, p-value: < 2.2e-16

- Matlab

```
fitlm(cpi, 'HDI~CPI')
```

```
fitlm(cpi, 'HDI~CPI')
```

```
ans =
```

Linear regression model:  
HDI ~ 1 + CPI

Estimated Coefficients:

	Estimate	SE	tStat	pValue
	-----	-----	-----	-----
(Intercept)	0.42117	0.020558	20.487	6.7008e-48
CPI	0.05847	0.0044996	12.994	2.6908e-27

```
Number of observations: 173, Error degrees of freedom: 171  
Root Mean Squared Error: 0.125  
R-squared: 0.497, Adjusted R-Squared 0.494  
F-statistic vs. constant model: 169, p-value = 2.69e-27  
'org_babel_eoe'
```

ans =

'org\_babel\_eoe'

- Python

```
import statsmodels.formula.api as model
X = cpi[['CPI']]
Y = cpi[['HDI']]
model.OLS(Y, X).fit().summary()
```

```
<class 'statsmodels.iolib.summary.Summary'>
"""
```

OLS Regression Results						
Dep. Variable:	HDI	R-squared:				0.885
Model:	OLS	Adj. R-squared:				0.884
Method:	Least Squares	F-statistic:				1325.
Date:	Thu, 31 Aug 2017	Prob (F-statistic):				9.89e-83
Time:	23:16:45	Log-Likelihood:				8.1584
No. Observations:	173	AIC:				-14.32
Df Residuals:	172	BIC:				-11.16
Df Model:	1					
Covariance Type:	nonrobust					
=====						
	coef	std err	t	P> t	[0.025	0.975]
CPI	0.1402	0.004	36.401	0.000	0.133	0.148
=====						
Omnibus:		10.423	Durbin-Watson:			1.616
Prob(Omnibus):		0.005	Jarque-Bera (JB):			11.099
Skew:		-0.599	Prob(JB):			0.00389
Kurtosis:		2.674	Cond. No.			1.00

Warnings:

```
[1] Standard Errors assume that the covariance matrix of the errors is correctly specified.
"""

```

### 1.5.5 Examples: Extract links for .html file

Retrieving data from a website is a common task. Here we parse a simple web page containing links to files we wish to download.

- Stata

```
disp "Ha ha ha! No, you do not want to use Stata for this!"
```

```
disp "Ha ha ha! No, you do not want to use Stata for this!"
Ha ha ha! No, you do not want to use Stata for this!
```

- R

```
library(xml2)
index_page <- read_html("http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/")
all_anchors <- xml_find_all(index_page, "//a")
all_hrefs <- xml_attr(all_anchors, "href")
data_hrefs <- grep("\\.csv$", all_hrefs, value = TRUE)
data_links <- paste0("http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/", data_hrefs)
data_links
```

```
[1] "http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/boys_1996.csv"
[2] "http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/boys_1997.csv"
[3] "http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/boys_1998.csv"
[4] "http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/boys_1999.csv"
[5] "http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/boys_2000.csv"
[6] "http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/boys_2001.csv"
[7] "http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/boys_2002.csv"
[8] "http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/boys_2003.csv"
[9] "http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/boys_2004.csv"
[10] "http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/boys_2005.csv"
[11] "http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/boys_2006.csv"
[12] "http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/boys_2007.csv"
[13] "http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/boys_2008.csv"
[14] "http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/boys_2009.csv"
[15] "http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/boys_2010.csv"
[16] "http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/boys_2011.csv"
[17] "http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/boys_2012.csv"
[18] "http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/boys_2013.csv"
```

```
[19] "http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/boys_2014.csv"
[20] "http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/boys_2015.csv"
[21] "http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/girls_1996.csv"
[22] "http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/girls_1997.csv"
[23] "http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/girls_1998.csv"
[24] "http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/girls_1999.csv"
[25] "http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/girls_2000.csv"
[26] "http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/girls_2001.csv"
[27] "http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/girls_2002.csv"
[28] "http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/girls_2003.csv"
[29] "http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/girls_2004.csv"
[30] "http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/girls_2005.csv"
[31] "http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/girls_2006.csv"
[32] "http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/girls_2007.csv"
[33] "http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/girls_2008.csv"
[34] "http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/girls_2009.csv"
[35] "http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/girls_2010.csv"
[36] "http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/girls_2011.csv"
[37] "http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/girls_2012.csv"
[38] "http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/girls_2013.csv"
[39] "http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/girls_2014.csv"
[40] "http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/girls_2015.csv"
```

- Matlab

```
index_page = urlread('http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/');
all_hrefs = regexp(index_page, '<a href="(["]*\.\csv)">', 'tokens');
all_hrefs = [all_hrefs{:}]';
all_links = strcat('http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/', all_hrefs)

index_page = urlread('http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/');
all_hrefs = regexp(index_page, '<a href="(["]*\.\csv)">', 'tokens');
all_hrefs = [all_hrefs{:}]';
all_links = strcat('http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/', all_hrefs)

all_links =
40×1 cell array

'http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/boys_1996.csv'
'http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/boys_1997.csv'
'http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/boys_1998.csv'
'http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/boys_1999.csv'
'http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/boys_2000.csv'
'http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/boys_2001.csv'
'http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/boys_2002.csv'
'http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/boys_2003.csv'
```

```

'http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/boys_2004.csv'
'http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/boys_2005.csv'
'http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/boys_2006.csv'
'http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/boys_2007.csv'
'http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/boys_2008.csv'
'http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/boys_2009.csv'
'http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/boys_2010.csv'
'http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/boys_2011.csv'
'http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/boys_2012.csv'
'http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/boys_2013.csv'
'http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/boys_2014.csv'
'http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/boys_2015.csv'
'http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/girls_1996.csv'
'http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/girls_1997.csv'
'http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/girls_1998.csv'
'http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/girls_1999.csv'
'http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/girls_2000.csv'
'http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/girls_2001.csv'
'http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/girls_2002.csv'
'http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/girls_2003.csv'
'http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/girls_2004.csv'
'http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/girls_2005.csv'
'http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/girls_2006.csv'
'http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/girls_2007.csv'
'http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/girls_2008.csv'
'http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/girls_2009.csv'
'http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/girls_2010.csv'
'http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/girls_2011.csv'
'http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/girls_2012.csv'
'http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/girls_2013.csv'
'http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/girls_2014.csv'
'http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/girls_2015.csv'
'org_babel_eoe'

ans =
'org_babel_eoe'

• Python

from lxml import etree
import requests

index_text = requests.get('http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/').text
index_page = etree.HTML(index_text)
all_hrefs = [a.values() for a in index_page.findall("./a")]
data_links = ['http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/' +
    href[0] for href in all_hrefs if 'csv' in href[0]]
```

```
for link in data_links:  
    print(link)
```

```
http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/boys_1996.csv  
http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/boys_1997.csv  
http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/boys_1998.csv  
http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/boys_1999.csv  
http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/boys_2000.csv  
http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/boys_2001.csv  
http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/boys_2002.csv  
http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/boys_2003.csv  
http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/boys_2004.csv  
http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/boys_2005.csv  
http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/boys_2006.csv  
http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/boys_2007.csv  
http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/boys_2008.csv  
http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/boys_2009.csv  
http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/boys_2010.csv  
http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/boys_2011.csv  
http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/boys_2012.csv  
http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/boys_2013.csv  
http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/boys_2014.csv  
http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/boys_2015.csv  
http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/girls_1996.csv  
http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/girls_1997.csv  
http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/girls_1998.csv  
http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/girls_1999.csv  
http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/girls_2000.csv  
http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/girls_2001.csv  
http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/girls_2002.csv  
http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/girls_2003.csv  
http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/girls_2004.csv  
http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/girls_2005.csv  
http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/girls_2006.csv  
http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/girls_2007.csv  
http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/girls_2008.csv  
http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/girls_2009.csv  
http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/girls_2010.csv  
http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/girls_2011.csv  
http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/girls_2012.csv  
http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/girls_2013.csv  
http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/girls_2014.csv  
http://tutorials.iq.harvard.edu/example_data/baby_names/EW/girls_2015.csv
```

## 1.6 Creating reports

Once you've analyzed your data you'll most likely want to communicate your results. For short informal projects this might take the form of a blog post or an email to your colleagues. For larger more formal projects you'll likely want to prepare a substantial report or manuscript for disseminating your findings via a journal publication or other means. Other common means of reporting research findings include posters or slides for a conference talk.

Regardless of the type of report, you may choose to use either a *markup language* or a WYSIWYG application like Microsoft Word/Powerpoint or a desktop publishing application such as Adobe InDesign.

### 1.6.1 Markup languages

A markup language is a system for producing a formatted document from a text file using information by the markup. A major advantage of markup languages is that the formatting instructions can be easily generated by the program you use for analyzing your data.

Markup languages include *HTML*, *LaTeX*, *Markdown* and many others. *LaTeX* and *Markdown* are currently popular among data scientists, although others are used as well.

*Markdown* is easy to write and designed to be human-readable. It is newer and somewhat less feature-full compared to *LaTeX*. Its main advantage is simplicity. *LaTeX* is more verbose but provides for just about any feature you'll ever need.

MARKDOWN DEMO LATEX DEMO

### 1.6.2 Word processors

Modern word processors are largely just graphical user interfaces that write a markup language (usually XML) for you. They are commonly used for creating reports, but care must be taken when doing so.

If you use a word processor to produce your reports you should

- use the structured outline feature,
- link rather than embed external resources (figures, tables, etc.),
- use cross-referencing features, and
- use a bibliography management system.

WORD PROCESSOR DEMO

## 1.7 Text editors & Integrated Development Environments

A text editor edits text obviously. But that is not all! At a minimum, a text editor will also have a mechanism for reading and writing text files. Most text editors do much more than this.

An IDE provides tools for working with code, such as syntax highlighting, code completion, jump-to-definition, execute/compile, package management, refactoring, etc. Of course an IDE includes a text editor.

Editors and IDE's are not really separate categories; as you add features to a text editor it becomes more like an IDE, and a simple IDE may provide little more than a text editor. For example, Emacs is commonly referred to as a text editor, but it provides nearly every feature you would expect an IDE to have.

A more useful distinction is between language-specific editors/IDEs and general purpose editors/IDEs. The former are typically easier to set up since they come pre-configured for use with a specific language. General purpose editors/IDEs typically provide language support via *plugins* and may require extensive configuration for each language.

### 1.7.1 Language specific editors & IDEs

Editor	Features	Ease of use	Language
RStudio	Excellent	Easy	R
Spyder	Excellent	Easy	Python
Stata do file editor	OK	Easy	Stata
SPSS syntax editor	OK	Easy	SPSS

#### LANGUAGE SPECIFIC IDE DEMO

### 1.7.2 General purpose editors & IDEs

Editor	Features	Ease of use	Language support
Vim	Excellent	Hard	Good
Emacs	Excellent	Hard	Excellent
VS code	Excellent	Easy	Very good
Atom	Good	Moderate	Good
Eclipse	Excellent	Easy	Good
Sublime Text	Good	Easy	Good
Notepad++	OK	Easy	OK
Textmate	Good	Moderate	Good
Kate	OK	Easy	Good

#### GENERAL PURPOSE EDITOR DEMO

## 1.8 Literate programming & notebooks

In one of the Early demos we say an example of embedding R code in a markdown document. A closely related approach is to create a *notebook* that includes the prose of the report, the code used for the analysis, and the results produced by that code.

### 1.8.1 Literate programming

Literate programming is the practice of embedding computer code in a natural language document. For example, using *RMarkdown* we can embed R code in a report authored using Markdown. Python and Stata have their own versions of literate programming using Markdown.

### 1.8.2 Notebooks

Notebooks go one step farther, and include the output produced by the original program directly in the notebook. Examples include *Jupyter*, *Apache Zeppelin*, and *Emacs Org Mode*.

NOTEBOOKS DEMO

## 1.9 Big data, annoying data, & computationally intensive methods

Thus far we've discussed popular programming languages, data storage and retrieval options, text editors, and reporting technology. These are the basic building blocks I recommend using just about any time you find yourself working with data. There are times however when more is needed. For example, you may wish to use distributed computing for large or resource intensive computations.

### 1.9.1 Computing clusters at Harvard

Harvard provides a number of computing clusters, including Odyssey and the Research Computing Environment. Using these systems will be much easier if you know the basic tools well. After all, you're still going to need data storage/retrieval, you'll still need a text editor write code, and a programming language to write it in. My advice is to master these basics, and learn the rest as you need it.

## 1.10 Wrap up

### 1.10.1 Feedback

These workshops are a work-in-progress, please provide any feedback to: [help@iq.harvard.edu](mailto:help@iq.harvard.edu)

### 1.10.2 Resources

- IQSS
  - Workshops: <https://dss.iq.harvard.edu/workshop-materials>
  - Data Science Services: <https://dss.iq.harvard.edu/>
  - Research Computing Environment: <https://iqss.github.io/dss-rce/>
- HBS
  - Research Computing Services workshops: <https://training.rcs.hbs.org/workshops>
  - Other HBS RCS resources: <https://training.rcs.hbs.org/workshop-materials>
  - RCS consulting email: <mailto:research@hbs.edu>



## **Part II**

**R**



# Chapter 2

## R Installation

Your professional conduct is greatly appreciated. Out of respect to your fellow workshop attendees and instructors, please arrive at your workshop on time, having pre-installed all necessary software and materials. This will likely take **15-20 minutes**.

Before starting any of our R workshops, it is necessary to complete 4 tasks. Please make sure all these tasks are completed **before** you attend your workshop, as, depending on your internet speed, they may take a long time.

1. download and unzip **class materials**
2. download and install **R**
3. download and install **RStudio**
4. install the **tidyverse** suite of **R packages**



### 2.1 Troubleshooting session

We will hold a troubleshooting session during the 20 minutes prior to the start of the workshop. **If you are unable to complete all of the tasks, please stop by the training room during this session.** Once the workshop starts we will **NOT** be able to give you one-to-one assistance with troubleshooting installation problems. Likewise, if you arrive late, please do **NOT** expect one-to-one assistance for anything covered at the beginning of the workshop.

## 2.2 Materials

Download class materials for your workshop:

- R Introduction: <https://github.com/IQSS/dss-workshops/raw/master/R/Rintro.zip>
- R Regression Models: <https://github.com/IQSS/dss-workshops/raw/master/R/Rmodels.zip>
- R Graphics: <https://github.com/IQSS/dss-workshops/raw/master/R/Rgraphics.zip>
- R Data Wrangling: <https://github.com/IQSS/dss-workshops/raw/master/R/RDataWrangling.zip>

Extract materials from the zipped directory (Right-click -> Extract All on Windows, double-click on Mac) and move them to your desktop.

It will be useful when you view the above materials for you to see the different file extensions on your computer. Here are instructions for enabling this:

- Mac OS
- Windows OS

## 2.3 Software

You must install **both R and RStudio**; it is essential that you have these pre-installed so that we can start the workshop on time.

### Mac OS X:

- Install R by downloading and running this .pkg file from CRAN.
- Install the RStudio Desktop IDE by downloading and running this .dmg file.

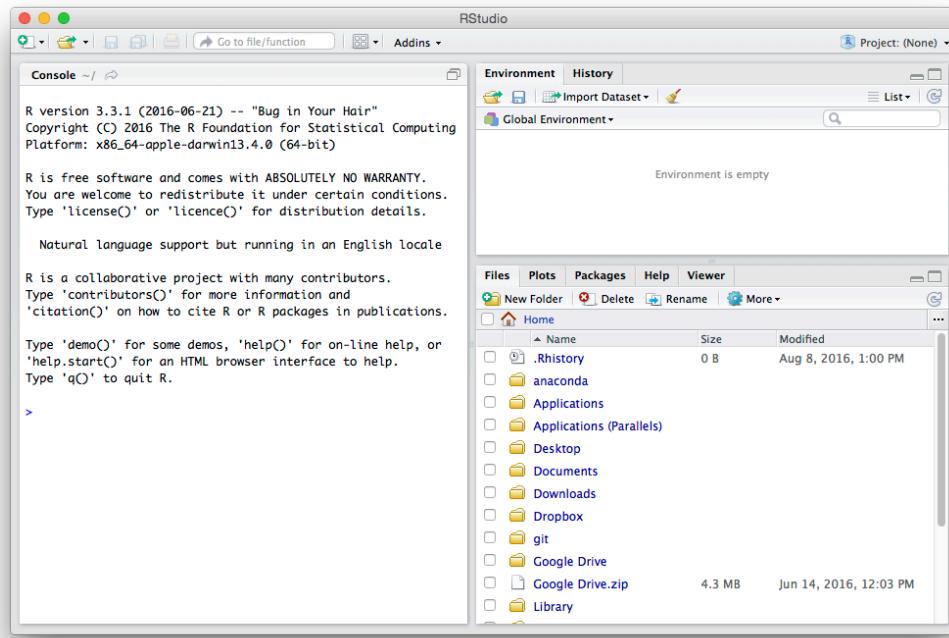
### Windows:

- Install R by downloading and running this .exe file from CRAN.
- Install the RStudio Desktop IDE by downloading and running this .exe file.

### Linux:

- Install R by downloading the binary files for your distribution from CRAN. Or you can use your package manager (e.g., for Debian/Ubuntu run sudo apt-get install r-base and for Fedora run sudo yum install R).
- Install the RStudio Desktop IDE for your distribution.

**Success?** After both installations, please launch RStudio. If you were successful with the installations, you should see a window similar to this (note that the R version reported may be newer):



If you are having any difficulties with the installations or your RStudio screen does not look like this one, please stop by the training room 20 minutes prior to the start of the workshop.

## 2.4 Installing the tidyverse

We will use the `tidyverse` suite of packages throughout these R workshops. Here are the steps for installation:

### 1. Launch an R session within RStudio

On Windows, click the start button and search for RStudio then click on it. On Mac, RStudio will be in your applications folder — double click on it.

### 2. Install tidyverse

In the left-hand side window (called the `console`), at the command prompt (`>`) type the following and press enter:

```
install.packages("tidyverse")
```

- If a choice appears that says something like:  
Do you want to install from sources the package which needs compilation?  
type No in the console.
- If you are running Windows OS, you may see a message that says:  
WARNING: Rtools is required to build R packages, but is not currently installed.  
You can safely ignore this warning.

A number of messages will scroll by, and there will be a long minute or two pause where nothing appears to happen (but the installation is actually occurring). At last, the output parade should end with a message like:

The downloaded source/binary packages are in....

### 3. Check that installation was successful

We can check that `tidyverse` has installed correctly by connecting it to our current R session. Type the following in the console at the command prompt (>) and press enter:

```
library(tidyverse)
```

Success? If so, you should see the following message in the console (note that the version numbers reported may be newer):

```
> library(tidyverse)
-- Attaching packages ━━━━━━━━━━━━━━━━ tidyverse 1.3.0 ━━
✓ ggplot2 3.2.1   ✓ purrr  0.3.3
✓ tibble  2.1.3   ✓ dplyr   0.8.3
✓ tidyr   1.0.0    ✓ stringr 1.4.0
✓ readr   1.3.1    ✓ forcats 0.4.0
-- Conflicts ━━━━━━━━━━━━━━━━ tidyverse_conflicts() ━━
✖ dplyr::filter() masks stats::filter()
✖ dplyr::lag()    masks stats::lag()
> |
```

If you do not see this message and encounter an error — try troubleshooting this in the next section.

#### 2.4.1 Troubleshooting `tidyverse` installation

Sometimes, you may run into problems installing the `tidyverse` suite of packages. Here are some commonly encountered errors and suggestions for how to fix them:

##### 1. `tidyverse` is not available for R version...

- Solution: make sure you have the latest versions of both R (3.6.2) and RStudio (1.2.5033).

**2. there is no package rlang...**

- Solution: run this command in the console at the command prompt (>):  
`install.packages("dplyr")`
- If a choice appears that says something like `Do you want to install from sources the package which needs compilation?`, type `No` in the console.

**3. there is no package broom...**

- Solution: run these commands in the console at the command prompt (>), **in this order:**  
`install.packages("backports")`  
`install.packages("zealot")`  
`install.packages("broom")`  
`install.packages("tidyverse")`
- If a choice appears at any point that says something like `Do you want to install from sources the package which needs compilation?`, type `No` in the console.

**4. rlang and/or broom still do not work**

- Solution: load individual packages that we need from the `tidyverse` suite, by running the following commands in the console at the command prompt (>):  
`library("dplyr")` # for the pipe function `%>%` and other SQL commands  
`library("ggplot2")` # modern data visualization  
`library("readr")` # to load CSV data files  
`library("tidyr")` # to reshape data frames with functions like `gather` or `spread`

If you have still not successfully installed `tidyverse` (or at least `dplyr`, `ggplot2`, `readr`, and `tidyr`) after troubleshooting, please stop by the training room 20 minutes before the start of your workshop so we can help you. Without these packages, you will not be able to follow along with the workshop materials.

## 2.5 Installing rmarkdown (optional)

We can also install the `rmarkdown` package, which will allow us to combine our text and code into a formatted document at the end of the workshops. Installing this package is optional and will not affect your ability to follow along with the workshop.

**1. Install rmarkdown**

At the command prompt in the console (>), please run the following command and press enter:

```
install.packages("rmarkdown")
```

then wait for the stream of messages to end with:

```
The downloaded source/binary packages are in....
```

## 2. Check that installation was successful

We can check that `rmarkdown` has installed correctly by connecting it to our R session. Type the following in the console at the command prompt (`>`) and press enter:

```
library(rmarkdown)
```

**Success?** If so, in the console you should see just a command prompt (`>`) with no messages to the right of it.

**If you see error or warning messages after the command prompt, the installation was not successful.**

If all the above steps have been completed successfully, you should now be ready to start your workshop. **If you ran into any problems, please stop by the training room 20 minutes before the start of your workshop.**

## 2.6 Resources

- IQSS
  - Workshops: <https://dss.iq.harvard.edu/workshop-materials>
  - Data Science Services: <https://dss.iq.harvard.edu/>
  - Research Computing Environment: <https://iqss.github.io/dss-rce/>
- HBS
  - Research Computing Services workshops: <https://training.rcs.hbs.org/workshops>
  - Other HBS RCS resources: <https://training.rcs.hbs.org/workshop-materials>
  - RCS consulting email: <mailto:research@hbs.edu>

# Chapter 3

## R Introduction

### Topics

- Functions
- Objects
- Assignment
- Finding help
- Importing packages
- Basic data manipulation
- Operations within groups of data
- Saving data

### 3.1 Setup

#### 3.1.1 Software and Materials

Follow the R Installation instructions and ensure that you can successfully start RStudio.

A handy base R cheat-sheet is available to help you look up and remember basic syntax. In addition, a data transformation cheat-sheet provides a convenient summary of data manipulation syntax.

#### 3.1.2 Class Structure

Informal - Ask questions at any time. Really!

Collaboration is encouraged - please spend a minute introducing yourself to your neighbors!

### 3.1.3 Prerequisites

This is an introductory R course:

- Assumes no prior knowledge of **how to use R**
- We do assume you know **why** you want to learn R. If you don't, and want a comparison of R to other statistical software, see our Data Science Tools workshop
- Relatively slow-paced

### 3.1.4 Goals

We will learn about the R language by analyzing a dataset of baby names. In particular, our goals are to learn about:

1. What R is and how it works
2. How we can interact with R
3. Foundations of the language (functions, objects, assignment)
4. The `tidyverse` package ecosystem for data science
5. Basic data manipulation useful for cleaning datasets
6. Working with grouped data
7. Aggregating data to create summaries
8. Saving objects, data, and scripts

This workshop will not cover how to iterate over collections of data, create your own functions, produce publication quality graphics, or fit models to data. These topics are covered in our R Data Wrangling, R Graphics, and R Regression Models workshops.

## 3.2 R basics

**GOAL:** To learn about the foundations of the R language. In particular:

1. What R is and how it works
2. R interfaces
3. Functions
4. Objects
5. Assignment
6. Getting help
7. `tidyverse` package ecosystem for data science

### 3.2.1 What is R?

- R is a free language and environment for statistical computing and graphics

- R is an interpreted language, not a compiled one, meaning that all commands typed on the keyboard are directly executed without requiring to build a complete program (this is like Python and unlike C, Fortran, Pascal, etc.)
- R has existed for over 25 years
- R is modular — most functionality is from add-on packages. So the language can be thought of as a *platform* for creating and running a large number of useful packages.

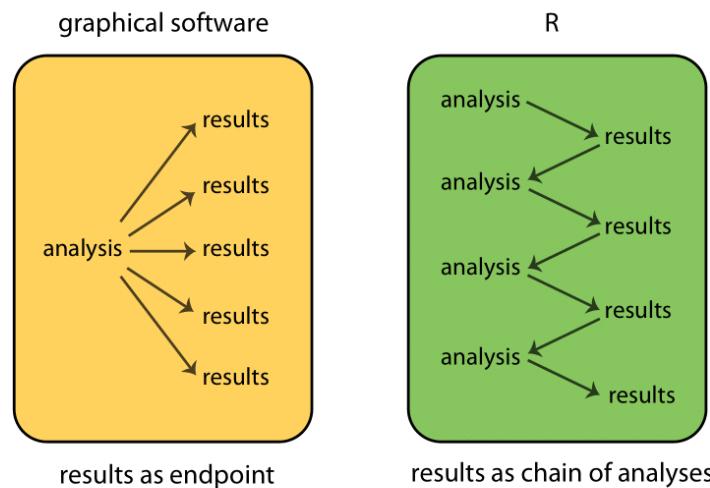
### 3.2.2 Why use R?

- The most popular software for data analysis
- Extremely flexible: can be used to manipulate, analyze, and visualize any kind of data
- Cutting edge statistical tools
- Publication quality graphics
- 15,000+ add on packages covering all aspects of statistics and machine learning
- Active community of users

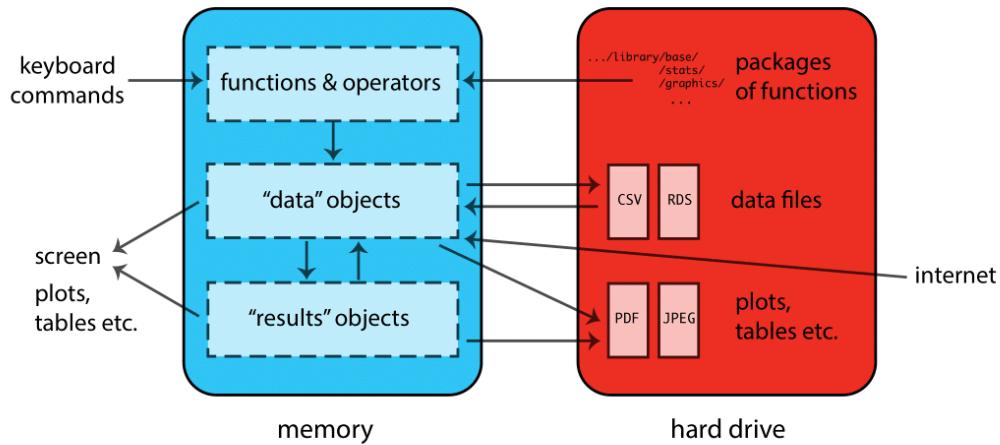
### 3.2.3 How does R work?

While graphical-based statistical software (e.g., SPSS, GraphPad) immediately display the results of an analysis, **R stores results in an object (a data structure)**, so that an analysis can be done with no result displayed. Such a feature is very useful, since a user can extract only that part of the results that is of interest and can pass results into further analyses.

For example, if you run a series of 20 regressions and want to compare the different regression coefficients, R can display only the estimated coefficients: thus the results may take a single line, whereas graphical-based software could open 20 results windows. In addition, these regression coefficients can be passed directly into further analyses — such as generating predictions.



When R is running, variables, data, functions, results, etc., are **stored in memory** on the computer in the form of **objects** that have a name. The user can **perform actions** on these objects with **operators** (arithmetic, logical, comparison, etc.) and **functions** (which are themselves objects). Here's a schematic of how this all fits together:



### 3.2.4 Interfaces

#### 3.2.4.1 Text editors, IDEs, & Notebooks

There are different ways of interacting with R. The two main ways are through:

1. **text editors or Integrated Development Environments (IDEs):** Text editors and IDEs are not really separate categories; as you add features to a text editor it becomes more like an IDE. Some editors/IDEs are language-specific while others are general purpose — typically providing language support via plugins. For these workshops we will use RStudio; it is a good R-specific IDE with many useful features. Here are a few popular editors/IDEs that can be used with R:

Editor / IDE	Features	Ease of use	Language support
RStudio	Excellent	Easy	R only
Jupyter Lab	Good	Easy	Excellent
VS code	Excellent	Easy	Very good
Atom	Good	Moderate	Good
Vim	Excellent	Hard	Good
Emacs	Excellent	Hard	Excellent

2. **Notebooks:** Web-based applications that allow you to create and share documents that contain live code, equations, visualizations, and narrative text. A popular note-

book is the open source Jupyter Notebook that has support for 40+ languages.

### 3.2.4.2 Source code & literate programming

There are also several different **formats** available for writing code in R. These basically boil down to a choice between:

1. **Source code:** the practice of writing code, and possibly comments, in a plain text document. In R this is done by writing code in a text file with a `.R` or `.r` extension. Writing source code has the great advantage of being simple. Source code is the format of choice if you intend to run your code as a complete script - for example, from the command line.
2. **Literate programming:** the practice of embedding computer code in a natural language document. In R this is often done using **Rmarkdown**, which involves embedding R code in a document that is authored using *Markdown* and which has a `.Rmd` extension. *Markdown* is easy to write and designed to be human-readable. Markdown is the format of choice if you intend to run your code interactively, by running small pieces of code and looking at each output. Many researchers use Markdown to write their journal papers, dissertations, and statistics/math class notes, since it is easy to convert into other formats later, such as HTML (for a webpage), MS Word, or PDF (via LaTeX).

Here are some resources for learning more about RMarkdown and RStudio:

- [https://rmarkdown.rstudio.com/authoring\\_quick\\_tour.html](https://rmarkdown.rstudio.com/authoring_quick_tour.html)
- <https://cran.r-project.org/web/packages/rmarkdown/vignettes/rmarkdown.html>
- [https://rstudio.com/wp-content/uploads/2019/01/Cheatsheets\\_2019.pdf](https://rstudio.com/wp-content/uploads/2019/01/Cheatsheets_2019.pdf)

### 3.2.5 Launch a session

Start RStudio and create a new project:

- On Windows click the start button and search for RStudio. On Mac RStudio will be in your applications folder.
- In RStudio go to **File** → **New Project**.
- Choose **Existing Directory** and browse to the workshop materials directory on your desktop.
- Choose **File** → **Open File** and select the file with the word “BLANK” in the name.

### 3.2.6 Exercise 0

The purpose of this exercise is to give you an opportunity to explore the interface provided by RStudio. You may not know how to do these things; that's fine! This is an opportunity to figure it out.

Also keep in mind that we are living in a golden age of tab completion. If you don't know the name of an R function, try guessing the first two or three letters and pressing TAB. If you guessed correctly the function you are looking for should appear in a pop up!

1. Try to get R to add 2 plus 2.

```
##
```

2. Try to calculate the square root of 10.

```
##
```

3. R includes extensive documentation, including a manual named “An introduction to R”. Use the RStudio help pane to locate this manual.

[Click for Exercise 0 Solution](#)

1. 2 plus 2

```
2 + 2
```

```
## [1] 4
```

```
# or
sum(2, 2)
```

```
## [1] 4
```

2. square root of 10

```
sqrt(10)
```

```
## [1] 3.162278
```

```
# or
10^(1/2)
```

```
## [1] 3.162278
```

3. Find “An Introduction to R”.

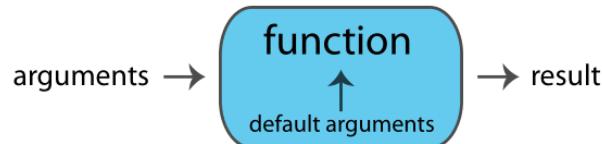
```
# Go to the main help page by running 'help.start()' or using the GUI
# menu, find and click on the link to "An Introduction to R".
```

### 3.2.7 Syntax rules

- R is case sensitive
- R ignores white space
- Variable names should start with a letter (A-Z and a-z) and can include letters, digits (0-9), dots (.), and underscores (\_)
- Comments can be inserted using a hash # symbol
- Functions must be written with parentheses, even if there is nothing within them; for example: `ls()`

### 3.2.8 Function calls

**Functions perform actions** — they take some input, called **arguments** and return some output (i.e., a result). Here's a schematic of how a function works:



The general form for calling R functions is

```
# FunctionName(arg.1 = value.1, arg.2 = value.2, ..., arg.n = value.n)
```

The arguments in a function can be objects (data, formulae, expressions, etc.), some of which could be defined by default in the function; these default values may be modified by the user by specifying options.

Arguments can be **matched by name**; unnamed arguments will be **matched by position**.

```
round(x = 2.34, digits = 1) # match by name
```

```
## [1] 2.3
```

```
round(2.34, 1) # match by position
```

```
## [1] 2.3
```

```
round(1, 2.34) # be careful when matching by position!
```

```
## [1] 1
```

```
round(digits = 1, x = 2.34) # matching by name is safer!
```

```
## [1] 2.3
```

### 3.2.9 Assignment

Objects (data structures) can be assigned names and used in subsequent operations:

- The `gets <-` operator (less than followed by a dash) is used to save objects
- The name on the left `gets` the object on the right

```
sqrt(10) # calculate square root of 10; result is not stored anywhere
```

```
## [1] 3.162278
```

```
x <- sqrt(10) # assign result to a variable named x
```

As mentioned in **Syntax rules** above, names should start with a letter, and contain only letters, numbers, underscores, and periods.

### 3.2.10 Asking for help

1. You can ask R for help using the `help` function, or the `?` shortcut.

```
help(help)
?help
?sqrt
```

The `help` function can be used to look up the documentation for a function, or to look up the documentation to a package. We can learn how to use the `stats` package by reading its documentation like this:

```
help(package = "stats")
```

2. If you know the name of the package you want to use, then Googling “R *package-name*” will often get you to the documentation. Packages are hosted on several different repositories, including:

- CRAN: [https://cran.r-project.org/web/packages/available\\_packages\\_by\\_name.html](https://cran.r-project.org/web/packages/available_packages_by_name.html)
- Bioconductor: <https://www.bioconductor.org/packages/release/bioc/>
- Github: <http://rpkgs.gepuro.net/>
- R-Forge: [https://r-forge.r-project.org/R/?group\\_id=1326](https://r-forge.r-project.org/R/?group_id=1326)

3. If you know the type of analysis you want to perform, you can Google “CRAN Task Views”, where there are curated lists of packages <https://cran.r-project.org/web/views/>. If you want to know which packages are popular, you can look at <https://r-pkg.org>.

### 3.2.11 Reading data

R has data reading functionality built-in – see e.g., `help(read.table)`. However, faster and more robust tools are available, and so to make things easier on ourselves we will use a *contributed package* instead. This requires that we learn a little bit about packages in R.

### 3.2.12 Installing & using packages

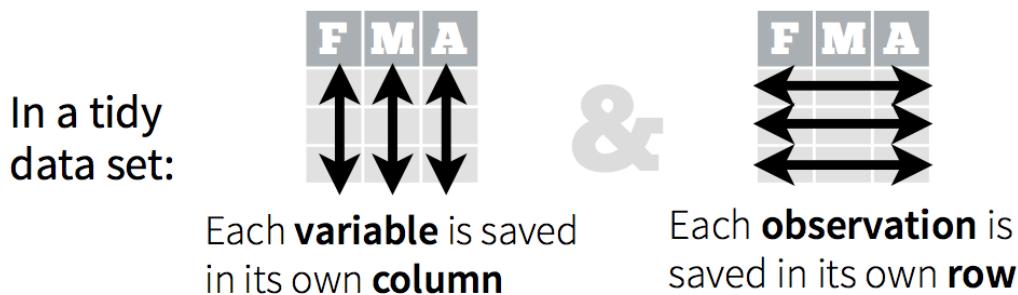
R is a modular environment that is extended by the use of **packages**. Packages are collections of functions or commands that are designed to perform specific tasks (e.g., fit a type of regression model). A large number of contributed packages are available (> 15,000).

Using an R package is a **two step process**:

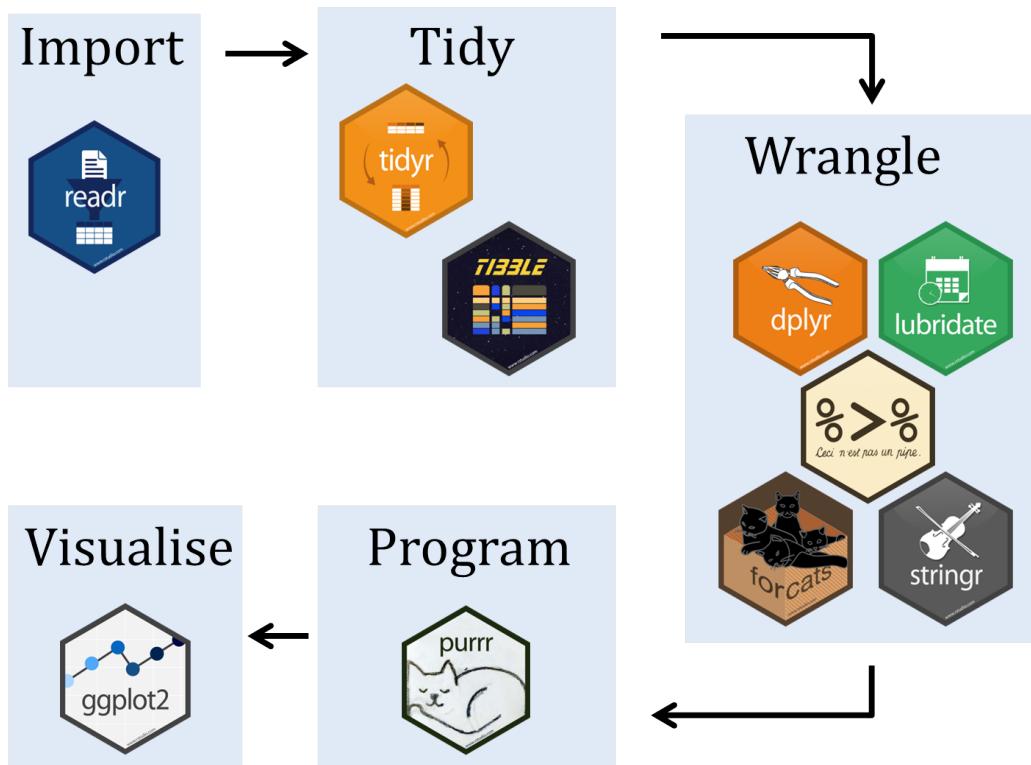
1. Install the package onto your computer using the `install.packages()` function. This only needs to be done the **first time** you use the package.
2. Load the package into your R session's search path using the `library()` function. This needs to be done **each time** you use the package.

### 3.2.13 The tidyverse

While R's built-in packages are powerful, in recent years there has been a big surge in well-designed *contributed packages* for R. In particular, a collection of R packages called **tidyverse** have been designed specifically for data science. All packages included in **tidyverse** share an underlying design philosophy, grammar, and data structures. This philosophy is rooted in the idea of “tidy data”:



A typical workflow for using **tidyverse** packages looks like this:



You should have already installed the `tidyverse` and `rmarkdown` packages onto your computer before the workshop — see R Installation. Now let's load these packages into the search path of our R session.

```
# Load packages tidyverse and rmarkdown using library() function
library(tidyverse)
library(rmarkdown)
```

### 3.2.14 Readers for common file types

To read data from a file, you have to know what kind of file it is. The table below lists functions from the `readr` package, which is part of `tidyverse`, that can import data from common plain-text formats.

Data Type	Function
comma separated	<code>read_csv()</code>
tab separated	<code>read_delim()</code>
other delimited formats	<code>read_table()</code>
fixed width	<code>read_fwf()</code>

**Note** You may notice that there exist similar functions in one of the built-in packages in

R called `utils`, e.g., `read.csv` and `read.delim`. These are legacy functions that tend to be slower and less robust than the `readr` functions. One way to tell them apart is that the faster more robust versions use underscores in their names (e.g., `read_csv`) while the older functions use dots (e.g., `read.csv`). Our advice is to use the more robust newer versions, i.e., the ones with underscores.

### 3.2.15 Baby names data

As an example project we will analyze the popularity of baby names in the US from 1960 through 2017. The data were retrieved from <https://catalog.data.gov/dataset/baby-names-from-social-security-card-applications-national-level-data>.

Here are the questions we will use R to answer:

1. In which year did your name (or another name) occur most frequently by `count`?
2. Which names have the highest popularity by `proportion` for each sex and year?
3. How does the percentage of babies given one of the top 10 names of the year change over time?

### 3.2.16 Exercise 1

#### Reading the baby names data

Make sure you have installed the `tidyverse` suite of packages and attached them with `library(tidyverse)`.

1. Open the `read_csv()` help page to determine how to use it to read in data.

```
##
```

2. Read the baby names data using the `read_csv()` function and assign the result with the name `baby_names`.

```
##
```

3. BONUS (optional): Save the `baby_names` data as a Stata data set `babynames.dta` and as an R data set `babynames.rds`.

```
##
```

Click for Exercise 1 Solution

1. Open the `read_csv()` help page to determine how to use it to read in data.

```
?read_csv
```

2. Read the baby names data using the `read_csv()` function and assign the result with the name `baby_names`.

```
baby_names <- read_csv("babyNames.csv")
```

3. BONUS (optional): Save the `baby_names` data as a Stata data set `babynames.dta` and as an R data set `babynames.rds`.

```
write_dta(baby_names, version = 15, path = "babynames.dta")
```

```
write_rds(baby_names, file = "babynames.rds")
```

### 3.3 Manipulating data

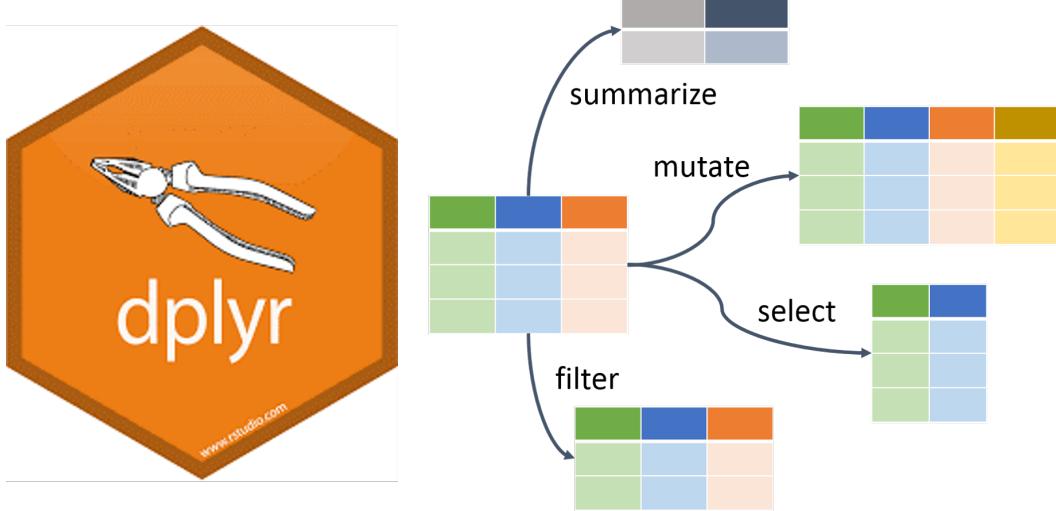
**GOAL:** To learn about basic data manipulation used to clean datasets. In particular:

1. Filtering data by choosing rows — using the `filter()` function
2. Selecting data by choosing columns — using the `select()` function
3. Arranging data by reordering rows — using the `arrange()` function
4. Using the pipe `%>%` operator to simplify sequential operations

In this section we will pull out specific names from the baby names data and examine changes in their popularity over time.

The `baby_names` object we created in the last exercise is a `data.frame`. There are many other data structures in R, but for now we'll focus on working with `data.frames`. Think of a `data.frame` as a spreadsheet. If you want to know more about R data structures, you can see a summary in our R Data Wrangling workshop.

R has decent data manipulation tools built-in – see e.g., `help(Extract)`. But, `tidyverse` packages often provide more intuitive syntax for accomplishing the same task. In particular, we will use the `dplyr` package from `tidyverse` to filter, select, and arrange data, as well as create new variables.



### 3.3.1 Filter, select, & arrange

One way to find the year in which your name was the most popular is to filter out just the rows corresponding to your name, and then arrange (sort) by Count.

To demonstrate these techniques we'll try to determine whether "Alex" or "Mark" was more popular in 1992. We start by filtering the data so that we keep only rows where Year is equal to 1992 and Name is either "Alex" or "Mark".

```
# Read in the baby names data if you haven't already
baby_names <- read_csv("babyNames.csv")

# Filter data, keeping "Alex" and "Mark" in year 1992, record in baby_names_alexmark
# Use logical operators to specify the filtering condition
baby_names_alexmark <- filter(baby_names,
                               Year == 1992 & (Name == "Alex" | Name == "Mark"))

print(baby_names_alexmark) # explicit printing

## # A tibble: 4 x 4
##   Name   Sex   Count Year
##   <chr> <chr> <dbl> <dbl>
## 1 Alex   Girls    366  1992
## 2 Mark   Girls     20  1992
## 3 Mark   Boys    8743  1992
## 4 Alex   Boys    7348  1992

baby_names_alexmark # implicit printing
```

```
## # A tibble: 4 x 4
##   Name   Sex   Count Year
##   <chr> <chr> <dbl> <dbl>
## 1 Alex  Girls    366  1992
## 2 Mark  Girls     20  1992
## 3 Mark  Boys    8743  1992
## 4 Alex  Boys    7348  1992
```

Notice that we can combine conditions using `&` (AND) and `|` (OR).

In this case it's pretty easy to see that "Mark" is more popular, but to make it even easier we can arrange the data so that the most popular name is listed first.

```
# Arrange the data by Count to see the most popular name first
arrange(baby_names_alexmark, Count)
```

```
## # A tibble: 4 x 4
##   Name   Sex   Count Year
##   <chr> <chr> <dbl> <dbl>
## 1 Mark  Girls    20  1992
## 2 Alex  Girls    366  1992
## 3 Alex  Boys    7348  1992
## 4 Mark  Boys    8743  1992
```

```
# Arrange the data in descending order instead
arrange(baby_names_alexmark, desc(Count))
```

```
## # A tibble: 4 x 4
##   Name   Sex   Count Year
##   <chr> <chr> <dbl> <dbl>
## 1 Mark  Boys    8743  1992
## 2 Alex  Boys    7348  1992
## 3 Alex  Girls    366  1992
## 4 Mark  Girls     20  1992
```

We can also use the `select()` function to subset the `data.frame` by columns. We can then assign the output to a new object. If we would just like to glance at the first few lines we can use the `head()` function:

```
# Select columns Name and Count and assign to a new object "baby_names_subset"
baby_names_subset <- select(baby_names, Name, Count)

# Use head() to glance at the first few lines
head(baby_names_subset)
```

```
## # A tibble: 6 x 2
```

```

##   Name  Count
##   <chr> <dbl>
## 1 Mary  51474
## 2 Susan 39200
## 3 Linda 37314
## 4 Karen 36376
## 5 Donna 34133
## 6 Lisa  33702

head(baby_names_subset, n = 6) # default is n = 6

## # A tibble: 6 x 2
##   Name  Count
##   <chr> <dbl>
## 1 Mary  51474
## 2 Susan 39200
## 3 Linda 37314
## 4 Karen 36376
## 5 Donna 34133
## 6 Lisa  33702

```

### 3.3.2 Logical & relational operators

In a previous example we used `==` to filter rows. Here's a table of other commonly used relational operators:

Operator	Meaning
<code>==</code>	equal to
<code>!=</code>	not equal to
<code>&gt;</code>	greater than
<code>&gt;=</code>	greater than or equal to
<code>&lt;</code>	less than
<code>&lt;=</code>	less than or equal to
<code>%in%</code>	contained in

These relational operators may be combined with logical operators, such as `&` (and) or `|` (or). For example, we can create a **vector** (a **container for a collection of values**) and demonstrate some ways to combine operators:

```

# Create a vector of consecutive values between 1 and 10
x <- 1:10 # a vector
x

## [1] 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10

```

```
# Which elements of x are above 7
x > 7 # a simple condition

## [1] FALSE FALSE FALSE FALSE FALSE FALSE TRUE TRUE TRUE

# Which elements of x are above 7 or below 3
x > 7 | x < 3 # two conditions combined

## [1] TRUE TRUE FALSE FALSE FALSE FALSE TRUE TRUE TRUE
```

If we want to match multiple elements from two vectors we can use the `%in%` operator:

```
# x %in% vector
# elements of x matching numbers 1, 5, or 10
x %in% c(1, 5, 10)

## [1] TRUE FALSE FALSE FALSE TRUE FALSE FALSE FALSE FALSE TRUE
```

Notice that logical and relational operators return **logical vectors** of TRUE and FALSE values. The logical vectors returned by these operators can themselves be operated on by functions:

```
# Count the number of elements of x above 7
x > 7

## [1] FALSE FALSE FALSE FALSE FALSE FALSE TRUE TRUE TRUE

sum(x > 7)

## [1] 3
```

### 3.3.3 Exercise 2.1

#### Peak popularity of your name

In this exercise you will discover the year your name reached its maximum popularity.

Read in the “`babyNames.csv`” file if you have not already done so, assigning the result to `baby_names`. Make sure you have installed the `tidyverse` suite of packages and attached them with `library(tidyverse)`.

1. Use `filter` to extract data for your name (or another name of your choice).

##

2. Arrange the data you produced in step 1 above by Count. In which year was the name most popular?

##

3. BONUS (optional): Filter the data to extract *only* the row containing the most popular boys name in 1999.

##

[Click for Exercise 2.1 Solution](#)

1. Use filter to extract data for your name (or another name of your choice).

```
baby_names_george <- filter(baby_names, Name == "George")
```

2. Arrange the data you produced in step 1 above by Count. In which year was the name most popular?

```
arrange(baby.names george, desc(Count))
```

```
## # A tibble: 97 x 4
##   Name   Sex  Count Year
##   <chr> <chr> <dbl> <dbl>
## 1 George Boys  14063  1960
## 2 George Boys  13638  1961
## 3 George Boys  12553  1962
## 4 George Boys  12084  1963
## 5 George Boys  11793  1964
## 6 George Boys  10683  1965
## 7 George Boys  9942   1966
## 8 George Boys  9702   1967
## 9 George Boys  9388   1968
## 10 George Boys 9203   1969
## # ... with 87 more rows
```

3. BONUS (optional): Filter the data to extract *only* the row containing the most popular boys name in 1999.

```
filter(baby_names_boys_1999, Count == max(Count))

## # A tibble: 1 x 4
##   Name   Sex   Count Year
##   <chr> <chr> <dbl> <dbl>
## 1 Jacob Boys  35361  1999
```

### 3.3.4 Pipe operator

There is one very special operator in R called a **pipe** operator that looks like this: `%>%`. It allows us to “chain” several function calls and, as each function returns an object, feed it into the next call in a single statement, without needing extra variables to store the intermediate results. The point of the pipe is to help you write code in a way that is easier to read and understand as we will see below.



There is no need to load any additional packages as the operator is made available via the `magrittr` package installed as part of `tidyverse`. Let’s rewrite the sequence of commands to output ordered counts for names “Alex” or “Mark”.

```
# Filter data keeping rows for "Alex" and "Mark" during year 1992, record in baby_names_alexmark
# Arrange the result in a descending order by Count
# unpiped version
baby_names_alexmark <- filter(baby_names, Year == 1992 & (Name == "Alex" | Name == "Mark"))
arrange(baby_names_alexmark, desc(Count))
```

```
## # A tibble: 4 x 4
##   Name   Sex   Count Year
##   <chr> <chr> <dbl> <dbl>
## 1 Mark  Boys  8743  1992
## 2 Alex  Boys  7348  1992
## 3 Alex  Girls  366   1992
## 4 Mark  Girls   20   1992

# piped version
baby_names %>%
  filter(Year == 1992 & (Name == "Alex" | Name == "Mark")) %>%
  arrange(desc(Count))
```

```
## # A tibble: 4 x 4
##   Name   Sex   Count Year
##   <chr> <chr> <dbl> <dbl>
## 1 Mark  Boys    8743  1992
## 2 Alex  Boys    7348  1992
## 3 Alex  Girls    366  1992
## 4 Mark  Girls     20  1992
```

Hint: try pronouncing “then” whenever you see `%>%`. Using pseudocode, we can see what the pipe is doing:

```
# unpiped version
filter(dataset, condition)

# piped version
dataset %>% filter(condition)

# what the pipe is doing
output_of_thing_on_left %>% becomes_input_of_thing_on_right
```

Advantages of using the pipe:

1. We can avoid creating intermediate variables, such as `baby_names_alexmark`
2. Less to type
3. Easier to read and follow the logic (especially avoiding using nested functions)

### 3.3.5 Exercise 2.2

Rewrite the solution to Exercise 2.1 using pipes. Remember that we were looking for the year your name reached its maximum popularity. For that, we filtered the data and then arranged by Count.

```
# Use filter to extract data for your name (or another name of your choice)
# Arrange the data by Count
```

Click for Exercise 2.2 Solution

Rewrite the solution to Exercise 2.1 using pipes.

```
# Use filter to extract data for your name (or another name of your choice)
# Arrange the data by Count
baby_names %>%
  filter(Name == "George") %>%
  arrange(desc(Count))
```

```
## # A tibble: 97 x 4
##   Name   Sex   Count Year
##   <chr> <chr> <dbl> <dbl>
## 1 George Boys 14063 1960
## 2 George Boys 13638 1961
## 3 George Boys 12553 1962
## 4 George Boys 12084 1963
## 5 George Boys 11793 1964
## 6 George Boys 10683 1965
## 7 George Boys 9942 1966
## 8 George Boys 9702 1967
## 9 George Boys 9388 1968
## 10 George Boys 9203 1969
## # ... with 87 more rows
```

## 3.4 Plotting data

**GOAL:** Plot baby name trends over time – using the `qplot()` function

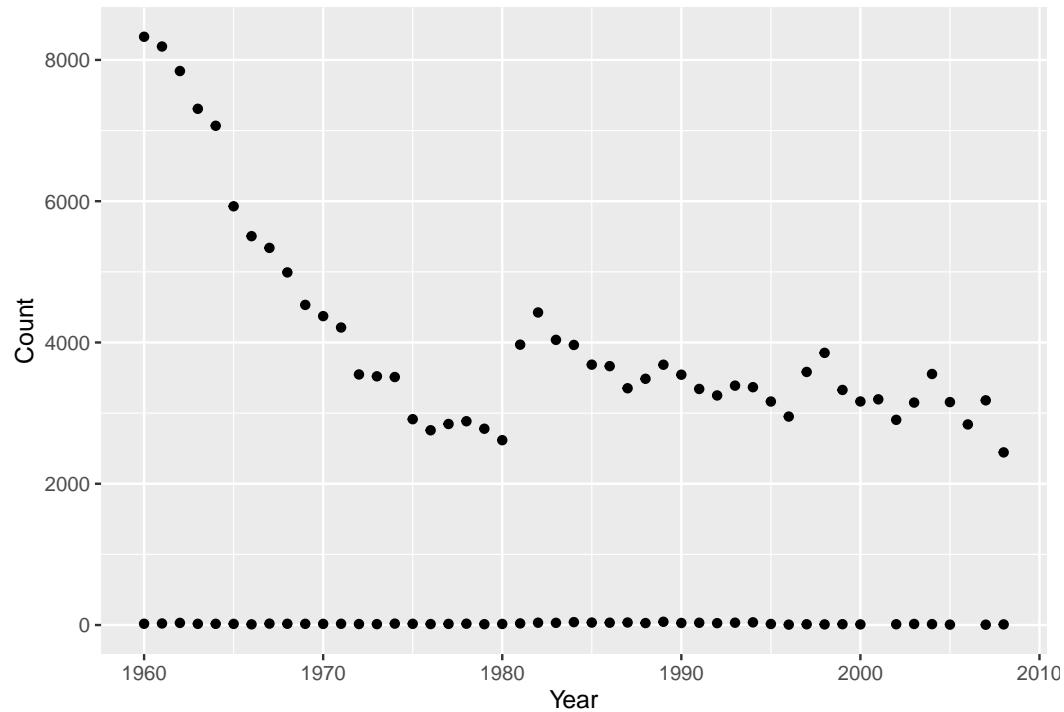
It can be difficult to spot trends when looking at summary tables. Plotting the data makes it easier to identify interesting patterns.

R has decent plotting tools built-in – see e.g., `help(plot)`. However, again, we will make use of a *contributed package* from `tidyverse` called `ggplot2`.

For quick and simple plots we can use the `qplot()` function from `ggplot2`. For example, we can plot the number of babies given the name “Diana” over time like this:

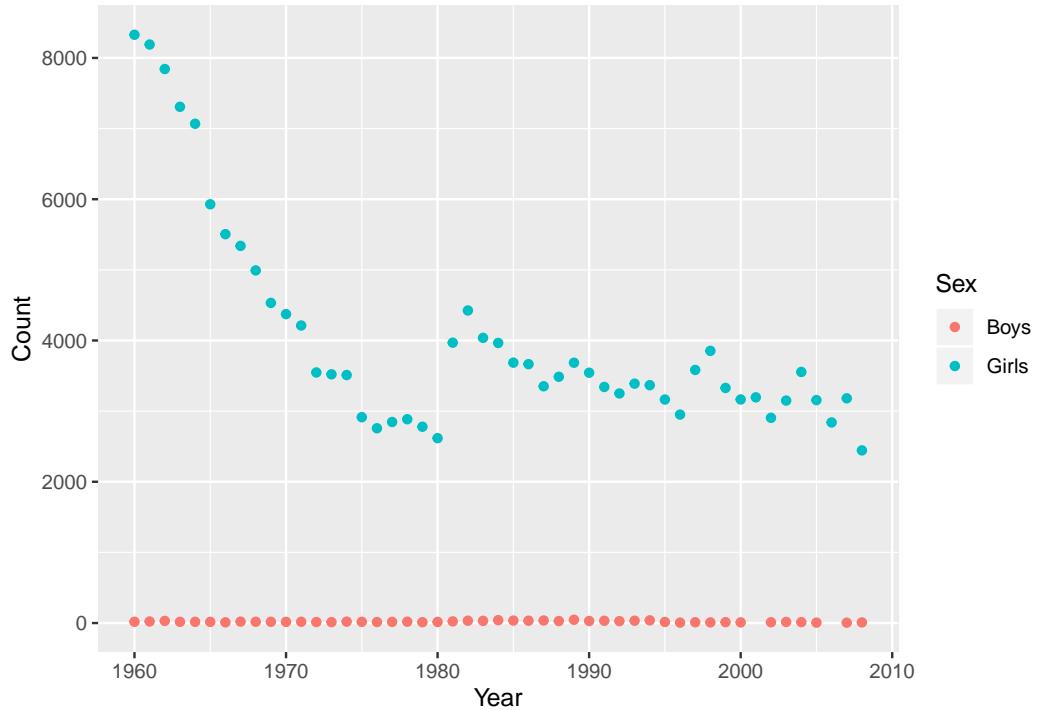
```
# Filter data keeping rows for name "Diana" and assign to a new object called baby_names_diana
baby_names_diana <- filter(baby_names, Name == "Diana")
```

```
# Use qplot() function to plot Counts (y) by Year (x)
qplot(x = Year, y = Count,
      data = baby_names_diana)
```



Interestingly, there are usually some gender-atypical names, even for very strongly gendered names like “Diana”. Splitting these trends out by `Sex` is very easy:

```
# Use qplot() function to plot Counts (y) by Year (x). Split trends by Sex using color.  
qplot(x = Year, y = Count, color = Sex,  
      data = baby_names_diana)
```



### 3.4.1 Exercise 3

**Plot peak popularity of your name**

1. Use `filter` to extract data for your name (same as previous exercise)

```
##
```

2. Plot the data you produced in step 1 above, with `Year` on the x-axis and `Count` on the y-axis.

```
##
```

3. Adjust the plot so that it shows boys and girls in different colors.

```
##
```

4. BONUS (Optional): Adjust the plot to use lines instead of points.

```
##
```

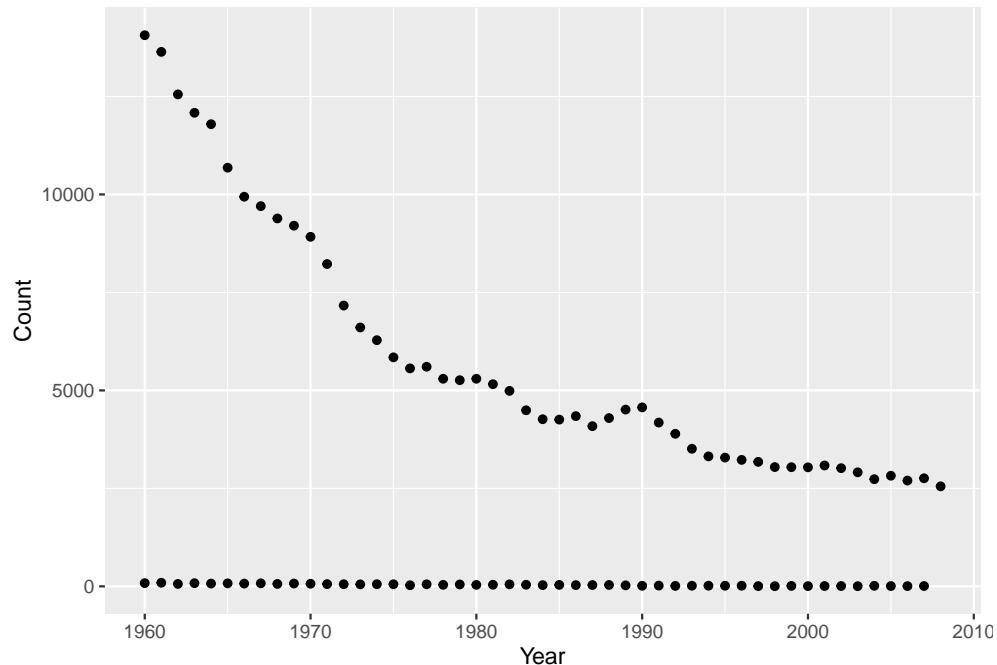
[Click for Exercise 3 Solution](#)

1. Use `filter()` to extract data for your name (same as previous exercise).

```
baby_names_george <- filter(baby_names, Name == "George")
```

2. Plot the data you produced in step 1 above, with `Year` on the x-axis and `Count` on the y-axis.

```
qplot(x = Year, y = Count, data = baby_names_george)
```



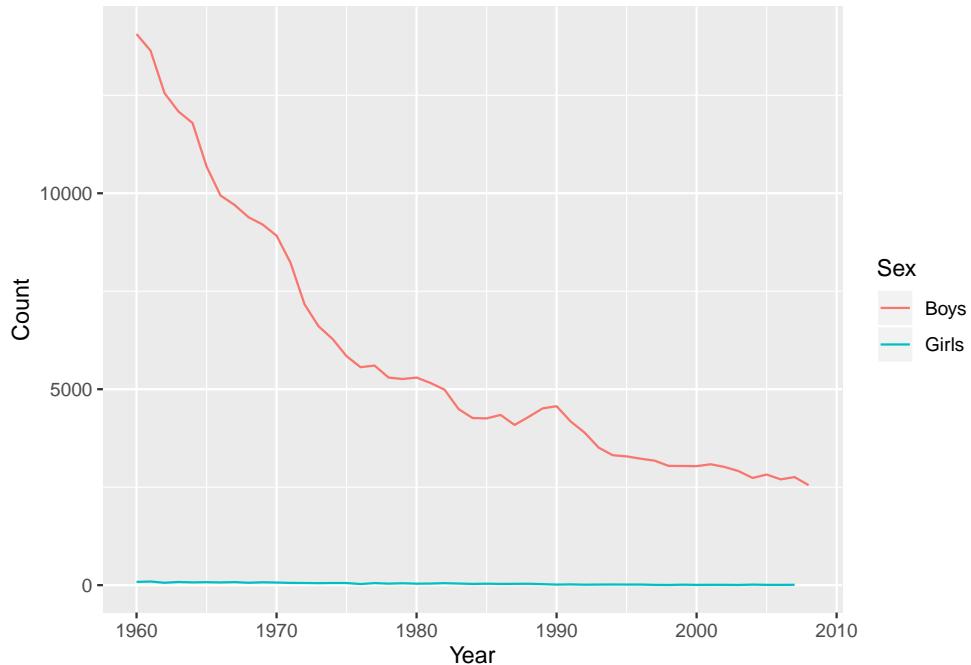
3. Adjust the plot so that it shows boys and girls in different colors.

```
qplot(x = Year, y = Count, color = Sex, data = baby_names_george)
```



4. BONUS (Optional): Adjust the plot to use lines instead of points.

```
qplot(x = Year, y = Count, color = Sex, data = baby_names_george, geom = "line")
```



## 3.5 Creating variables

**GOAL:** To learn how to create new variables with and without grouped data.  
In particular:

1. Creating new variables (columns) — using the `mutate()` function
2. Creating new variables within groups — by combining the `mutate()` and `group_by()` functions
3. Recode existing variables — by combining the `mutate()` and `case_when()` functions

We want to use these skills to find out which names have been the most popular.

### 3.5.1 Create or modify columns

So far we've used `Count` as a measure of popularity. A better approach is to use proportion to avoid confounding popularity with the number of babies born in a given year.

The `mutate()` function makes it easy to add or modify the columns of a `data.frame`. For example, we can use it to rescale the count of each name in each year:

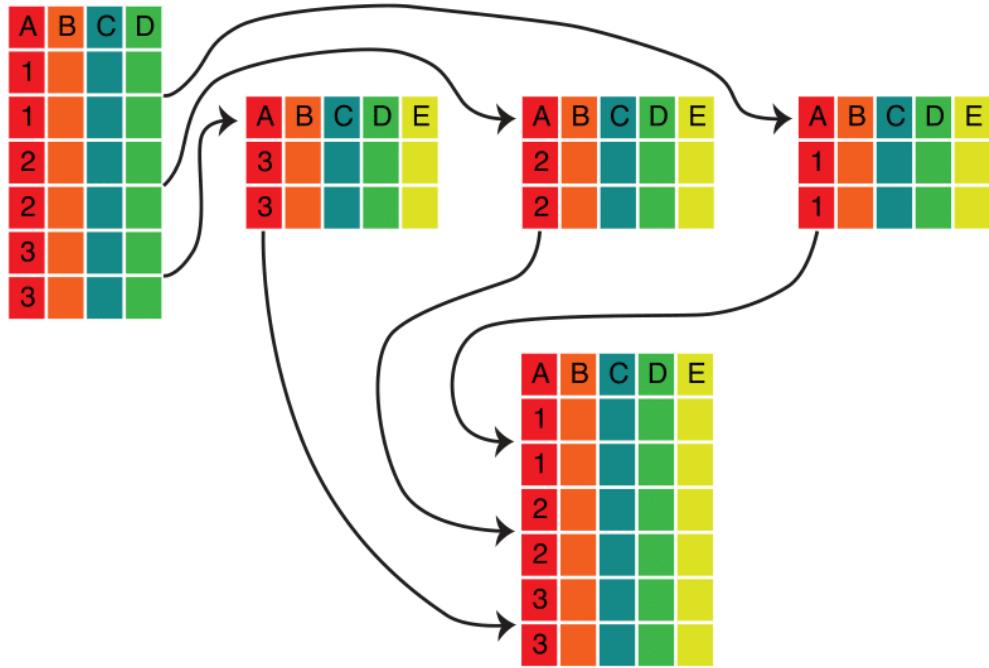
```
# Use piping to add a new column to the data, called Count_1k, that rescales counts to thousands
baby_names <- baby_names %>% mutate(Count_1k = Count/1000)
head(baby_names)
```

```
## # A tibble: 6 x 5
##   Name   Sex   Count Year Count_1k
##   <chr> <chr> <dbl> <dbl>    <dbl>
## 1 Mary   Girls  51474  1960     51.5
## 2 Susan  Girls  39200  1960     39.2
## 3 Linda  Girls  37314  1960     37.3
## 4 Karen  Girls  36376  1960     36.4
## 5 Donna  Girls  34133  1960     34.1
## 6 Lisa   Girls  33702  1960     33.7
```

### 3.5.2 Operating by group

Because of the nested nature of our data, we want to compute proportion or rank **within** each `Sex` by `Year` group. The `dplyr` package has a `group_by()` function that makes this relatively straightforward. Here's the logic behind this process:

```
data_frame %>% group_by(A) %>% mutate(E = rank(B + C))
```



Note that the `group_by()` function converts a **data frame** into a **grouped data frame** — that is, a data frame with metadata identifying the groups. The data remain grouped until you change the groups by running `group_by()` again or remove the grouping metadata using `ungroup()`.

Here's the code that implements the calculation:

```
# Group baby_names by Year and Sex and rank Count_1k within each group (calling the resulting new
# Remember to ungroup at the end!
baby_names <-
  baby_names %>%
  group_by(Year, Sex) %>%
  mutate(Rank = rank(Count_1k)) %>%
  ungroup()

head(baby_names)

## # A tibble: 6 x 6
##   Name  Sex  Count  Year Count_1k  Rank
##   <chr> <chr> <dbl> <dbl>     <dbl> <dbl>
## 1 Mary  Girls  51474  1960      51.5  7331
```

```
## 2 Susan Girls 39200 1960      39.2 7330
## 3 Linda Girls 37314 1960      37.3 7329
## 4 Karen Girls 36376 1960      36.4 7328
## 5 Donna Girls 34133 1960      34.1 7327
## 6 Lisa   Girls 33702 1960      33.7 7326
```

### 3.5.3 Recoding variables

It's often necessary to create a new variable that is a recoded version of an existing variable. For example, we might want to take our `Count_1k` variable and create a new variable that divides it into `low`, `medium`, and `high` categories. To do this, we can use the `case_when()` function within the `mutate()` function:

```
# Use case_when() to recode the newly created Rank column into low (<=10), high (>40), and medium (11-39).
# Call the resulting column "Count_levels".
baby_names <-
  baby_names %>%
  mutate(Count_levels = case_when(
    Count_1k <= 10                      ~ "low",
    Count_1k > 10 & Count_1k <= 40 ~ "medium",
    Count_1k > 40                      ~ "high"
  ))

head(baby_names)

## # A tibble: 6 x 7
##   Name   Sex   Count Year Count_1k  Rank Count_levels
##   <chr> <chr> <dbl> <dbl>     <dbl> <dbl> <chr>
## 1 Mary   Girls 51474 1960      51.5 7331 high
## 2 Susan  Girls 39200 1960      39.2 7330 medium
## 3 Linda  Girls 37314 1960      37.3 7329 medium
## 4 Karen  Girls 36376 1960      36.4 7328 medium
## 5 Donna  Girls 34133 1960      34.1 7327 medium
## 6 Lisa   Girls 33702 1960      33.7 7326 medium
```

### 3.5.4 Exercise 4

#### Most popular names

In this exercise your goal is to identify the most popular names for each year.

1. Use `mutate()` and `group_by()` to create a column named `Proportion` where `Proportion = Count/sum(Count)` for each `Year X Sex` group. Use pipes wherever it makes sense.

```
##
```

2. Use `mutate()` and `group_by()` to create a column named `Rank` where `Rank = rank(desc(Count))` for each `Year X Sex` group.

```
##
```

3. Filter the baby names data to display only the most popular name for each `Year X Sex` group. Keep only the columns: `Year`, `Name`, `Sex`, and `Proportion`.

```
##
```

4. Plot the data produced in step 3, putting `Year` on the x-axis and `Proportion` on the y-axis. How has the proportion of babies given the most popular name changed over time?

```
##
```

5. BONUS (optional): Which names are the most popular for both boys and girls?

```
##
```

[Click for Exercise 4 Solution](#)

1. Use `mutate()` and `group_by()` to create a column named `Proportion` where `Proportion = Count/sum(Count)` for each `Year X Sex` group.

```
baby_names <-  
  baby_names %>%  
    group_by(Year, Sex) %>%  
    mutate(Proportion = Count/sum(Count)) %>%  
    ungroup()  
  
head(baby_names)  
  
## # A tibble: 6 x 8  
##   Name   Sex   Count Year Count_1k Rank Count_levels Proportion  
##   <chr> <chr> <dbl> <dbl>    <dbl> <dbl> <chr>           <dbl>  
## 1 Mary   Girls  51474  1960     51.5  7331  high            0.0255  
## 2 Susan  Girls  39200  1960     39.2  7330  medium           0.0194  
## 3 Linda  Girls  37314  1960     37.3  7329  medium           0.0185  
## 4 Karen  Girls  36376  1960     36.4  7328  medium           0.0180  
## 5 Donna  Girls  34133  1960     34.1  7327  medium           0.0169  
## 6 Lisa   Girls  33702  1960     33.7  7326  medium           0.0167
```

2. Use `mutate()` and `group_by()` to create a column named `Rank` where `Rank = rank(desc(Count))` for each `Year X Sex` group.

```

baby_names <-
  baby_names %>%
  group_by(Year, Sex) %>%
  mutate(Rank = rank(desc(Count))) %>%
  ungroup()

head(baby_names)

## # A tibble: 6 x 8
##   Name  Sex  Count Year Count_1k Rank Count_levels Proportion
##   <chr> <chr> <dbl> <dbl> <dbl> <chr>          <dbl>
## 1 Mary  Girls 51474  1960    51.5  1  high        0.0255
## 2 Susan Girls 39200  1960    39.2  2 medium      0.0194
## 3 Linda Girls 37314  1960    37.3  3 medium      0.0185
## 4 Karen Girls 36376  1960    36.4  4 medium      0.0180
## 5 Donna Girls 34133  1960    34.1  5 medium      0.0169
## 6 Lisa  Girls 33702  1960    33.7  6 medium      0.0167

```

3. Filter the baby names data to display only the most popular name for each Year X Sex group.

```

top1 <-
  baby_names %>%
  filter(Rank == 1) %>%
  select(Year, Name, Sex, Proportion)

head(top1)

## # A tibble: 6 x 4
##   Year Name  Sex  Proportion
##   <dbl> <chr> <chr>     <dbl>
## 1 1960 Mary  Girls    0.0255
## 2 1960 David Boys    0.0403
## 3 1961 Mary  Girls    0.0236
## 4 1961 Michael Boys   0.0409
## 5 1962 Lisa  Girls    0.0234
## 6 1962 Michael Boys   0.0411

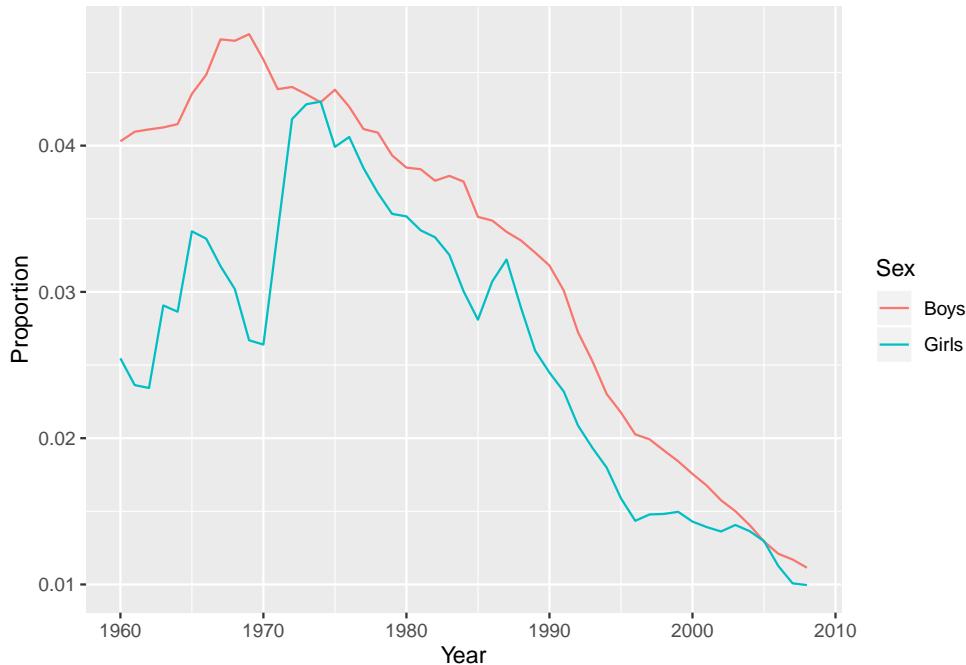
```

4. Plot the data produced in step 3, putting Year on the x-axis and Proportion on the y-axis. How has the proportion of babies given the most popular name changed over time?

```

qplot(x = Year,
       y = Proportion,
       color = Sex,
       data = top1,
       geom = "line")

```



5. BONUS (optional): Which names are the most popular for both boys and girls?

```
girls_and_boys <- inner_join(filter(baby_names, Sex == "Boys"),
                             filter(baby_names, Sex == "Girls"),
                             by = c("Year", "Name"))

girls_and_boys <- mutate(girls_and_boys,
                        Product = Count.x * Count.y,
                        Rank = rank(desc(Product)))

filter(girls_and_boys, Rank == 1)

## # A tibble: 1 x 16
##   Name  Sex.x Count.x Year Count_1k.x Rank.x Count_levels.x Proportion.x Sex.y
##   <chr> <chr>    <dbl> <dbl>      <dbl> <dbl>    <chr>           <dbl> <chr>
## 1 Tayl~ Boys     7688  1993      7.69    51 low            0.00392 Girls
## # ... with 7 more variables: Count.y <dbl>, Count_1k.y <dbl>, Rank.y <dbl>,
## #   Count_levels.y <chr>, Proportion.y <dbl>, Product <dbl>, Rank <dbl>
```

## 3.6 Aggregating variables

**GOAL:** To learn how to aggregate data to create summaries with and without grouped data. In particular:

1. Collapsing data into summaries — using the `summarize()` function
2. Creating summaries within groups — by combining the `summarize()` and `group_by()` functions

You may have noticed that the percentage of babies given the most popular name of the year appears to have decreased over time. We can compute a more robust measure of the popularity of the most popular names by calculating the number of babies given one of the top 10 girl or boy names of the year.

To compute this measure we need to operate within groups, as we did using `mutate()` above, but this time we need to collapse each group into a single summary statistic. We can achieve this using the `summarize()` function.

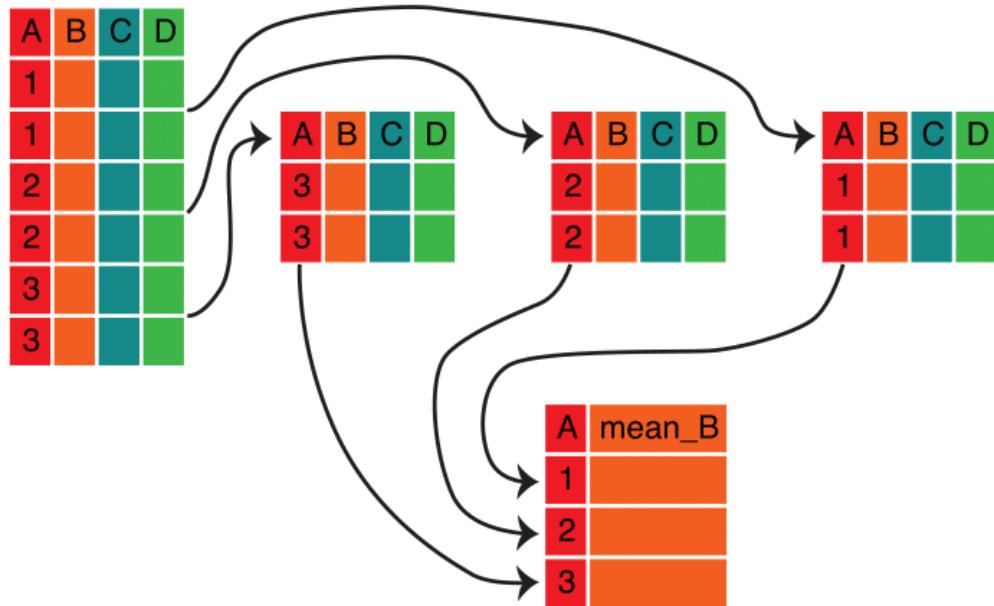
First, let's see how this function works without grouping. The following code outputs the total number of girls and boys in the data:

```
# Use summarize() to output the total number of boys and girls in the sample
baby_names %>%
  summarize(Girls_n = sum(Sex=="Girls"),
            Boys_n = sum(Sex=="Boys"))
```

```
## # A tibble: 1 x 2
##   Girls_n Boys_n
##       <int>  <int>
## 1     641084 407491
```

Next, using `group_by()` and `summarize()` together, we can calculate the number of babies born each year. Here's the logic behind this process:

```
data_frame %>% group_by(A) %>% summarize(mean_B = mean(B))
```



Note that, unlike with the `mutate()` function, the `summarize()` function returns a data frame with fewer rows than the original, because of aggregation.

Here's the code that implements the calculation:

```
# Group baby_names by Year and calculate the sum of Count (record in a column called Total).
# Assign the result to bn_by_year and remember to ungroup!
bn_by_year <-
  baby_names %>%
  group_by(Year) %>%
  summarize(Total = sum(Count)) %>%
  ungroup()

head(bn_by_year)

## # A tibble: 6 x 2
##   Year    Total
##   <dbl>   <dbl>
## 1 1960 4154377
## 2 1961 4140244
## 3 1962 4035234
## 4 1963 3958791
## 5 1964 3887800
```

```
## 6 1965 3626029
```

### 3.6.1 Exercise 5

#### Popularity of the most popular names

In this exercise we will plot trends in the proportion of boys and girls given one of the 10 most popular names each year.

1. Filter the `baby_names` data, retaining only the 10 most popular girl and boy names for each year.

```
##
```

2. Summarize the data produced in step one to calculate the total Proportion of boys and girls given one of the top 10 names each year.

```
##
```

3. Plot the data produced in step 2, with year on the x-axis and total proportion on the y axis. Color by `Sex` and notice the trend.

```
##
```

[Click for Exercise 5 Solution](#)

1. Filter the `baby_names` data, retaining only the 10 most popular girl and boy names for each year.

```
most_popular <-
  baby_names %>%
  group_by(Year, Sex) %>%
  filter(Rank <= 10)

head(most_popular, n = 10)

## # A tibble: 10 x 8
## # Groups:   Year, Sex [1]
##   Name     Sex   Count Year Count_1k  Rank Count_levels Proportion
##   <chr>    <chr> <dbl> <dbl>    <dbl> <dbl> <chr>        <dbl>
## 1 Mary     Girls 51474 1960    51.5    1 high       0.0255
## 2 Susan    Girls 39200 1960    39.2    2 medium     0.0194
## 3 Linda    Girls 37314 1960    37.3    3 medium     0.0185
## 4 Karen    Girls 36376 1960    36.4    4 medium     0.0180
## 5 Donna    Girls 34133 1960    34.1    5 medium     0.0169
## 6 Lisa     Girls 33702 1960    33.7    6 medium     0.0167
```

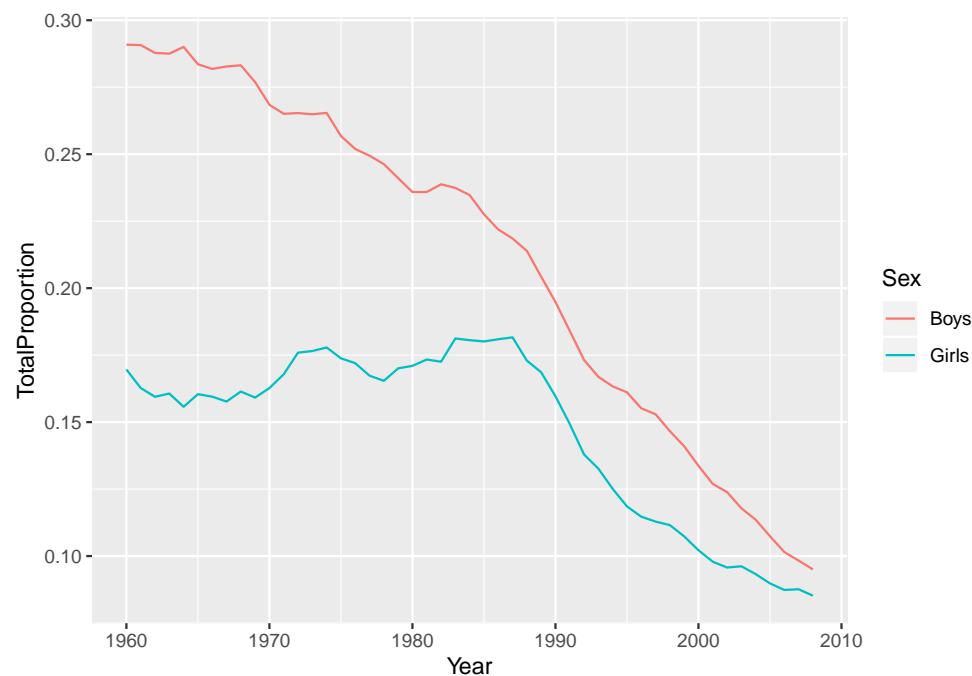
```
## 7 Patricia Girls 32102 1960    32.1    7 medium      0.0159
## 8 Debra     Girls 26737 1960    26.7    8 medium      0.0132
## 9 Cynthia   Girls 26725 1960    26.7    9 medium      0.0132
## 10 Deborah   Girls 25264 1960    25.3   10 medium      0.0125
```

2. Summarize the data produced in step one to calculate the total Proportion of boys and girls given one of the top 10 names each year.

```
top10 <-
  most_popular %>%
  # it is already grouped by Year and Sex
  summarize(TotalProportion = sum(Proportion))
```

3. Plot the data produced in step 2, with year on the x-axis and total proportion on the y axis. Color by Sex and notice the trend.

```
qplot(x = Year,
      y = TotalProportion,
      color = Sex,
      data = top10,
      geom = "line")
```



### 3.7 Saving work

**GOAL:** To learn how to save objects, data, and scripts for later use.

Now that we have made some changes to our data set, we might want to save those changes to a file.

### 3.7.1 Saving individual datasets

You might find functions `write_csv()` and `write_rds()` from package `readr` handy!

```
# write baby_names to a .csv file
write_csv(baby_names, "babyNames.csv")

# write baby_names to an R file
write_rds(baby_names, "babyNames.rds")
```

### 3.7.2 Saving multiple datasets

```
ls() # list objects in our workspace
# Use save() function from the base R package to record some objects into a file named "myDataFiles.RData"
save(baby_names_diana, bn_by_year, baby_names_subset, file="myDataFiles.RData")

# Load the "myDataFiles.RData"
# load("myDataFiles.RData")
```

## 3.8 Wrap-up

### 3.8.1 Feedback

These workshops are a work-in-progress, please provide any feedback to: [help@iq.harvard.edu](mailto:help@iq.harvard.edu)

### 3.8.2 Resources

- IQSS
  - Workshops: <https://dss.iq.harvard.edu/workshop-materials>
  - Data Science Services: <https://dss.iq.harvard.edu/>
  - Research Computing Environment: <https://iqss.github.io/dss-rce/>
- HBS
  - Research Computing Services workshops: <https://training.rcs.hbs.org/workshops>
  - Other HBS RCS resources: <https://training.rcs.hbs.org/workshop-materials>

- RCS consulting email: <mailto:research@hbs.edu>
- Software (all free!):
  - R and R package download: <http://cran.r-project.org>
  - RStudio download: <http://rstudio.org>
  - ESS (Emacs R package): <http://ess.r-project.org/>
- Cheatsheets
  - [https://rstudio.com/wp-content/uploads/2019/01/Cheatsheets\\_2019.pdf](https://rstudio.com/wp-content/uploads/2019/01/Cheatsheets_2019.pdf)
- Online tutorials
  - <https://swirlstats.com/>
  - <https://r4ds.had.co.nz/>
  - [https://hbs-rcs.github.io/R\\_Intro-gapminder/base-r/](https://hbs-rcs.github.io/R_Intro-gapminder/base-r/)
  - <https://www.pluralsight.com/search?q=R>
  - <https://www.datacamp.com/>
  - <https://rmarkdown.rstudio.com/lesson-1.html>
- Getting help:
  - Documentation and tutorials: <http://cran.r-project.org/other-docs.html>
  - Recommended R packages by topic: <http://cran.r-project.org/web/views/>
  - Mailing list: <https://stat.ethz.ch/mailman/listinfo/r-help>
  - StackOverflow: <http://stackoverflow.com/questions/tagged/r>
  - R-Bloggers: <https://www.r-bloggers.com/>
- Coming from ...
  - Stata: <http://www.princeton.edu/~otorres/RStata.pdf>
  - SAS/SPSS: <http://r4stats.com/books/free-version/>
  - Matlab: <http://www.math.umaine.edu/~hiebeler/comp/matlabR.pdf>
  - Python: <http://mathesaurus.sourceforge.net/matlab-python-xref.pdf>

# Chapter 4

## R Regression Models

### Topics

- Formula interface for model specification
- Function methods for extracting quantities of interest from models
- Contrasts to test specific hypotheses
- Model comparisons
- Predicted marginal effects

### 4.1 Setup

#### 4.1.1 Software and Materials

Follow the R Installation instructions and ensure that you can successfully start RStudio.

#### 4.1.2 Class Structure

Informal - Ask questions at any time. Really!

Collaboration is encouraged - please spend a minute introducing yourself to your neighbors!

#### 4.1.3 Prerequisites

This is an intermediate R course:

- Assumes working knowledge of R
- Relatively fast-paced
- This is not a statistics course! We will teach you *how* to fit models in R, but we assume you know the theory behind the models.

#### 4.1.4 Goals

We will learn about the R modeling ecosystem by fitting a variety of statistical models to different datasets. In particular, our goals are to learn about:

1. Modeling workflow
2. Visualizing and summarizing data before modeling
3. Modeling continuous outcomes
4. Modeling binary outcomes
5. Modeling clustered data

We will not spend much time *interpreting* the models we fit, since this is not a statistics workshop. But, we will walk you through how model results are organized and orientate you to where you can find typical quantities of interest.

#### 4.1.5 Launch an R session

Start RStudio and create a new project:

- On Windows click the start button and search for RStudio. On Mac RStudio will be in your applications folder.
- In Rstudio go to File → New Project.
- Choose Existing Directory and browse to the workshop materials directory on your desktop.
- Choose File → Open File and select the file with the word “BLANK” in the name.

#### 4.1.6 Packages

You should have already installed the `tidyverse` and `rmarkdown` packages onto your computer before the workshop — see R Installation. Now let’s load these packages into the search path of our R session.

```
library(tidyverse)
library(rmarkdown)
```

Finally, lets install some packages that will help with modeling:

```
# install.packages("lme4")
library(lme4) # for mixed models

# install.packages("emmeans")
library(emmeans) # for marginal effects

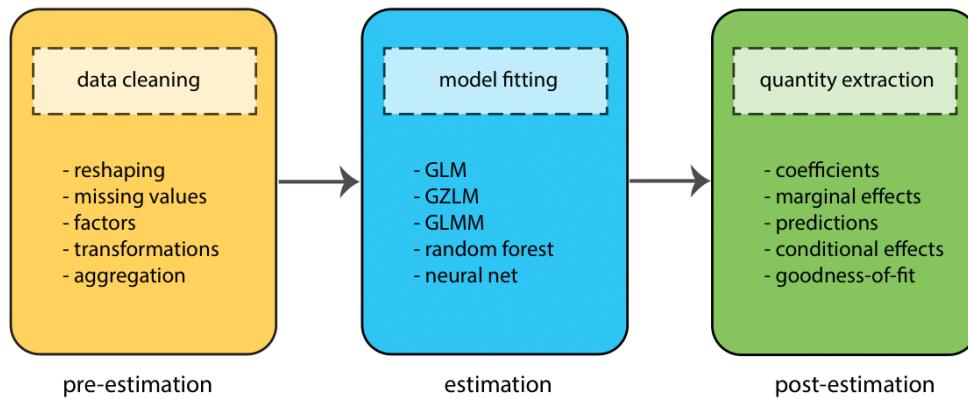
# install.packages("effects")
library(effects) # for predicted marginal means
```

## 4.2 Modeling workflow

Before we delve into the details of how to fit models in R, it's worth taking a step back and thinking more broadly about the components of the modeling process. These can roughly be divided into 3 stages:

1. Pre-estimation
2. Estimation
3. Post-estimation

At each stage, the goal is to complete a different task (e.g., to clean data, fit a model, test a hypothesis), but the process is sequential — we move through the stages in order (though often many times in one project!)



Throughout this workshop we will go through these stages several times as we fit different types of model.

## 4.3 R modeling ecosystem

There are literally hundreds of R packages that provide model fitting functionality. We're going to focus on just two during this workshop — `stats`, from Base R, and `lme4`. It's a good idea to look at CRAN Task Views when trying to find a modeling package for your needs, as they provide an extensive curated list. But, here's a more digestible table showing some of the most popular packages for particular types of model.

Models	Packages
Generalized linear	<code>stats</code> , <code>biglm</code> , <code>MASS</code> , <code>robustbase</code>
Mixed effects	<code>lme4</code> , <code>nlme</code> , <code>glmmTMB</code> , <code>MASS</code>
Econometric	<code>pglm</code> , <code>VGAM</code> , <code>pscl</code> , <code>survival</code>
Bayesian	<code>brms</code> , <code>blme</code> , <code>MCMCglmm</code> , <code>rstan</code>
Machine learning	<code>mlr</code> , <code>caret</code> , <code>h2o</code> , <code>tensorflow</code>

## 4.4 Before fitting a model

**GOAL:** To learn about the data by creating summaries and visualizations.

One important part of the pre-estimation stage of model fitting, is gaining an understanding of the data we wish to model by creating plots and summaries. Let's do this now.

### 4.4.1 Load the data

List the data files we're going to work with:

```
list.files("dataSets")
```

```
## [1] "Exam.rds"           "NatHealth2008MI"   "NatHealth2011.rds"
## [4] "states.rds"
```

We're going to use the `states` data first, which originally appeared in *Statistics with Stata* by Lawrence C. Hamilton.

```
# read the states data
states_data <- read_rds("dataSets/states.rds")

# look at the last few rows
tail(states_data)
```

```
##          state region    pop  area density metro waste energy miles toxic
## 46      Vermont   N. East 563000  9249  60.87  23.4  0.69    232 10.4  1.81
## 47    Virginia   South 6187000 39598 156.25  72.5  1.45    306  9.7 12.87
## 48  Washington   West 4867000 66582  73.10  81.7  1.05    389  9.2  8.51
## 49 West Virginia   South 1793000 24087  74.44  36.4  0.95    415  8.6 21.30
## green house senate csat vsat msat percent expense income high college
## 46 15.17     85    94  890   424   466      68    6738 34.717 80.8    24.3
## 47 18.72     33    54  890   424   466      60    4836 38.838 75.2    24.5
## 48 16.51     52    64  913   433   480      49    5000 36.338 83.8    22.9
## 49 51.14     48    57  926   441   485      17    4911 24.233 66.0    12.3
## [ reached 'max' / getOption("max.print") -- omitted 2 rows ]
```

Variable	Description
csat	Mean composite SAT score
expense	Per pupil expenditures
percent	% HS graduates taking SAT
income	Median household income, \$1,000
region	Geographic region: West, N. East, South, Midwest
house	House '91 environ. voting, %
senate	Senate '91 environ. voting, %

Variable	Description
energy	Per capita energy consumed, Btu
metro	Metropolitan area population, %
waste	Per capita solid waste, tons

#### 4.4.2 Examine the data

Start by examining the data to check for problems.

```
# summary of expense and csat columns, all rows
sts_ex_sat <-
  states_data %>%
  select(expense, csat)

summary(sts_ex_sat)

##      expense          csat
##  Min.   :2960   Min.   : 832.0
##  1st Qu.:4352   1st Qu.: 888.0
##  Median :5000   Median : 926.0
##  Mean   :5236   Mean   : 944.1
##  3rd Qu.:5794   3rd Qu.: 997.0
##  Max.   :9259   Max.   :1093.0

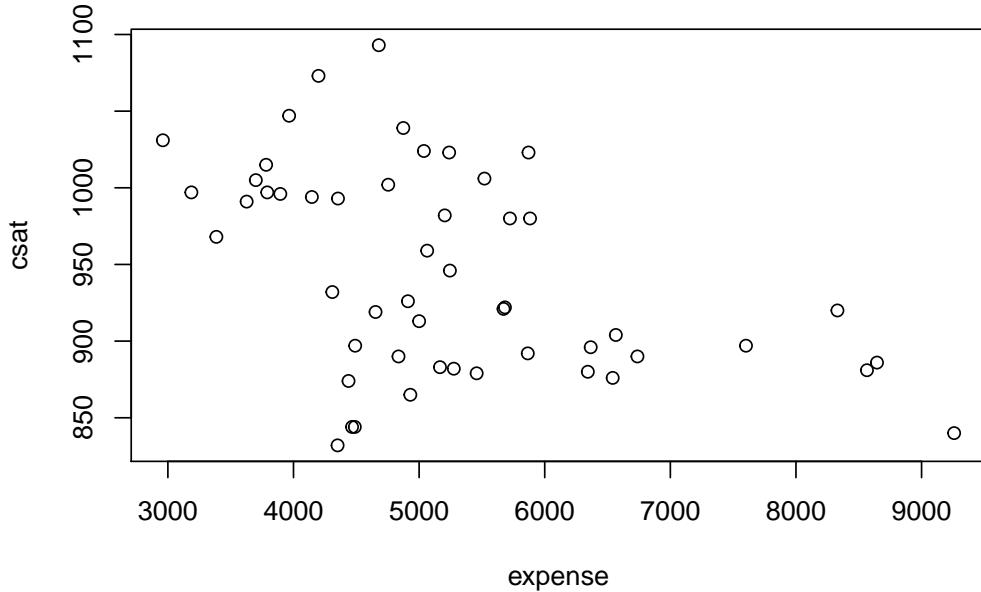
# correlation between expense and csat
cor(sts_ex_sat, use = "pairwise")

##                  expense          csat
## expense   1.0000000 -0.4662978
## csat     -0.4662978  1.0000000
```

#### 4.4.3 Plot the data

Plot the data to look for multivariate outliers, non-linear relationships etc.

```
# scatter plot of expense vs csat
plot(sts_ex_sat)
```



Obviously, in a real project, you would want to spend more time investigating the data, but we'll now move on to modeling.

## 4.5 Models with continuous outcomes

**GOAL:** To learn about the R modeling ecosystem by fitting ordinary least squares (OLS) models. In particular:

1. Formula representation of a model specification
2. Model classes
3. Function methods
4. Model comparison

Once the data have been inspected and cleaned, we can start estimating models. The simplest models (but those with the most assumptions) are those for continuous and unbounded outcomes. Typically, for these outcomes, we'd use a model estimated using Ordinary Least Squares (OLS), which in R can be fit with the `lm()` (linear model) function.

To fit a model in R, we first have to convert our theoretical model into a `formula` — a symbolic representation of the model in R syntax:

```
# formula for model specification
outcome ~ pred1 + pred2 + pred3

# NOTE the ~ is a tilde
```

For example, the following theoretical model predicts SAT scores based on per-pupil expenditures:

$$csat_i = \beta_0 1 + \beta_1 expense_i + \epsilon_i$$

We can use `lm()` to fit this model:

```
# fit our regression model
sat_mod <- lm(csat ~ 1 + expense, # regression formula
               data = states_data) # data

# look at the basic printed output
sat_mod

##
## Call:
## lm(formula = csat ~ 1 + expense, data = states_data)
##
## Coefficients:
## (Intercept)      expense
## 1060.73244     -0.02228

# get more informative summary information
# about coefficients and goodness-of-fit
summary(sat_mod)

##
## Call:
## lm(formula = csat ~ 1 + expense, data = states_data)
##
## Residuals:
##      Min       1Q   Median       3Q      Max 
## -131.811  -38.085   5.607  37.852 136.495 
##
## Coefficients:
##             Estimate Std. Error t value Pr(>|t|)    
## (Intercept) 1.061e+03 3.270e+01  32.44 < 2e-16 ***
## expense     -2.228e-02 6.037e-03  -3.69 0.000563 ***  
## ---        
## Signif. codes:  0 '***' 0.001 '**' 0.01 '*' 0.05 '.' 0.1 ' ' 1
```

```

## Residual standard error: 59.81 on 49 degrees of freedom
## Multiple R-squared:  0.2174, Adjusted R-squared:  0.2015
## F-statistic: 13.61 on 1 and 49 DF,  p-value: 0.0005631

# show only the regression coefficients table
summary(sat_mod) %>% coef()

##           Estimate Std. Error t value Pr(>|t|)
## (Intercept) 1060.73244395 32.700896736 32.437412 8.878411e-35
## expense      -0.02227565  0.006037115 -3.689783 5.630902e-04

```

#### 4.5.1 Why is the association between expense & SAT scores *negative*?

Many people find it surprising that the per-capita expenditure on students is negatively related to SAT scores. The beauty of multiple regression is that we can try to pull these apart. What would the association between expense and SAT scores be if there were no difference among the states in the percentage of students taking the SAT?

```

lm(csat ~ 1 + expense + percent, data = states_data) %>%
  summary()

##
## Call:
## lm(formula = csat ~ 1 + expense + percent, data = states_data)
##
## Residuals:
##    Min     1Q   Median     3Q    Max 
## -62.921 -24.318   1.741  15.502  75.623 
## 
## Coefficients:
##             Estimate Std. Error t value Pr(>|t|)    
## (Intercept) 989.807403 18.395770 53.806 < 2e-16 ***
## expense      0.008604  0.004204  2.046  0.0462 *  
## percent     -2.537700  0.224912 -11.283 4.21e-15 ***
## ---        
## Signif. codes:  0 '***' 0.001 '**' 0.01 '*' 0.05 '.' 0.1 ' ' 1 
## 
## Residual standard error: 31.62 on 48 degrees of freedom
## Multiple R-squared:  0.7857, Adjusted R-squared:  0.7768 
## F-statistic: 88.01 on 2 and 48 DF,  p-value: < 2.2e-16

```

#### 4.5.2 The `lm` class & methods

Okay, we fitted our model. Now what? Typically, the main goal in the **post-estimation stage** of analysis is to extract **quantities of interest** from our fitted model. These quantities could be things like:

1. Testing whether one group is different on average from another group
2. Generating average response values from the model for interesting combinations of predictor values
3. Calculating interval estimates for particular coefficients

But before we can do any of that, we need to know more about **what a fitted model actually is, what information it contains, and how we can extract from it information that we want to report.**

Let's start by examining the model object:

```
class(sat_mod)

## [1] "lm"

str(sat_mod)

## List of 12
## $ coefficients : Named num [1:2] 1060.7324 -0.0223
##   ..- attr(*, "names")= chr [1:2] "(Intercept)" "expense"
## $ residuals    : Named num [1:51] 11.1 44.8 -32.7 26.7 -63.7 ...
##   ..- attr(*, "names")= chr [1:51] "1" "2" "3" "4" ...
## $ effects      : Named num [1:51] -6742.2 220.7 -31.7 29.7 -63.2 ...
##   ..- attr(*, "names")= chr [1:51] "(Intercept)" "expense" "" "" ...
## $ rank         : int 2
## $ fitted.values: Named num [1:51] 980 875 965 978 961 ...
##   ..- attr(*, "names")= chr [1:51] "1" "2" "3" "4" ...
## $ assign        : int [1:2] 0 1
## $ qr           :List of 5
##   ..$ qr    : num [1:51, 1:2] -7.14 0.14 0.14 0.14 0.14 ...
##   ... ..- attr(*, "dimnames")=List of 2
##   ... ...$ : chr [1:51] "1" "2" "3" "4" ...
##   ... ...$ : chr [1:2] "(Intercept)" "expense"
##   ... ..- attr(*, "assign")= int [1:2] 0 1
##   ..$ qraux: num [1:2] 1.14 1.33
##   ..$ pivot: int [1:2] 1 2
##   ..$ tol  : num 1e-07
##   ..$ rank : int 2
##   ..- attr(*, "class")= chr "qr"
## $ df.residual  : int 49
## $ xlevels      : Named list()
## $ call         : language lm(formula = csat ~ 1 + expense, data = states_data)
## $ terms        :Classes 'terms', 'formula' language csat ~ 1 + expense
##   ... ..- attr(*, "variables")= language list(csat, expense)
##   ... ..- attr(*, "factors")= int [1:2, 1] 0 1
##   ... ...- attr(*, "dimnames")=List of 2
##   ... ... .$. : chr [1:2] "csat" "expense"
```

```

## ... . . . . $ : chr "expense"
## ... . - attr(*, "term.labels")= chr "expense"
## ... . - attr(*, "order")= int 1
## ... . - attr(*, "intercept")= int 1
## ... . - attr(*, "response")= int 1
## ... . - attr(*, ".Environment")=<environment: R_GlobalEnv>
## ... . - attr(*, "predvars")= language list(csat, expense)
## ... . - attr(*, "dataClasses")= Named chr [1:2] "numeric" "numeric"
## ... . . - attr(*, "names")= chr [1:2] "csat" "expense"
## $ model           : 'data.frame': 51 obs. of 2 variables:
##   ..$ csat    : int [1:51] 991 920 932 1005 897 959 897 892 840 882 ...
##   ..$ expense: int [1:51] 3627 8330 4309 3700 4491 5064 7602 5865 9259 5276 ...
##   ..- attr(*, "terms")=Classes 'terms', 'formula' language csat ~ 1 + expense
##   ... . . - attr(*, "variables")= language list(csat, expense)
##   ... . . - attr(*, "factors")= int [1:2, 1] 0 1
##   ... . . . - attr(*, "dimnames")=List of 2
##   ... . . . . $ : chr [1:2] "csat" "expense"
##   ... . . . . $ : chr "expense"
##   ... . . . - attr(*, "term.labels")= chr "expense"
##   ... . . . - attr(*, "order")= int 1
##   ... . . . - attr(*, "intercept")= int 1
##   ... . . . - attr(*, "response")= int 1
##   ... . . . - attr(*, ".Environment")=<environment: R_GlobalEnv>
##   ... . . . - attr(*, "predvars")= language list(csat, expense)
##   ... . . . - attr(*, "dataClasses")= Named chr [1:2] "numeric" "numeric"
##   ... . . . . - attr(*, "names")= chr [1:2] "csat" "expense"
##   - attr(*, "class")= chr "lm"

```

```
names(sat_mod)
```

```

## [1] "coefficients"   "residuals"      "effects"       "rank"
## [5] "fitted.values"  "assign"        "qr"            "df.residual"
## [9] "xlevels"         "call"          "terms"         "model"

```

We can list all the functions that extract particular quantities of interest (called **extractor functions**) by using the `methods()` function with the `class` argument set to the class of the model object:

```
methods(class = class(sat_mod))
```

```

## [1] add1           alias          anova          case.names    coerce
## [6] confint        cooks.distance deviance      dfbeta        dfbetas
## [11] drop1          dummy.coef     Effect         effects       emm_basis
## [16] extractAIC    family         formula        fortify      hatvalues
## [21] influence      initialize    kappa          labels        logLik
## [26] model.frame    model.matrix  nobs          plot

```

```

## [31] print          proj          qqnorm         qr          recover_data
## [36] residuals      rstandard      rstudent       show        simulate
## [41] slotsFromS3    summary       variable.names vcov
## see '?methods' for accessing help and source code

```

We can also use function methods to get more information about the fit:

```
summary(sat_mod) # summary table
```

```

##
## Call:
## lm(formula = csat ~ 1 + expense, data = states_data)
##
## Residuals:
##     Min      1Q  Median      3Q     Max
## -131.811 -38.085   5.607  37.852 136.495
##
## Coefficients:
##                   Estimate Std. Error t value Pr(>|t|)
## (Intercept)  1.061e+03  3.270e+01   32.44 < 2e-16 ***
## expense     -2.228e-02  6.037e-03   -3.69 0.000563 ***
## ---
## Signif. codes:  0 '***' 0.001 '**' 0.01 '*' 0.05 '.' 0.1 ' ' 1
##
## Residual standard error: 59.81 on 49 degrees of freedom
## Multiple R-squared:  0.2174, Adjusted R-squared:  0.2015
## F-statistic: 13.61 on 1 and 49 DF, p-value: 0.0005631

```

```
confint(sat_mod) # confidence intervals
```

```

##             2.5 %      97.5 %
## (Intercept) 995.01753164 1126.44735626
## expense     -0.03440768  -0.01014361

```

```
anova(sat_mod) # ANOVA table
```

```

## Analysis of Variance Table
##
## Response: csat
##           Df Sum Sq Mean Sq F value    Pr(>F)
## expense    1  48708   48708  13.614 0.0005631 ***
## Residuals 49 175306    3578
## ---
## Signif. codes:  0 '***' 0.001 '**' 0.01 '*' 0.05 '.' 0.1 ' ' 1

```

How does R know which method to call for a given object? R uses **generic functions**, which provide access to **methods**. Method dispatch takes place based on the **class** of the first argument to the generic function. For example, for the generic function **summary()** and an object of class **lm**, the method dispatched will be **summary.lm()**. Function methods always take the form **generic.method()**:

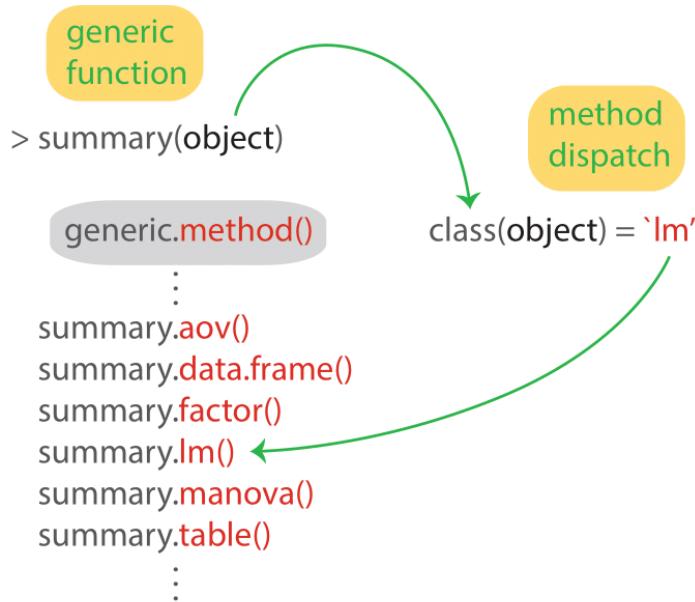
```
methods("summary")
```

```
## [1] summary,ANY-method           summary,DBIObject-method
## [3] summary,diagonalMatrix-method summary,sparseMatrix-method
## [5] summary.aareg*               summary.allFit*
## [7] summary.aov                 summary.aovlist*
## [9] summary.aspell*              summary.cch*
## [11] summary.check_packages_in_dir* summary.connection
## [13] summary.corAR1*              summary.corARMA*
## [15] summary.corCAR1*             summary.corCompSymm*
## [17] summary.corExp*              summary.corGaus*
## [19] summary.corIdent*            summary.corLin*
## [21] summary.corNatural*          summary.corRatio*
## [23] summary.corSpher*             summary.corStruct*
## [25] summary.corSymm*             summary.coxph*
## [27] summary.coxph.penalty*       summary.data.frame
## [29] summary.Date                 summary.DBRepdesign*
## [31] summary.DBIsvydesign*         summary.default
## [33] summary.Duration*            summary.ecdf*
## [35] summary.eff*                 summary.efflatent*
## [37] summary.efflist*              summary.effpoly*
## [39] summary.emm_list*             summary.emmGrid*
## [41] summary.factor                summary.ggplot*
## [43] summary.glht_list*            summary.glm
## [45] summary.gls*                  summary.hcl_palettes*
## [47] summary.infl*                 summary.Interval*
## [49] summary.lm                     summary.lme*
## [51] summary.lmList*                summary.lmList4*
## [53] summary.loess*                summary.loglm*
## [55] summary.manova                summary.matrix
## [57] summary.mcmc*                 summary.mcmc.list*
## [59] summary.merMod*                summary.MIresult*
## [61] summary.mlm*                  summary.mlm.efflist*
## [63] summary.modelStruct*           summary.multinom*
## [65] summary.negbin*                summary.nls*
## [67] summary.nlsList*               summary.nnet*
## [69] summary.packageStatus*          summary.pdBlocked*
## [71] summary.pdCompSymm*            summary.pdDiag*
## [73] summary.pdIdent*               summary.pdLogChol*
## [75] summary.pdMat*                 summary.pdNatural*
## [77] summary.pdSymm*                summary.Period*
## [79] summary.polr*
```

```

## [81] summary.POSIXlt           summary.ppr*
## [83] summary.pps*              summary.prcomp*
## [85] summary.prcmplist*        summary.predictorefflist*
## [87] summary.princomp*         summary.proc_time
## [89] summary.pyears*            summary.ratetable*
## [91] summary.reStruct*          summary.rlang_error*
## [93] summary.rlang_trace*       summary.rlm*
## [95] summary.shingle*           summary.srcfile
## [97] summary.srcref              summary.stepfun
## [99] summary.stl*                summary.summary.merMod*
## [ reached getOption("max.print") -- omitted 31 entries ]
## see '?methods' for accessing help and source code

```



It's always worth examining whether the class of model you're fitting has a method for a particular extractor function. Here's a summary table of some of the most often used extractor functions, which have methods for a wide range of model classes. These are post-estimation tools you will want in your toolbox:

Function	Package	Output
<code>summary()</code>	stats base R	standard errors, test statistics, p-values, GOF stats
<code>confint()</code>	stats base R	confidence intervals
<code>anova()</code>	stats base R	anova table (one model), model comparison (> one model)
<code>coef()</code>	stats base R	point estimates
<code>drop1()</code>	stats base R	model comparison
<code>predict()</code>	stats base R	predicted response values

Function	Package	Output
<code>fitted()</code>	<code>stats</code> base R	predicted response values (for observed data)
<code>residuals()</code>	<code>stats</code> base R	residuals
<code>fixef()</code>	<code>lme4</code>	fixed effect point estimates (mixed models only)
<code>ranef()</code>	<code>lme4</code>	random effect point estimates (mixed models only)
<code>coef()</code>	<code>lme4</code>	empirical Bayes estimates (mixed models only)
<code>allEffects()</code>	<code>effects</code>	predicted marginal means
<code>emmeans()</code>	<code>emmeans</code>	predicted marginal means & marginal effects
<code>margins()</code>	<code>margins</code>	predicted marginal means & marginal effects

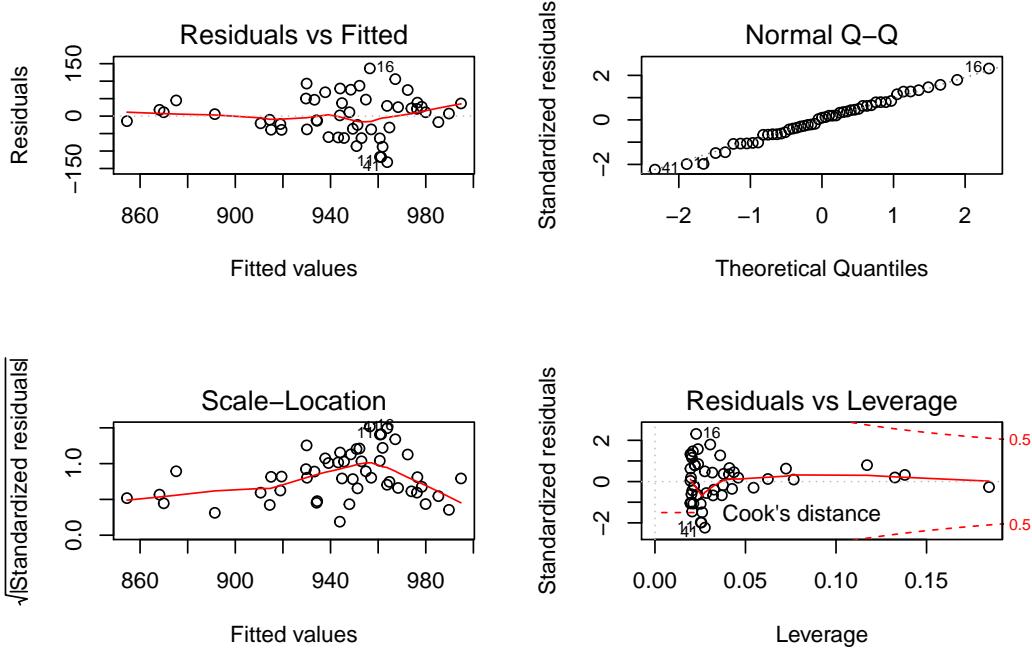
### 4.5.3 OLS regression assumptions

OLS regression relies on several assumptions, including:

1. The model includes all relevant variables (i.e., no omitted variable bias).
2. The model is linear in the parameters (i.e., the coefficients and error term).
3. The error term has an expected value of zero.
4. All right-hand-side variables are uncorrelated with the error term.
5. No right-hand-side variables are a perfect linear function of other RHS variables.
6. Observations of the error term are uncorrelated with each other.
7. The error term has constant variance (i.e., homoscedasticity).
8. (Optional - only needed for inference). The error term is normally distributed.

Investigate assumptions #7 and #8 visually by plotting your model:

```
par(mfrow = c(2, 2)) # splits the plotting window into 4 panels
plot(sat_mod)
```



#### 4.5.4 Comparing models

Do congressional voting patterns predict SAT scores over and above expense? Fit two models and compare them:

```
# fit another model, adding house and senate as predictors
sat_voting_mod <- lm(csat ~ 1 + expense + house + senate,
                      data = na.omit(states_data))

summary(sat_voting_mod) %>% coef()
```

	Estimate	Std. Error	t value	Pr(> t )
## (Intercept)	1082.93438041	38.633812740	28.0307405	1.067795e-29
## expense	-0.01870832	0.009691494	-1.9303852	6.001998e-02
## house	-1.44243754	0.600478382	-2.4021473	2.058666e-02
## senate	0.49817861	0.513561356	0.9700469	3.373256e-01

Why are we using `na.omit()`? Let's see what `na.omit()` does.

```
# fake data
dat <- data.frame(
  x = 1:5,
```

```

y = c(3, 2, 1, NA, 5),
z = c(6, NA, 2, 7, 3))
dat

##   x  y  z
## 1 1 3 6
## 2 2 2 NA
## 3 3 1 2
## 4 4 NA 7
## 5 5 5 3

na.omit(dat) # listwise deletion of observations

##   x  y  z
## 1 1 3 6
## 3 3 1 2
## 5 5 5 3

# also see
# ?complete.cases
dat[with(dat, complete.cases(x, y, z)), ]

##   x  y  z
## 1 1 3 6
## 3 3 1 2
## 5 5 5 3

```

To compare models, we must fit them to the same data. This is why we need `na.omit()`. Now let's update our first model using `na.omit()`:

```

sat_mod <-
  sat_mod %>%
  update(data = na.omit(states_data))

# compare using an F-test with the anova() function
anova(sat_mod, sat_voting_mod)

## Analysis of Variance Table
##
## Model 1: csat ~ 1 + expense
## Model 2: csat ~ 1 + expense + house + senate
##   Res.Df   RSS Df Sum of Sq    F Pr(>F)
## 1      46 169050
## 2      44 149284  2     19766 2.9128 0.06486 .
## ---
## Signif. codes:  0 '***' 0.001 '**' 0.01 '*' 0.05 '.' 0.1 ' ' 1

```

### 4.5.5 Exercise 0

#### Ordinary least squares regression

Use the *states.rds* data set. Fit a model predicting energy consumed per capita (*energy*) from the percentage of residents living in metropolitan areas (*metro*). Be sure to

1. Examine/plot the data before fitting the model

```
##
```

2. Print and interpret the model `summary()`

```
##
```

3. `plot()` the model to look for deviations from modeling assumptions

```
##
```

4. Select one or more additional predictors to add to your model and repeat steps 1-3.  
Is this model significantly better than the model with `metro` as the only predictor?

```
##
```

[Click for Exercise 0 Solution](#)

Use the *states.rds* data set.

```
states <- read_rds("dataSets/states.rds")
```

Fit a model predicting energy consumed per capita (*energy*) from the percentage of residents living in metropolitan areas (*metro*). Be sure to:

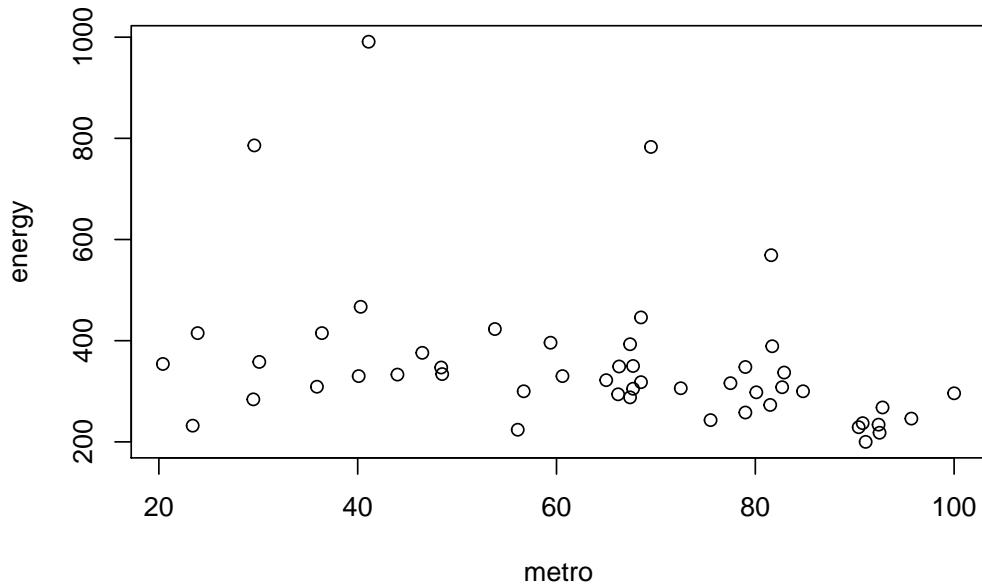
1. Examine/plot the data before fitting the model.

```
states_en_met <-
  states %>%
  select(metro, energy)

summary(states_en_met)

##      metro          energy
##  Min.   : 20.40   Min.   :200.0
##  1st Qu.: 46.98   1st Qu.:285.0
##  Median : 67.55   Median :320.0
##  Mean   : 64.07   Mean   :354.5
##  3rd Qu.: 81.58   3rd Qu.:371.5
##  Max.   :100.00   Max.   :991.0
##  NA's    :1         NA's   :1
```

```
plot(states_en_met)
```



```
cor(states_en_met, use = "pairwise")
```

```
##           metro      energy
## metro    1.0000000 -0.3397445
## energy   -0.3397445  1.0000000
```

2. Print and interpret the model `summary()`.

```
mod_en_met <- lm(energy ~ metro, data = states)
summary(mod_en_met)
```

```
##
## Call:
## lm(formula = energy ~ metro, data = states)
##
## Residuals:
##     Min      1Q  Median      3Q     Max 
## -215.51  -64.54  -30.87   18.71  583.97 
##
## Coefficients:
```

```

##             Estimate Std. Error t value Pr(>|t|)
## (Intercept) 501.0292    61.8136   8.105 1.53e-10 ***
## metro       -2.2871     0.9139  -2.503  0.0158 *
## ---
## Signif. codes:  0 '***' 0.001 '**' 0.01 '*' 0.05 '.' 0.1 ' ' 1
##
## Residual standard error: 140.2 on 48 degrees of freedom
## (1 observation deleted due to missingness)
## Multiple R-squared:  0.1154, Adjusted R-squared:  0.097
## F-statistic: 6.263 on 1 and 48 DF,  p-value: 0.01578

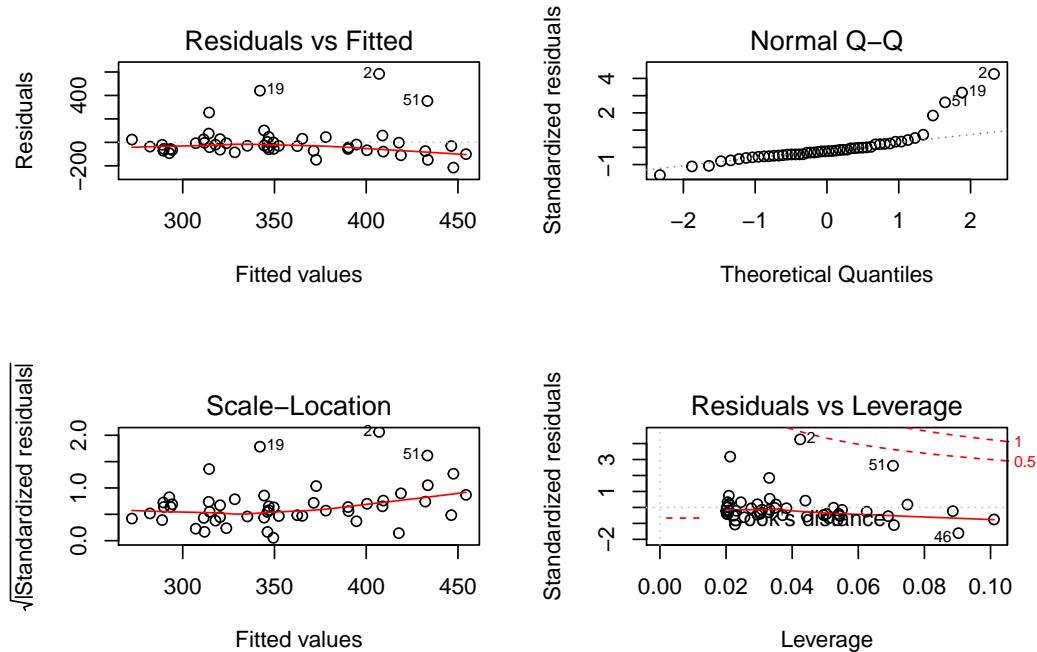
```

3. `plot()` the model to look for deviations from modeling assumptions.

```

par(mfrow = c(2, 2)) # splits the plotting window into 4 panels
plot(mod_en_met)

```



4. Select one or more additional predictors to add to your model and repeat steps 1-3.  
Is this model significantly better than the model with *metro* as the only predictor?

```

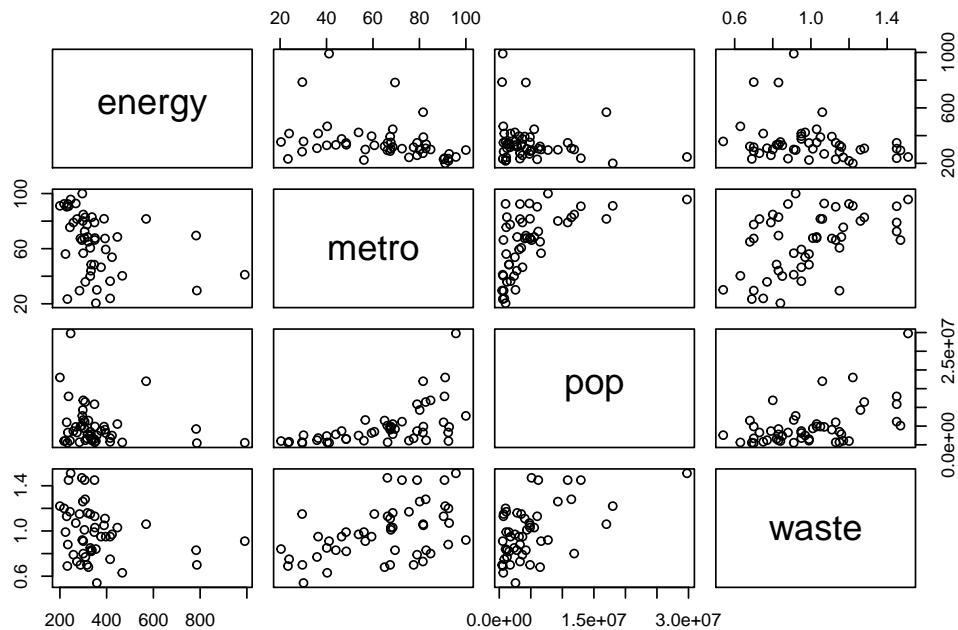
states_en_met_pop_wst <-
  states %>%
  select(energy, metro, pop, waste)

summary(states_en_met_pop_wst)

```

```
##      energy      metro      pop      waste
##  Min.   :200.0   Min.   : 20.40   Min.   : 454000   Min.   :0.5400
##  1st Qu.:285.0   1st Qu.: 46.98   1st Qu.:1299750   1st Qu.:0.8225
##  Median :320.0   Median : 67.55   Median :3390500   Median :0.9600
##  Mean   :354.5   Mean   : 64.07   Mean   :4962040   Mean   :0.9888
##  3rd Qu.:371.5   3rd Qu.: 81.58   3rd Qu.:5898000   3rd Qu.:1.1450
##  Max.   :991.0   Max.   :100.00   Max.   :29760000   Max.   :1.5100
##  NA's    :1       NA's    :1       NA's    :1       NA's    :1
```

```
plot(states_en_met_pop_wst)
```



```
cor(states_en_met_pop_wst, use = "pairwise")
```

```
##      energy      metro      pop      waste
## energy  1.0000000 -0.3397445 -0.1840357 -0.2526499
## metro   -0.3397445  1.0000000  0.5653562  0.4877881
## pop     -0.1840357  0.5653562  1.0000000  0.5255713
## waste   -0.2526499  0.4877881  0.5255713  1.0000000
```

```
mod_en_met_pop_waste <- lm(energy ~ 1 + metro + pop + waste, data = states)
summary(mod_en_met_pop_waste)
```

```
##
```

```

## Call:
## lm(formula = energy ~ 1 + metro + pop + waste, data = states)
##
## Residuals:
##    Min     1Q Median     3Q    Max 
## -224.62 -67.48 -31.76 12.65 589.48 
##
## Coefficients:
##              Estimate Std. Error t value Pr(>|t|)    
## (Intercept) 5.617e+02 9.905e+01 5.671   9e-07 ***
## metro      -2.079e+00 1.168e+00 -1.780   0.0816 .  
## pop        1.649e-06 4.809e-06  0.343   0.7332    
## waste      -8.307e+01 1.042e+02 -0.797   0.4295    
## ---      
## Signif. codes:  0 '***' 0.001 '**' 0.01 '*' 0.05 '.' 0.1 ' ' 1 
##
## Residual standard error: 142.2 on 46 degrees of freedom
##   (1 observation deleted due to missingness)
## Multiple R-squared:  0.1276, Adjusted R-squared:  0.07067 
## F-statistic: 2.242 on 3 and 46 DF,  p-value: 0.09599

anova(mod_en_met, mod_en_met_pop_waste)

```

```

## Analysis of Variance Table
##
## Model 1: energy ~ metro
## Model 2: energy ~ 1 + metro + pop + waste
##   Res.Df   RSS Df Sum of Sq   F Pr(>F)    
## 1     48 943103                        
## 2     46 930153  2     12949 0.3202 0.7276

```

## 4.6 Interactions & factors

**GOAL:** To learn how to specify interaction effects and fit models with categorical predictors. In particular:

1. Formula syntax for interaction effects
2. Factor levels and labels
3. Contrasts and pairwise comparisons

### 4.6.1 Modeling interactions

Interactions allow us assess the extent to which the association between one predictor and the outcome depends on a second predictor. For example: Does the association between expense and SAT scores depend on the median income in the state?

```
# Add the interaction to the model
sat_expense_by_percent <- lm(csat ~ 1 + expense + income + expense : income, data = states_data)

# same as above, but shorter syntax
sat_expense_by_percent <- lm(csat ~ 1 + expense * income, data = states_data)

# Show the regression coefficients table
summary(sat_expense_by_percent) %>% coef()
```

	Estimate	Std. Error	t value	Pr(> t )
## (Intercept)	1.380364e+03	1.720863e+02	8.021351	2.367069e-10
## expense	-6.384067e-02	3.270087e-02	-1.952262	5.687837e-02
## income	-1.049785e+01	4.991463e+00	-2.103161	4.083253e-02
## expense:income	1.384647e-03	8.635529e-04	1.603431	1.155395e-01

#### 4.6.2 Regression with categorical predictors

Let's try to predict SAT scores from region, a categorical variable. Note that you must make sure R does not think your categorical variable is numeric.

```
# make sure R knows region is categorical
str(states_data$region)

## Factor w/ 4 levels "West","N. East",...: 3 1 1 3 1 1 2 3 NA 3 ...
states_data$region <- factor(states_data$region)

# arguments to the factor() function
# factor(x, levels, labels)

levels(states_data$region)

## [1] "West"      "N. East"    "South"     "Midwest"

# Add region to the model
sat_region <- lm(csat ~ 1 + region, data = states_data)

# Show the results
summary(sat_region) %>% coef() # show the regression coefficients table

## Estimate Std. Error t value Pr(>|t|)
## (Intercept) 946.30769   14.79582 63.9577807 1.352577e-46
## regionN. East -56.75214   23.13285 -2.4533141 1.800383e-02
## regionSouth -16.30769   19.91948 -0.8186806 4.171898e-01
## regionMidwest 63.77564   21.35592  2.9863209 4.514152e-03
```

```
anova(sat_region) # show ANOVA table

## Analysis of Variance Table
##
## Response: csat
##          Df Sum Sq Mean Sq F value    Pr(>F)
## region      3  82049 27349.8  9.6102 4.859e-05 ***
## Residuals 46 130912   2845.9
## ---
## Signif. codes:  0 '***' 0.001 '**' 0.01 '*' 0.05 '.' 0.1 ' ' 1
```

So, make sure to tell R which variables are categorical by converting them to factors!

### 4.6.3 Setting factor reference groups & contrasts

**Contrasts** is the umbrella term used to describe the process of testing linear combinations of parameters from regression models. All statistical software use contrasts, but each software has different defaults and their own way of overriding these.

The default contrasts in R are “treatment” contrasts (aka “dummy coding”), where each level within a factor is identified within a matrix of binary 0 / 1 variables, with the first level chosen as the reference category. They’re called “treatment” contrasts, because of the typical use case where there is one control group (the reference group) and one or more treatment groups that are to be compared to the controls. It is easy to change the default contrasts to something other than treatment contrasts, though this is rarely needed. More often, we may want to change the reference group in treatment contrasts or get all sets of pairwise contrasts between factor levels.

```
# default treatment (dummy) contrasts
contrasts(states_data$region)

##           N. East South Midwest
## West          0    0     0
## N. East       1    0     0
## South         0    1     0
## Midwest       0    0     1

# change the reference group
states_data$region <- relevel(states_data$region, ref = "Midwest")

# check the reference group has changed
contrasts(states_data$region)

##           West N. East South
## Midwest      0      0     0
```

```

## West      1      0      0
## N. East   0      1      0
## South    0      0      1

# refit the model
mod_region <- lm(csat ~ 1 + region, data = states_data)
summary(mod_region) %>% coef()

##             Estimate Std. Error t value Pr(>|t|)
## (Intercept) 1010.08333 15.39998 65.589930 4.296307e-47
## regionWest   -63.77564 21.35592 -2.986321 4.514152e-03
## regionN. East -120.52778 23.52385 -5.123641 5.798399e-06
## regionSouth   -80.08333 20.37225 -3.931000 2.826007e-04

# get all pairwise contrasts between means
mod_region %>%
  emmeans(specs = pairwise ~ region)

## $emmeans
##   region emmean SE df lower.CL upper.CL
##   Midwest 1010 15.4 46     979     1041
##   West     946 14.8 46     917     976
##   N. East   890 17.8 46     854     925
##   South    930 13.3 46     903     957
##
## Confidence level used: 0.95
##
## $contrasts
##   contrast      estimate SE df t.ratio p.value
##   Midwest - West      63.8 21.4 46  2.986  0.0226
##   Midwest - N. East   120.5 23.5 46  5.124 <.0001
##   Midwest - South     80.1 20.4 46  3.931  0.0016
##   West - N. East      56.8 23.1 46  2.453  0.0812
##   West - South        16.3 19.9 46  0.819  0.8453
##   N. East - South    -40.4 22.2 46 -1.820  0.2774
##
## P value adjustment: tukey method for comparing a family of 4 estimates

```

#### 4.6.4 Exercise 1

##### Interactions & factors

Use the `states` data set.

1. Add on to the regression equation that you created in Exercise 1 by generating an interaction term and testing the interaction.

```
##
```

2. Try adding region to the model. Are there significant differences across the four regions?

```
##
```

Click for Exercise 1 Solution

Use the states data set.

1. Add on to the regression equation that you created in exercise 1 by generating an interaction term and testing the interaction.

```
mod_en_metro_by_waste <- lm(energy ~ 1 + metro * waste, data = states)
```

2. Try adding a region to the model. Are there significant differences across the four regions?

```
mod_en_region <- lm(energy ~ 1 + metro * waste + region, data = states)
anova(mod_en_metro_by_waste, mod_en_region)
```

```
## Analysis of Variance Table
##
## Model 1: energy ~ 1 + metro * waste
## Model 2: energy ~ 1 + metro * waste + region
##   Res.Df   RSS Df Sum of Sq    F Pr(>F)
## 1     46 930683
## 2     43 821247  3    109436 1.91 0.1422
```

## 4.7 Models with binary outcomes

**GOAL:** To learn how to use the `glm()` function to model binary outcomes. In particular:

1. The `family` and `link` components of the `glm()` function call
2. Transforming model coefficients into odds ratios
3. Transforming model coefficients into predicted marginal means

### 4.7.1 Logistic regression

This far we have used the `lm()` function to fit our regression models. `lm()` is great, but limited — in particular it only fits models for continuous dependent variables. For categorical dependent variables we can use the `glm()` function.

For these models we will use a different dataset, drawn from the National Health Interview Survey. From the CDC website:

The National Health Interview Survey (NHIS) has monitored the health of the nation since 1957. NHIS data on a broad range of health topics are collected through personal household interviews. For over 50 years, the U.S. Census Bureau has been the data collection agent for the National Health Interview Survey. Survey results have been instrumental in providing data to track health status, health care access, and progress toward achieving national health objectives.

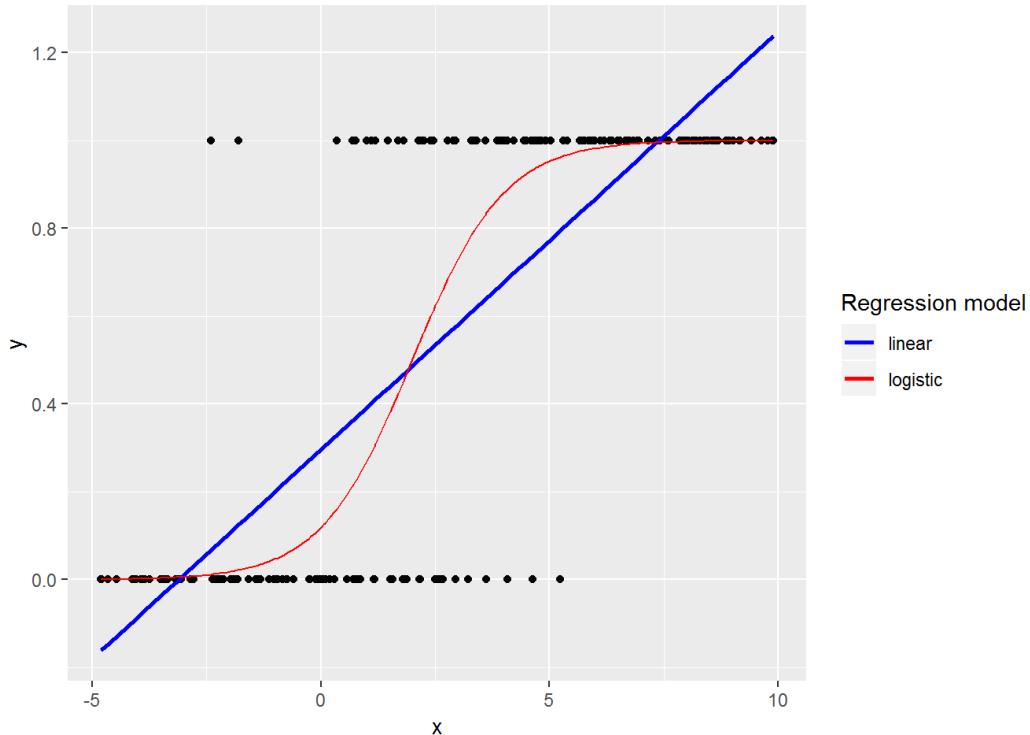
Load the National Health Interview Survey data:

```
NH11 <- read_rds("dataSets/NatHealth2011.rds")
```

### 4.7.2 Logistic regression example

Motivation for a logistic regression model — with a binary response:

1. Errors will not be normally distributed
2. Variance will not be homoskedastic
3. Predictions should be constrained to be on the interval [0, 1]



Anatomy of a generalized linear model:

```
# OLS model using lm()
lm(outcome ~ 1 + pred1 + pred2,
   data = mydata)

# OLS model using glm()
glm(outcome ~ 1 + pred1 + pred2,
   data = mydata,
   family = gaussian(link = "identity"))

# logistic model using glm()
glm(outcome ~ 1 + pred1 + pred2,
   data = mydata,
   family = binomial(link = "logit"))
```

The `family` argument sets the error distribution for the model, while the `link` function argument relates the predictors to the expected value of the outcome.

Let's predict the probability of being diagnosed with hypertension based on `age`, `sex`, `sleep`, and `bmi`. Here's the theoretical model:

$$\text{logit}(p(\text{hyperv}_i = 1)) = \beta_0 1 + \beta_1 \text{agep}_i + \beta_2 \text{sex}_i + \beta_3 \text{sleep}_i + \beta_4 \text{bmi}_i$$

where  $\text{logit}(\cdot)$  is the non-linear link function that relates a linear expression of the predictors to the expectation of the binary response:

$$\text{logit}(p(\text{hyperv}_i = 1)) = \ln \left( \frac{p(\text{hyperv}_i = 1)}{1 - p(\text{hyperv}_i = 1)} \right) = \ln \left( \frac{p(\text{hyperv}_i = 1)}{p(\text{hyperv}_i = 0)} \right)$$

And here's how we fit this model in R. First, let's clean up the hypertension outcome by making it binary:

```
str(NH11$hyperv) # check structure of hyperv

## Factor w/ 5 levels "1 Yes","2 No",...: 2 2 1 2 2 1 2 2 1 2 ...
levels(NH11$hyperv) # check levels of hyperv

## [1] "1 Yes"           "2 No"            "7 Refused"
## [4] "8 Not ascertained" "9 Don't know"

# collapse all missing values to NA
NH11$hyperv <- factor(NH11$hyperv, levels=c("2 No", "1 Yes"))
```

Now let's use `glm()` to estimate the model:

```
# run our regression model
hyp_out <- glm(hyperv ~ 1 + age_p + sex + sleep + bmi,
                data = NH11,
                family = binomial(link = "logit"))

summary(hyp_out) %>% coef()

##             Estimate Std. Error   z value Pr(>|z|)
## (Intercept) -4.269466028 0.0564947294 -75.572820 0.000000e+00
## age_p        0.060699303 0.0008227207  73.778743 0.000000e+00
## sex2 Female -0.144025092 0.0267976605  -5.374540 7.677854e-08
## sleep        -0.007035776 0.0016397197  -4.290841 1.779981e-05
## bmi          0.018571704 0.0009510828  19.526906 6.485172e-85
```

### 4.7.3 Odds ratios

Generalized linear models use link functions to relate the average value of the response to the predictors, so raw coefficients are difficult to interpret. For example, the `age` coefficient of .06 in the previous model tells us that for every one unit increase in `age`, the log odds of hypertension diagnosis increases by 0.06. Since most of us are not used to thinking in log odds this is not too helpful!

One solution is to transform the coefficients to make them easier to interpret. Here we transform them into odds ratios by exponentiating:

```
# point estimates
coef(hyp_out) %>% exp()

## (Intercept)      age_p sex2 Female      sleep      bmi
##  0.01398925  1.06257935  0.86586602  0.99298892  1.01874523

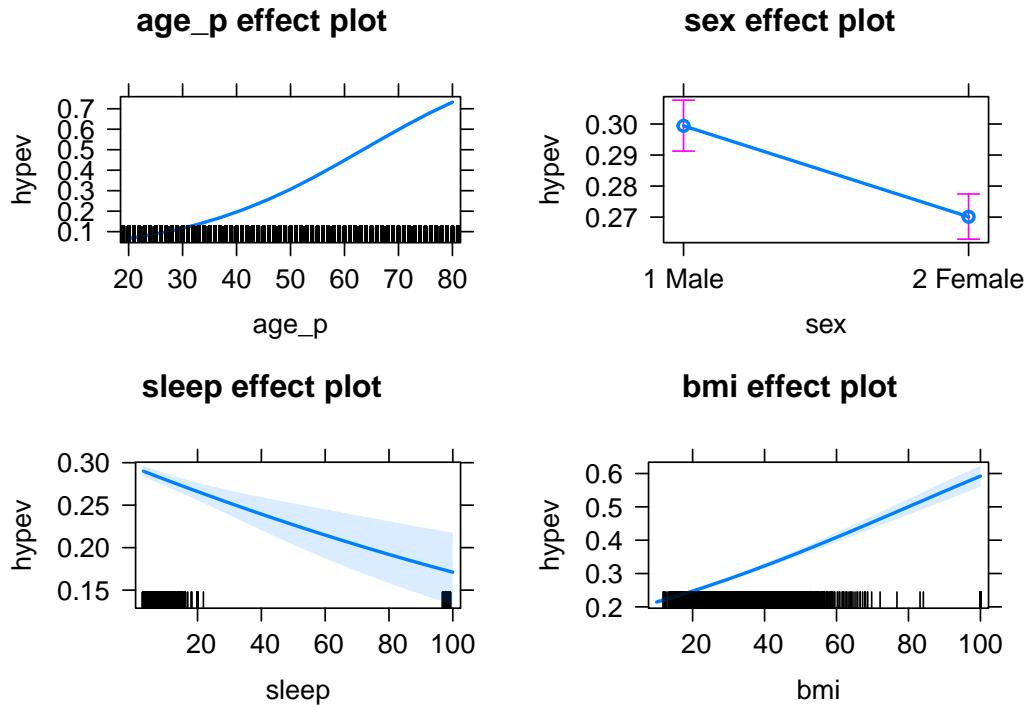
# confidence intervals
confint(hyp_out) %>% exp()

##               2.5 %     97.5 %
## (Intercept) 0.01251677 0.01561971
## age_p       1.06087385 1.06430082
## sex2 Female 0.82155196 0.91255008
## sleep        0.98978755 0.99617465
## bmi         1.01685145 1.02065009
```

#### 4.7.4 Predicted marginal means

Instead of reporting odds ratios, we may want to calculate predicted marginal means (sometimes called “least-squares means” or “estimated marginal means”). These are average values of the outcome at particular levels of the predictors. For ease of interpretation, we want these marginal means to be on the response scale (i.e., the probability scale). We can use the **effects** package to compute these quantities of interest for us (by default, the numerical output will be on the response scale).

```
hyp_out %>%
  allEffects() %>%
  plot(type = "response") # "response" refers to the probability scale
```



```
# generate a sequence of ages at which to get predictions of the outcome
age_years <- seq(20, 80, by = 5)
age_years
```

```
## [1] 20 25 30 35 40 45 50 55 60 65 70 75 80
```

```
eff_df <-
  hyp_out %>%
    allEffects(xlevels = list(age_p = age_years)) %>% # override defaults for age
    as.data.frame() # get confidence intervals

eff_df
```

	age_p	fit	se	lower	upper
## 1	20	0.06690384	0.001915704	0.06324553	0.07075778
## 2	25	0.08852692	0.002181618	0.08434323	0.09289708
## 3	30	0.11626770	0.002418813	0.11161020	0.12109307
## 4	35	0.15125876	0.002603243	0.14622690	0.15643204
## 5	40	0.19446321	0.002722428	0.18918282	0.19985467
## 6	45	0.24642528	0.002796260	0.24098582	0.25194677
## 7	50	0.30698073	0.002895857	0.30133437	0.31268554
## 8	55	0.37501156	0.003124112	0.36890868	0.38115441

```

## 9     60 0.44836479 0.003531792 0.44145305 0.45529654
## 10    65 0.52403564 0.004052454 0.51608756 0.53197156
## 11    70 0.59861876 0.004545531 0.58967801 0.60749436
## 12    75 0.66889903 0.004880732 0.65926418 0.67839434
## 13    80 0.73237506 0.004986539 0.72248912 0.74203457
##
## $sex
##      sex      fit       se    lower   upper
## 1 1 Male 0.2994186 0.004188707 0.2912739 0.3076922
## 2 2 Female 0.2701044 0.003715028 0.2628852 0.2774472
##
## $sleep
##    sleep      fit       se    lower   upper
## 1     3 0.2899941 0.003276427 0.2836147 0.2964575
## 2    30 0.2524895 0.007427001 0.2382124 0.2673219
## 3    50 0.2268657 0.012446183 0.2034008 0.2521806
## 4    80 0.1919843 0.018549461 0.1582199 0.2309771
## 5   100 0.1710955 0.021584286 0.1328287 0.2176200
##
## $bmi
##    bmi      fit       se    lower   upper
## 1 10 0.2144084 0.004121590 0.2064409 0.2225972
## 2 30 0.2835093 0.002849407 0.2779580 0.2891272
## 3 60 0.4085485 0.007450161 0.3940311 0.4232272
## 4 80 0.5003663 0.012139141 0.4765911 0.5241398
## 5 100 0.5921593 0.016180071 0.5601051 0.6234481

```

### 4.7.5 Exercise 2

#### Logistic regression

Use the NH11 data set that we loaded earlier.

1. Use `glm()` to conduct a logistic regression to predict ever worked (`everwrk`) using age (`age_p`) and marital status (`r_maritl`). Make sure you only keep the following two levels for `everwrk` (1 Yes and 2 No). Hint: use the `factor()` function. Also, make sure to drop any `r_maritl` levels that do not contain observations. Hint: see `?droplevels`.

```
##
```

2. Predict the probability of working for each level of marital status. Hint: use `allEffects()`

```
##
```

Note that the data are not perfectly clean and ready to be modeled. You will need to clean up at least some of the variables before fitting the model.

[Click for Exercise 2 Solution](#)

Use the NH11 data set that we loaded earlier. Note that the data is not perfectly clean and ready to be modeled. You will need to clean up at least some of the variables before fitting the model.

1. Use `glm()` to conduct a logistic regression to predict ever worked (`everwrk`) using age (`age_p`) and marital status (`r_maritl`). Make sure you only keep the following two levels for `everwrk` (1 Yes and 2 No). Hint: use the `factor()` function. Also, make sure to drop any `r_maritl` levels that do not contain observations. Hint: see `?droplevels`.

```
NH11 <-
NH11 %>%
  mutate(everwrk = factor(everwrk, levels = c("1 Yes", "2 No")),
        r_maritl = droplevels(r_maritl)
      )

mod_wk_age_mar <- glm(everwrk ~ 1 + age_p + r_maritl,
                      data = NH11,
                      family = binomial(link = "logit"))

summary(mod_wk_age_mar)

##
## Call:
## glm(formula = everwrk ~ 1 + age_p + r_maritl, family = binomial(link = "logit"),
##      data = NH11)
##
## Deviance Residuals:
##    Min      1Q  Median      3Q     Max
## -1.0436 -0.5650 -0.4391 -0.3370  2.7308
##
## Coefficients:
##                               Estimate Std. Error z value
## (Intercept)                 -0.440248  0.093538 -4.707
## age_p                     -0.029812  0.001645 -18.118
## r_maritl2 Married - spouse not in household  0.049675  0.217310  0.229
## r_maritl4 Widowed            0.683618  0.084335  8.106
## r_maritl5 Divorced           -0.730115  0.111681 -6.538
## r_maritl6 Separated          -0.128091  0.151366 -0.846
## r_maritl7 Never married       0.343611  0.069222  4.964
## r_maritl8 Living with partner -0.443583  0.137770 -3.220
## r_maritl9 Unknown marital status  0.395480  0.492967  0.802
## Pr(>|z|)
```

```

## (Intercept)          2.52e-06 ***
## age_p              < 2e-16 ***
## r_maritl2 Married - spouse not in household 0.81919
## r_maritl4 Widowed      5.23e-16 ***
## r_maritl5 Divorced     6.25e-11 ***
## r_maritl6 Separated    0.39742
## r_maritl7 Never married 6.91e-07 ***
## r_maritl8 Living with partner 0.00128 **
## r_maritl9 Unknown marital status 0.42241
## ---
## Signif. codes: 0 '***' 0.001 '**' 0.01 '*' 0.05 '.' 0.1 ' ' 1
##
## (Dispersion parameter for binomial family taken to be 1)
##
## Null deviance: 11082 on 14039 degrees of freedom
## Residual deviance: 10309 on 14031 degrees of freedom
## (18974 observations deleted due to missingness)
## AIC: 10327
##
## Number of Fisher Scoring iterations: 5

```

2. Predict the probability of working for each level of marital status. Hint: use `allEffects()`.

```

mod_wk_age_mar %>%
  allEffects() %>%
  as.data.frame()

```

```

## $age_p
##   age_p      fit       se     lower     upper
## 1    20 0.27587439 0.011448539 0.25400910 0.29886780
## 2    30 0.22043363 0.007483648 0.20611629 0.23545053
## 3    50 0.13477473 0.003183752 0.12865574 0.14113761
## 4    70 0.07902788 0.003053617 0.07324630 0.08522385
## 5    80 0.05987515 0.003123927 0.05403759 0.06629914
##
## $r_maritl
##                  r_maritl      fit       se     lower     upper
## 1 Married - spouse in household 0.10822000 0.004259644 0.10014980
## 2 Married - spouse not in household 0.11310823 0.021393167 0.07746061
## 3                               4 Widowed 0.19381087 0.010634762 0.17381358
## 4                               5 Divorced 0.05524394 0.005361664 0.04562877
## 5                               6 Separated 0.09646417 0.012707502 0.07426824
## 6                               7 Never married 0.14611000 0.007459212 0.13208775
## 7                               8 Living with partner 0.07224958 0.008904955 0.05662466
## 8                               9 Unknown marital status 0.15270076 0.063528455 0.06440837
##                               upper

```

```
## 1 0.11685606
## 2 0.16227532
## 3 0.21550873
## 4 0.06674358
## 5 0.12440219
## 6 0.16134411
## 7 0.09176661
## 8 0.32055728
```

## 4.8 Multilevel modeling

**GOAL:** To learn about how to use the `lmer()` function to model clustered data.  
In particular:

1. The formula syntax for incorporating random effects into a model
2. Calculating the intraclass correlation (ICC)
3. Model comparison for fixed and random effects

### 4.8.1 Multilevel modeling overview

- Multi-level (AKA hierarchical) models are a type of **mixed-effects** model
- They are used to model data that are clustered (i.e., non-independent)
- Mixed-effects models include two types of predictors: **fixed-effects** and **random effects**
  - **Fixed-effects** – observed levels are of direct interest (.e.g, sex, political party...)
  - **Random-effects** – observed levels not of direct interest: goal is to make inferences to a population represented by observed levels
  - In R, the `lme4` package is the most popular for mixed effects models
  - Use the `lmer()` function for liner mixed models, `glmer()` for generalized linear mixed models

### 4.8.2 The Exam data

The Exam data set contains exam scores of 4,059 students from 65 schools in Inner London. The variable names are as follows:

Variable	Description
school	School ID - a factor.
normexam	Normalized exam score.
standLRT	Standardized LR test score.
student	Student id (within school) - a factor

```
Exam <- read_rds("dataSets/Exam.rds")
```

### 4.8.3 The null model & ICC

As a preliminary step it is often useful to partition the variance in the dependent variable into the various levels. This can be accomplished by running a null model (i.e., a model with a random effects grouping structure, but no fixed-effects predictors).

```
# anatomy of lmer() function
lmer(outcome ~ 1 + pred1 + pred2 + (1 | grouping_variable),
      data = mydata)

# null model, grouping by school but not fixed effects.
Norm1 <- lmer(normexam ~ 1 + (1 | school),
               data = na.omit(Exam))
summary(Norm1)

## Linear mixed model fit by REML ['lmerMod']
## Formula: normexam ~ 1 + (1 | school)
##   Data: na.omit(Exam)
##
## REML criterion at convergence: 9962.9
##
## Scaled residuals:
##       Min     1Q Median     3Q    Max
## -3.8749 -0.6452  0.0045  0.6888  3.6836
##
## Random effects:
##   Groups   Name        Variance Std.Dev.
##   school   (Intercept) 0.1634   0.4042
##   Residual           0.8520   0.9231
##   Number of obs: 3662, groups: school, 65
##
## Fixed effects:
##             Estimate Std. Error t value
## (Intercept) -0.01310   0.05312  -0.247
```

The is  $.161/(.161 + .852) = .159 = 16\%$  of the variance is at the school level.

There is no consensus on how to calculate p-values for MLMs; hence why they are omitted from the `lme4` output. But, if you really need p-values, the `lmerTest` package will calculate p-values for you (using the Satterthwaite approximation).

### 4.8.4 Adding fixed-effects predictors

Here's a theoretical model that predicts exam scores from student's standardized tests scores:

$$\text{normexam}_{ij} = \mu_1 + \beta_1 \text{standLRT}_{ij} + U_{0j} + \epsilon_{ij}$$

where  $U_{0j}$  is the random intercept for the  $j$ th school. Let's implement this in R using `lmer()`:

```
Norm2 <- lmer(normexam ~ 1 + standLRT + (1 | school),
               data = na.omit(Exam))
summary(Norm2)

## Linear mixed model fit by REML ['lmerMod']
## Formula: normexam ~ 1 + standLRT + (1 | school)
##   Data: na.omit(Exam)
##
## REML criterion at convergence: 8483.5
##
## Scaled residuals:
##    Min     1Q Median     3Q    Max
## -3.6725 -0.6300  0.0234  0.6777  3.3340
##
## Random effects:
##   Groups   Name        Variance Std.Dev.
##   school   (Intercept) 0.09369  0.3061
##   Residual           0.56924  0.7545
##   Number of obs: 3662, groups: school, 65
##
## Fixed effects:
##             Estimate Std. Error t value
## (Intercept) -4.313e-05 4.055e-02 -0.001
## standLRT     5.669e-01 1.324e-02 42.821
##
## Correlation of Fixed Effects:
##          (Intr)
## standLRT 0.007
```

#### 4.8.5 Multiple degree of freedom comparisons

As with `lm()` and `glm()` models, you can compare the two `lmer()` models using the `anova()` function. With mixed effects models, this will produce a likelihood ratio test.

```
anova(Norm1, Norm2)

## Data: na.omit(Exam)
## Models:
## Norm1: normexam ~ 1 + (1 | school)
## Norm2: normexam ~ 1 + standLRT + (1 | school)
```

```

##      Df AIC   BIC logLik deviance Chisq Chi Df Pr(>Chisq)
## Norm1  3 9964.9 9983.5 -4979.4    9958.9
## Norm2  4 8480.1 8505.0 -4236.1    8472.1 1486.8      1 < 2.2e-16 ***
## ---
## Signif. codes:  0 '***' 0.001 '**' 0.01 '*' 0.05 '.' 0.1 ' ' 1

```

#### 4.8.6 Random slopes

Add a random effect of students' standardized test scores as well. Now in addition to estimating the distribution of intercepts across schools, we also estimate the distribution of the slope of exam on standardized test.

```

Norm3 <- lmer(normexam ~ 1 + standLRT + (1 + standLRT | school),
               data = na.omit(Exam))
summary(Norm3)

## Linear mixed model fit by REML ['lmerMod']
## Formula: normexam ~ 1 + standLRT + (1 + standLRT | school)
##   Data: na.omit(Exam)
##
## REML criterion at convergence: 8442.8
##
## Scaled residuals:
##   Min    1Q Median    3Q   Max
## -3.7904 -0.6246  0.0245  0.6734  3.4376
##
## Random effects:
##   Groups   Name        Variance Std.Dev. Corr
##   school   (Intercept) 0.09092  0.3015
##           standLRT    0.01639  0.1280   0.49
##   Residual            0.55589  0.7456
##   Number of obs: 3662, groups: school, 65
##
## Fixed effects:
##             Estimate Std. Error t value
## (Intercept) -0.01250   0.04011  -0.312
## standLRT     0.56094   0.02119  26.474
##
## Correlation of Fixed Effects:
##          (Intr)
## standLRT 0.360

```

#### 4.8.7 Test the significance of the random slope

To test the significance of a random slope just compare models with and without the random slope term using a likelihood ratio test:

```
anova(Norm2, Norm3)

## Data: na.omit(Exam)
## Models:
## Norm2: normexam ~ 1 + standLRT + (1 | school)
## Norm3: normexam ~ 1 + standLRT + (1 + standLRT | school)
##          Df    AIC    BIC  logLik deviance Chisq Chi Df Pr(>Chisq)
## Norm2   4 8480.1 8505.0 -4236.1    8472.1
## Norm3   6 8444.1 8481.4 -4216.1    8432.1 40.01      2  2.051e-09 ***
## ---
## Signif. codes:  0 '***' 0.001 '**' 0.01 '*' 0.05 '.' 0.1 ' ' 1
```

#### 4.8.8 Exercise 3

##### Multilevel modeling

Use the `bh1996` dataset:

```
## install.packages("multilevel")
data(bh1996, package="multilevel")
```

From the data documentation:

Variables are Leadership Climate (`LEAD`), Well-Being (`WBEING`), and Work Hours (`HRS`). The group identifier is named `GRP`.

1. Create a null model predicting well-being (`WBEING`)

```
##
```

2. Calculate the ICC for your null model

```
##
```

3. Run a second multi-level model that adds two individual-level predictors, average number of hours worked (`HRS`) and leadership skills (`LEAD`) to the model and interpret your output.

```
##
```

4. Now, add a random effect of average number of hours worked (`HRS`) to the model and interpret your output. Test the significance of this random term.

```
##
```

Click for Exercise 3 Solution

Use the dataset, bh1996:

```
# install.packages("multilevel")
data(bh1996, package="multilevel")
```

From the data documentation:

Variables are Leadership Climate (LEAD), Well-Being (WBEING), and Work Hours (HRS). The group identifier is named GRP.

1. Create a null model predicting wellbeing (WBEING).

```
mod_grp0 <- lmer(WBEING ~ 1 + (1 | GRP), data = na.omit(bh1996))
summary(mod_grp0)
```

```
## Linear mixed model fit by REML ['lmerMod']
## Formula: WBEING ~ 1 + (1 | GRP)
##   Data: na.omit(bh1996)
##
## REML criterion at convergence: 19347.3
##
## Scaled residuals:
##    Min     1Q Median     3Q    Max
## -3.3217 -0.6475  0.0311  0.7182  2.6674
##
## Random effects:
##   Groups   Name        Variance Std.Dev.
##   GRP      (Intercept) 0.0358   0.1892
##   Residual           0.7895   0.8885
##   Number of obs: 7382, groups: GRP, 99
##
## Fixed effects:
##             Estimate Std. Error t value
## (Intercept)  2.7743    0.0222 124.9
```

3. Run a second multi-level model that adds two individual-level predictors, average number of hours worked (HRS) and leadership skills (LEAD) to the model and interpret your output.

```
mod_grp1 <- lmer(WBEING ~ 1 + HRS + LEAD + (1 | GRP), data = na.omit(bh1996))
summary(mod_grp1)
```

```

## Linear mixed model fit by REML ['lmerMod']
## Formula: WBEING ~ 1 + HRS + LEAD + (1 | GRP)
##   Data: na.omit(bh1996)
##
## REML criterion at convergence: 17860
##
## Scaled residuals:
##    Min     1Q Median     3Q    Max
## -3.9188 -0.6588  0.0382  0.7040  3.6440
##
## Random effects:
##   Groups   Name      Variance Std.Dev.
##   GRP      (Intercept) 0.01929  0.1389
##   Residual           0.64668  0.8042
##   Number of obs: 7382, groups: GRP, 99
##
## Fixed effects:
##             Estimate Std. Error t value
## (Intercept) 1.686160  0.067702 24.906
## HRS        -0.031617  0.004378 -7.221
## LEAD        0.500743  0.012811 39.087
##
## Correlation of Fixed Effects:
##   (Intr) HRS
## HRS -0.800
## LEAD -0.635  0.121

```

- Now, add a random effect of average number of hours worked (`HRS`) to the model and interpret your output. Test the significance of this random term.

```

mod_grp2 <- lmer(WBEING ~ 1 + HRS + LEAD + (1 + HRS | GRP), data = na.omit(bh1996))
anova(mod_grp1, mod_grp2)

```

```

## Data: na.omit(bh1996)
## Models:
## mod_grp1: WBEING ~ 1 + HRS + LEAD + (1 | GRP)
## mod_grp2: WBEING ~ 1 + HRS + LEAD + (1 + HRS | GRP)
##          Df AIC BIC logLik deviance Chisq Chi Df Pr(>Chisq)
## mod_grp1 5 17848 17882 -8918.9    17838
## mod_grp2 7 17851 17899 -8918.3    17837 1.2202      2     0.5433

```

## 4.9 Wrap-up

### 4.9.1 Feedback

These workshops are a work in progress, please provide any feedback to: [help@iq.harvard.edu](mailto:help@iq.harvard.edu)

#### 4.9.2 Resources

- IQSS
  - Workshops: <https://dss.iq.harvard.edu/workshop-materials>
  - Data Science Services: <https://dss.iq.harvard.edu/>
  - Research Computing Environment: <https://iqss.github.io/dss-rce/>
- HBS
  - Research Computing Services workshops: <https://training.rcs.hbs.org/workshops>
  - Other HBS RCS resources: <https://training.rcs.hbs.org/workshop-materials>
  - RCS consulting email: <mailto:research@hbs.edu>



# Chapter 5

## R Graphics

### Topics

- R `ggplot2` package
- Geometric objects and aesthetics
- Setup basic plots
- Add and modify scales and legends
- Manipulate plot labels
- Change and create plot themes

### 5.1 Setup

#### 5.1.1 Software and Materials

Follow the R Installation instructions and ensure that you can successfully start RStudio.

#### 5.1.2 Class Structure

Informal - Ask questions at any time. Really!

Collaboration is encouraged - please spend a minute introducing yourself to your neighbors!

#### 5.1.3 Prerequisites

This is an intermediate R course:

- Assumes working knowledge of R
- Relatively fast-paced

### 5.1.4 Launch an R session

Start RStudio and create a new project:

- On Windows click the start button and search for RStudio. On Mac RStudio will be in your applications folder.
- In Rstudio go to **File** → **New Project**.
- Choose **Existing Directory** and browse to the workshop materials directory on your desktop.
- Choose **File** → **Open File** and select the file with the word “BLANK” in the name.

### 5.1.5 Packages

You should have already installed the `tidyverse` and `rmarkdown` packages onto your computer before the workshop — see R Installation. Now let’s load these packages into the search path of our R session.

```
library(tidyverse)
library(rmarkdown)
```

The `ggplot2` package is contained within `tidyverse`, but we also want to install two additional packages, `scales` and `ggrepel`, which provide additional functionality.

```
# install.packages("scales")
library(scales)

# install.packages("ggrepel")
library(ggrepel)
```

### 5.1.6 Goals

We will learn about the `grammar of graphics` — a system for understanding the building blocks of a graph — using the `ggplot2` package. In particular, we’ll learn about:

1. Basic plots, **aesthetic mapping and inheritance**
2. Tailoring **statistical transformations** to particular plots
3. **Modifying scales** to change axes and add labels
4. **Faceting** to create many small plots
5. Changing plot **themes**

## 5.2 Why ggplot2?

`ggplot2` is a package within in the `tidyverse` suite of packages. Advantages of `ggplot2` include:

- consistent underlying **grammar of graphics** (Wilkinson, 2005)
- very flexible — plot specification at a high level of abstraction
- theme system for polishing plot appearance
- many users, active mailing list

That said, there are some things you cannot (or should not) do with *ggplot2*:

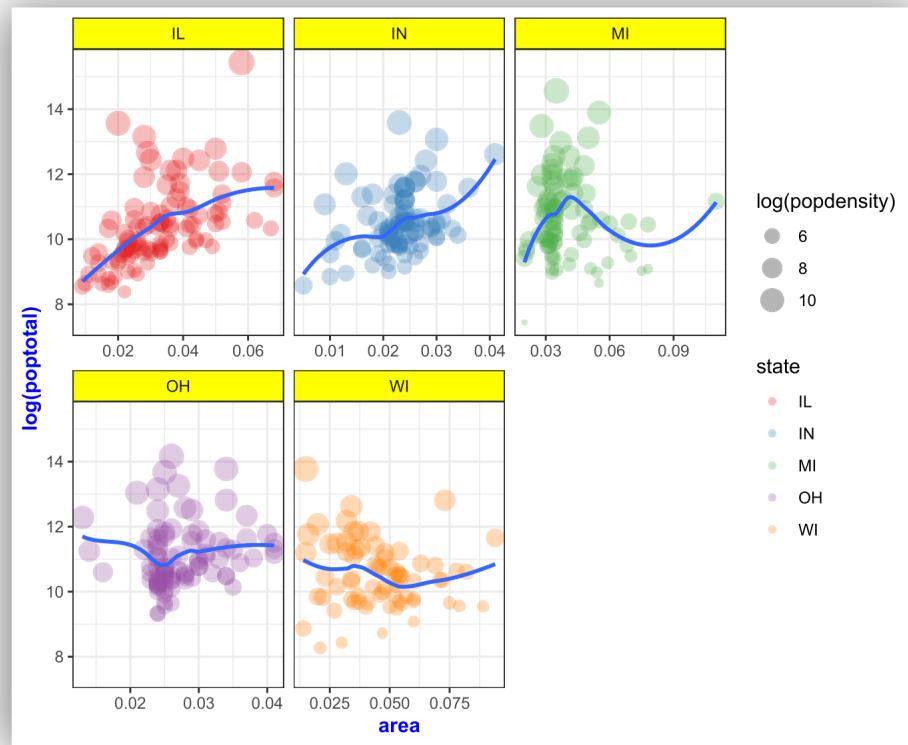
- 3-dimensional graphics (see the *rgl* package)
- Graph-theory type graphs (nodes/edges layout; see the *igraph* package)
- Interactive graphics (see the *ggvis* package)

### 5.2.1 What is the Grammar Of Graphics?

The basic idea: independently specify plot building blocks and combine them to create just about any kind of graphical display you want. Building blocks of a graph include the following (**bold denotes essential elements**):

- **data**
- **aesthetic mapping**
- **geometric object**
- statistical transformations
- scales
- coordinate system
- position adjustments
- faceting
- themes

By the end of this workshop, you should understand what these building blocks do and how to use them to create the following plot:



### 5.2.2 ggplot2 VS base graphics

Compared to base graphics, `ggplot2`

- is more verbose for simple / canned graphics
- is less verbose for complex / custom graphics
- does not have methods (data should always be in a `data.frame`)
- has sensible defaults for generating legends

## 5.3 Geometric objects & aesthetics

### 5.3.1 Aesthetic mapping

In ggplot land *aesthetic* means “something you can see”. Examples include:

- position (i.e., on the x and y axes)

- color (“outside” color)
- fill (“inside” color)
- shape (of points)
- linetype
- size

Each type of geom accepts only a subset of all aesthetics; refer to the geom help pages to see what mappings each geom accepts. Aesthetic mappings are set with the `aes()` function.

### 5.3.2 Geometric objects (geom)

Geometric objects are the actual marks we put on a plot. Examples include:

- points (`geom_point()`, for scatter plots, dot plots, etc.)
- lines (`geom_line()`, for time series, trend lines, etc.)
- boxplot (`geom_boxplot()`, for boxplots!)

A plot **must have at least one geom**; there is no upper limit. You can add a geom to a plot using the `+` operator.

Each `geom_` has a particular set of aesthetic mappings associated with it. Some examples are provided below, with required aesthetics in **bold** and optional aesthetics in plain text:

<code>geom_</code>	Usage	Aesthetics
<code>geom_point()</code>	Scatter plot	<code>x,y,alpha,color,fill,group,shape,size,stroke</code>
<code>geom_line()</code>	Line plot	<code>x,y,alpha,color,linetype,size</code>
<code>geom_bar()</code>	Bar chart	<code>x,y,alpha,color,fill,group,linetype,size</code>
<code>geom_boxplot()</code>	Boxplot	<code>x,lower,upper,middle,ymin,ymax,alpha,color,fill</code>
<code>geom_density()</code>	Density plot	<code>x,y,alpha,color,fill,group,linetype,size,weight</code>
<code>geom_smooth()</code>	Conditional means	<code>x,y,alpha,color,fill,group,linetype,size,weight</code>
<code>geom_label()</code>	Text	<code>x,y,label,alpha,angle,color,family,fontface,size</code>

You can get a list of all available geometric objects and their associated aesthetics at <https://ggplot2.tidyverse.org/reference/>. Or, simply type `geom_<tab>` in any good R IDE (such as Rstudio) to see a list of functions starting with `geom_`.

#### 5.3.2.1 Points (scatterplot)

Now that we know about geometric objects and aesthetic mapping, we can make a `ggplot()`. `geom_point()` requires mappings for `x` and `y`, all others are optional.

##### Example data: housing prices

Let's look at housing prices.

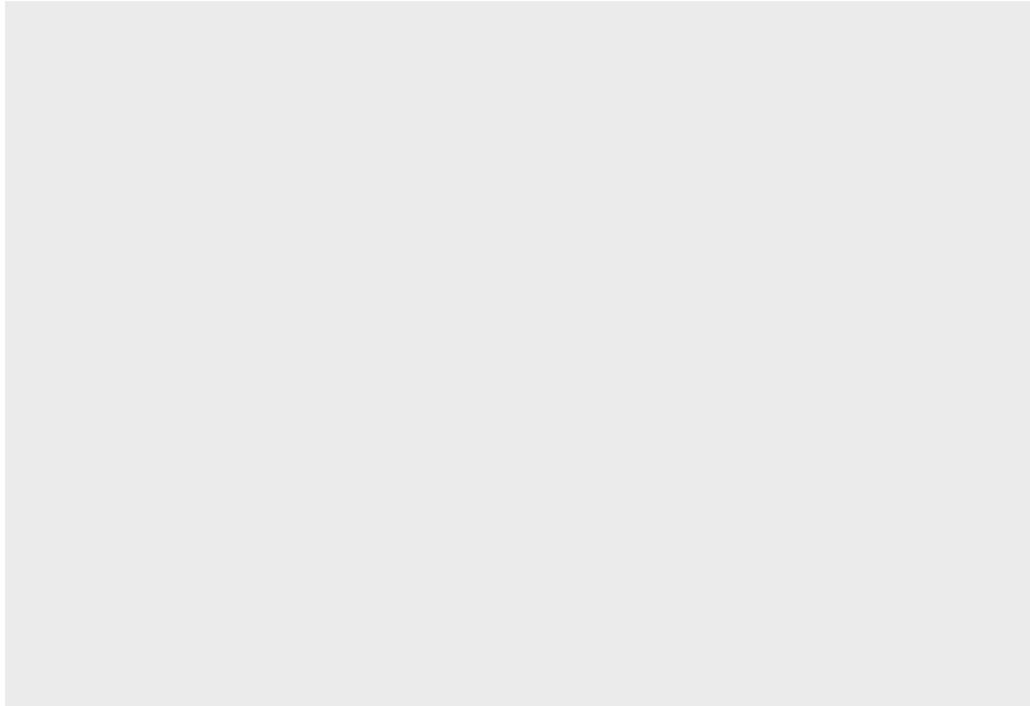
```
housing <- read_csv("dataSets/landdata-states.csv")
head(housing[1:5]) # view first 5 columns

## # A tibble: 6 x 5
##   State region Date Home_Value Structure_Cost
##   <chr> <chr>   <dbl>      <dbl>          <dbl>
## 1 AK    West     2010.     224952        160599
## 2 AK    West     2010.     225511        160252
## 3 AK    West     2010.     225820        163791
## 4 AK    West     2010     224994        161787
## 5 AK    West     2008     234590        155400
## 6 AK    West     2008.    233714        157458

# create a subset for 1st quarter 2001
hp2001Q1 <- housing %>% filter(Date == 2001.25)
```

**Step 1:** create a blank canvas by specifying data:

```
ggplot(data = hp2001Q1)
```



**Step 2:** specify aesthetic mappings (how you want to map variables to visual aspects):

```
# here we map "Land_Value" and "Structure_Cost" to the x- and y-axes.  
ggplot(data = hp2001Q1, mapping = aes(x = Land_Value, y = Structure_Cost))
```



**Step 3:** add new layers of geometric objects that will show up on the plot:

```
# here we use geom_point() to add a layer with point (dot) elements  
# as the geometric shapes to represent the data.  
ggplot(data = hp2001Q1, mapping = aes(x = Land_Value, y = Structure_Cost)) +  
  geom_point()
```



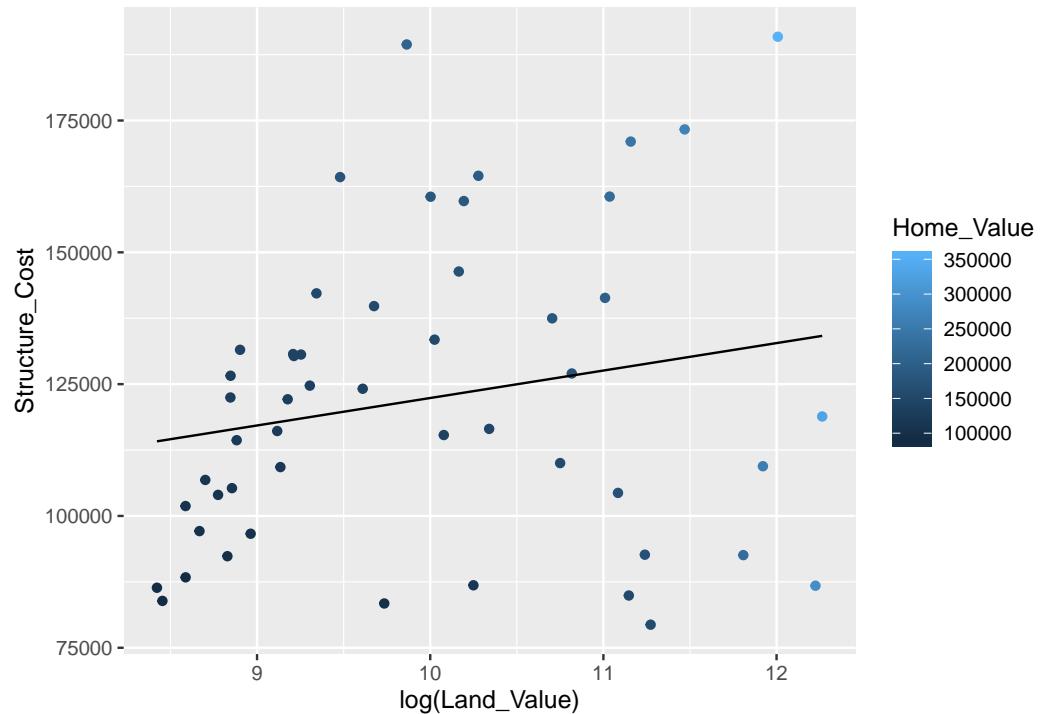
### 5.3.2.2 Lines (prediction line)

A plot constructed with `ggplot()` can have more than one geom. In that case the mappings established in the `ggplot()` call are plot defaults that can be added to or overridden — this is referred to as **aesthetic inheritance**. Our plot could use a regression line:

```
# get predicted values from a linear regression
hp2001Q1$pred_SC <- lm(Structure_Cost ~ log(Land_Value), data = hp2001Q1) %>%
  predict()

p1 <- ggplot(hp2001Q1, aes(x = log(Land_Value), y = Structure_Cost))

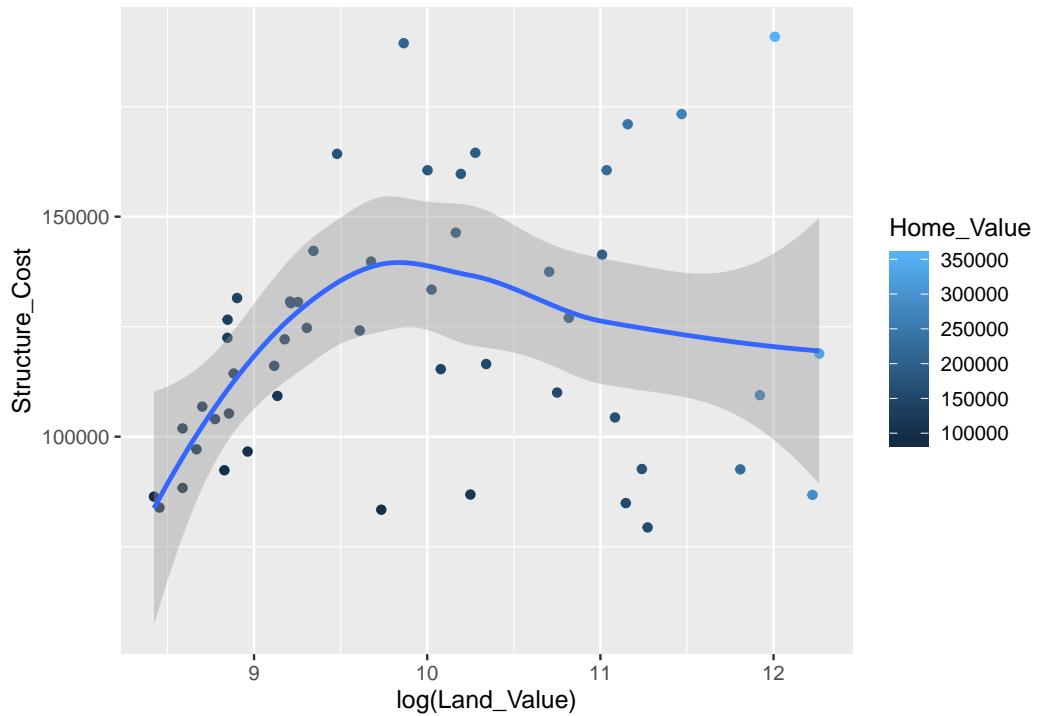
p1 + geom_point(aes(color = Home_Value)) + # values for x and y are inherited from the ggplot()
  geom_line(aes(y = pred_SC)) # add predicted values to the plot overriding the y values from the
```



### 5.3.2.3 Smoothers

Not all geometric objects are simple shapes; the smooth geom includes a line and a ribbon.

```
p1 +  
  geom_point(aes(color = Home_Value)) +  
  geom_smooth()
```



#### 5.3.2.4 Text (label points)

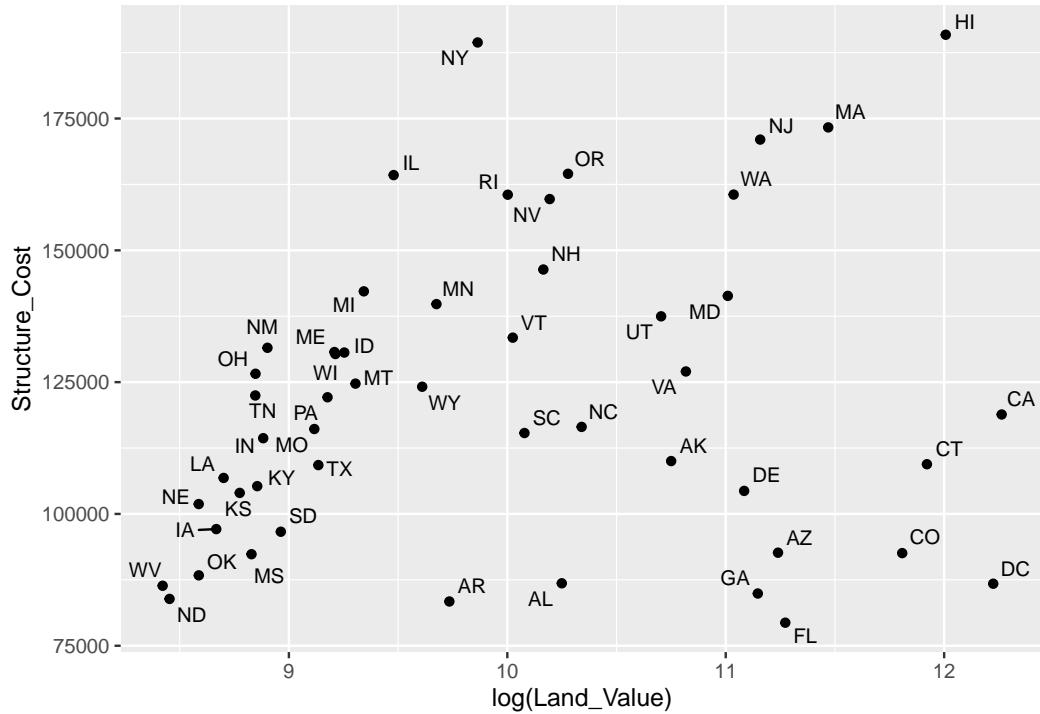
Each geom accepts a particular set of mappings; for example `geom_text()` accepts a `label` mapping.

```
p1 +  
  geom_text(aes(label = State), size = 3)
```



But what if we want to include points and labels? We can use `geom_text_repel()` to keep labels from overlapping the points and each other.

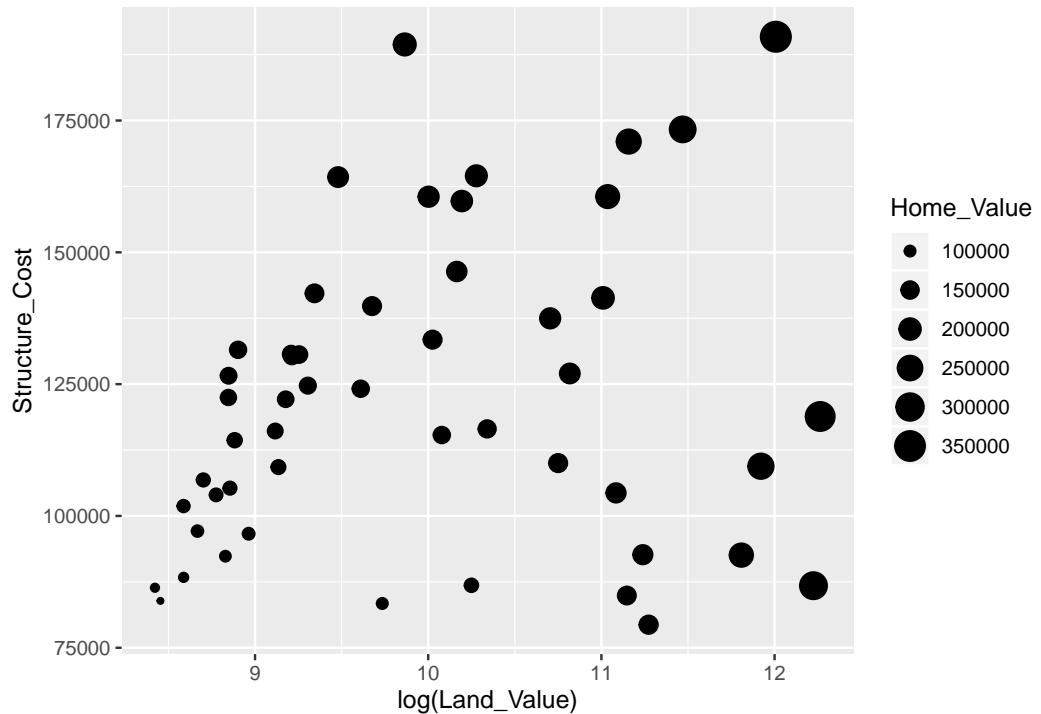
```
p1 +  
  geom_point() +  
  geom_text_repel(aes(label = State), size = 3)
```



### 5.3.3 Aesthetic mapping VS assignment

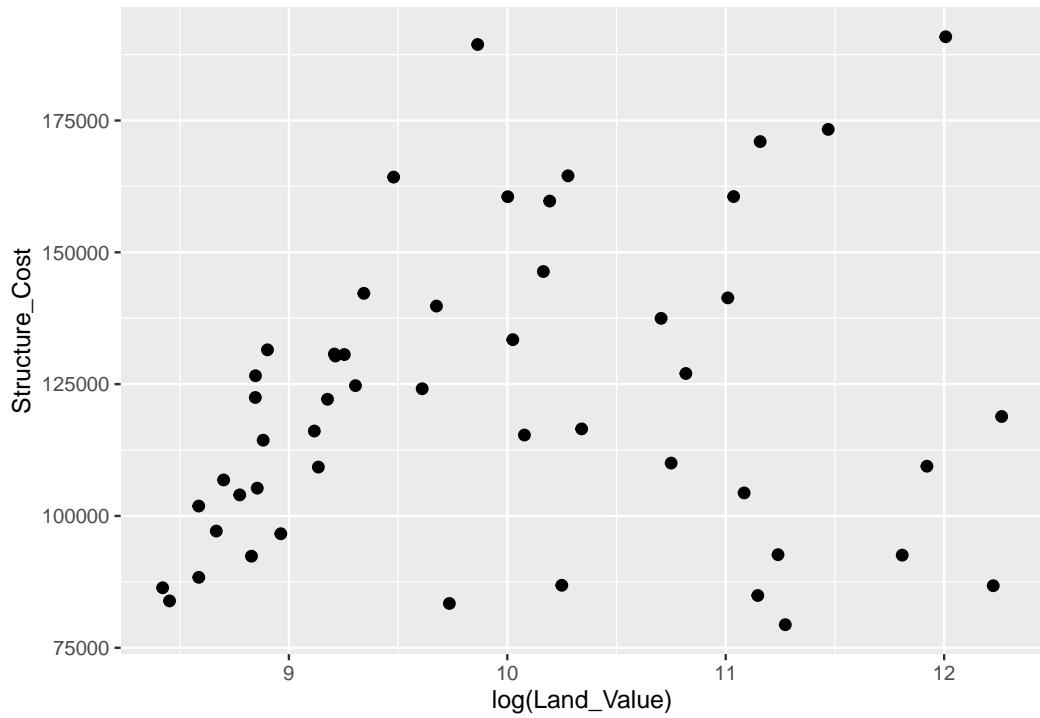
- Variables are **mapped** to aesthetics inside the `aes()` function.

```
p1 +  
  geom_point(aes(size = Home_Value))
```



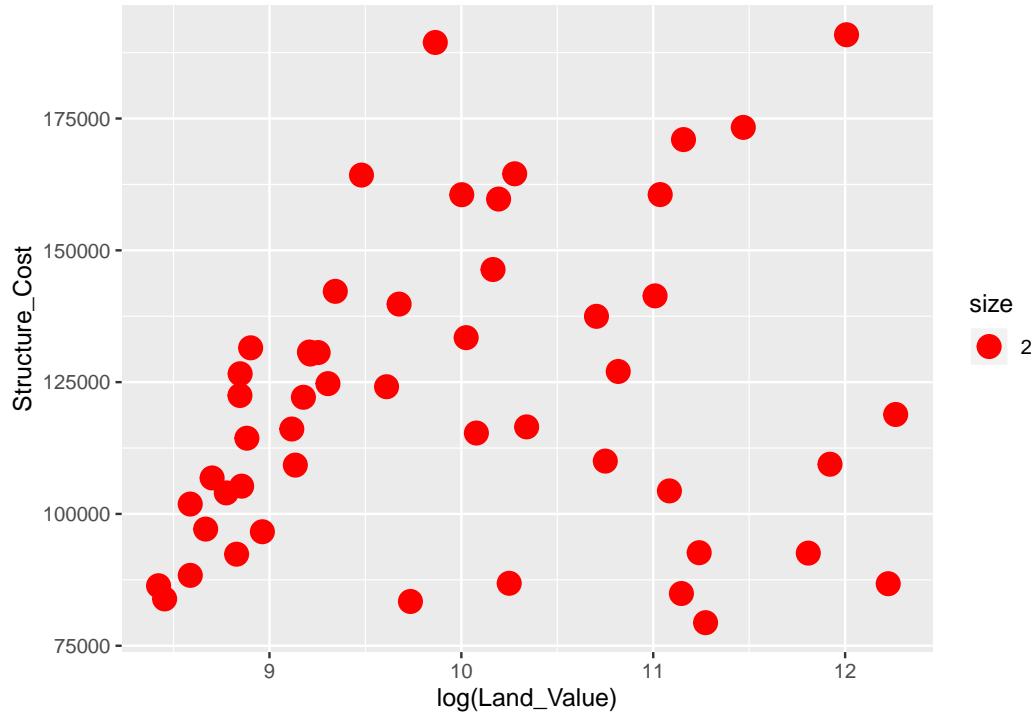
2. Constants are **assigned** to aesthetics outside the `aes()` call

```
p1 +  
  geom_point(size = 2)
```



This sometimes leads to confusion, as in this example:

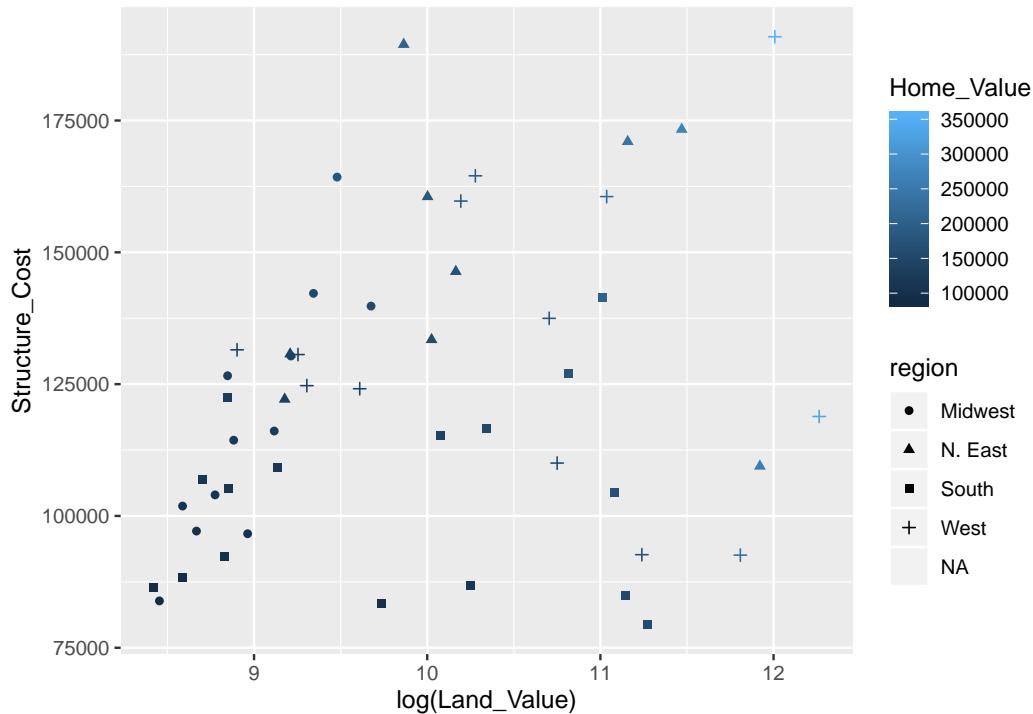
```
p1 +  
  geom_point(aes(size = 2),# incorrect! 2 is not a variable  
             color="red") # this is fine -- all points red
```



#### 5.3.4 Mapping variables to other aesthetics

Other aesthetics are mapped in the same way as x and y in the previous example.

```
p1 +  
  geom_point(aes(color = Home_Value, shape = region))
```



### 5.3.5 Exercise 0

The data for the exercises is available in the `dataSets/EconomistData.csv` file. Read it in with

```
dat <- read_csv("dataSets/EconomistData.csv")
```

Original sources for these data are <http://www.transparency.org/content/download/64476/1031428> [http://hdrstats.undp.org/en/indicators/display\\_cf\\_xls\\_indicator.cfm?indicator\\_id=103106&lang=en](http://hdrstats.undp.org/en/indicators/display_cf_xls_indicator.cfm?indicator_id=103106&lang=en)

These data consist of *Human Development Index* and *Corruption Perception Index* scores for several countries.

1. Create a scatter plot with CPI on the x axis and HDI on the y axis.

```
##
```

2. Color the points in the previous plot blue.

```
##
```

3. Map the color of the points to `Region`.

```
##
```

4. Keeping color mapped to `Region`, make the points bigger by setting size to 2

```
##
```

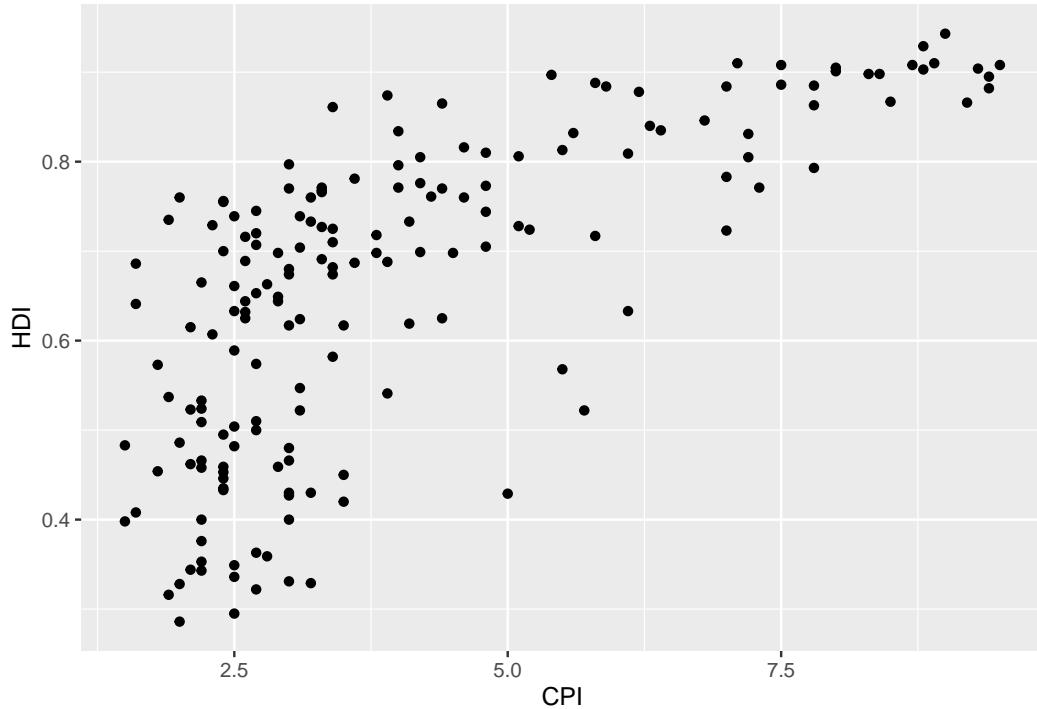
5. Keeping color mapped to `Region`, map the size of the points to `HDI_Rank`

```
##
```

Click for Exercise 0 Solution

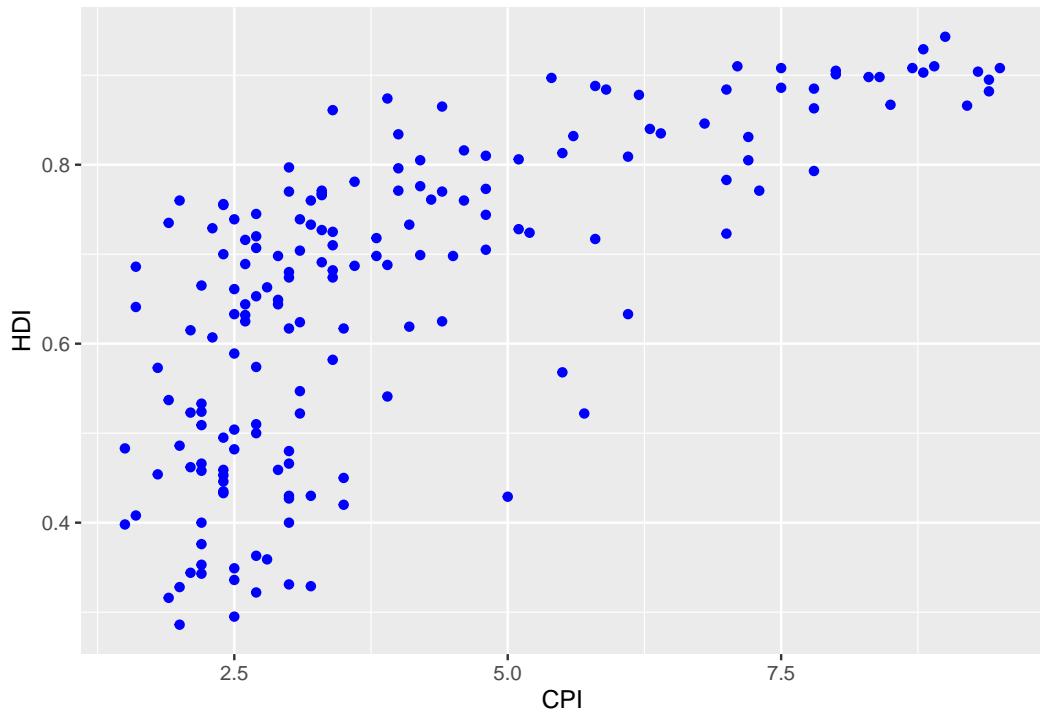
1. Create a scatter plot with `CPI` on the x axis and `HDI` on the y axis.

```
ggplot(dat, aes(x = CPI, y = HDI)) +  
  geom_point()
```



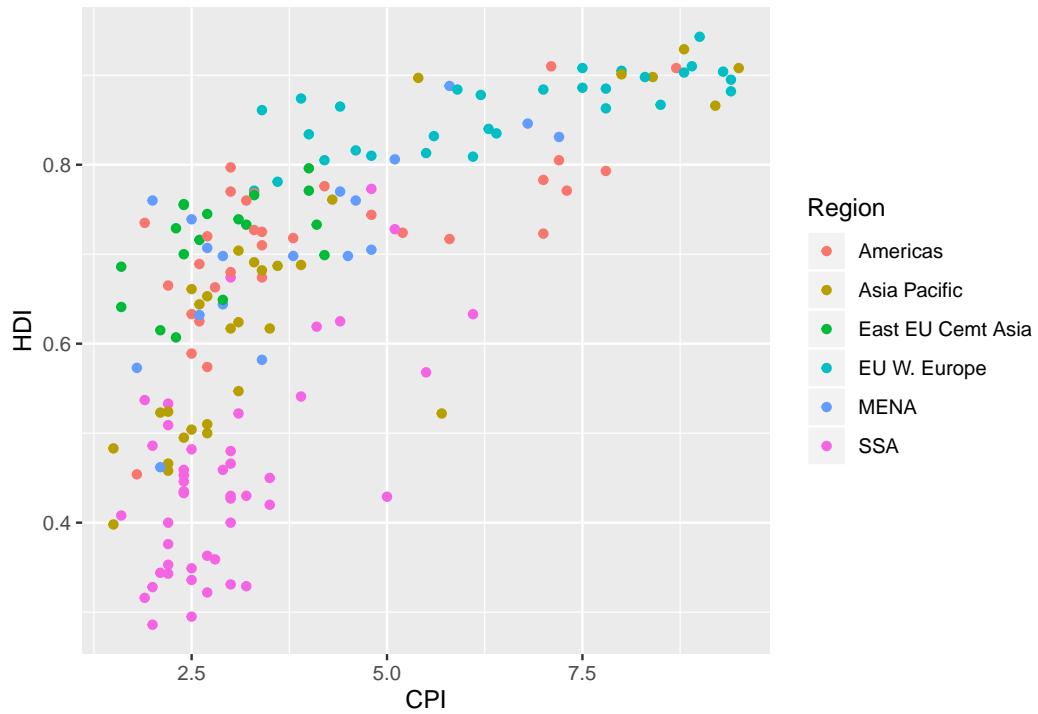
2. Color the points in the previous plot blue.

```
ggplot(dat, aes(x = CPI, y = HDI)) +  
  geom_point(color = "blue")
```



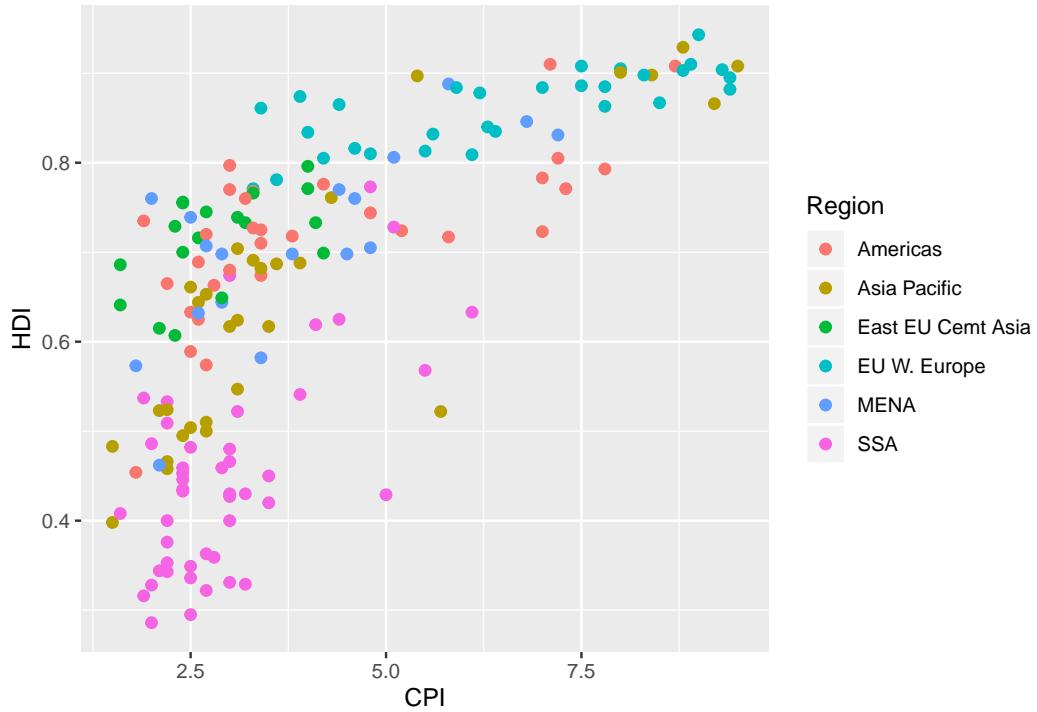
3. Map the color of the the points to Region.

```
ggplot(dat, aes(x = CPI, y = HDI)) +  
  geom_point(aes(color = Region))
```



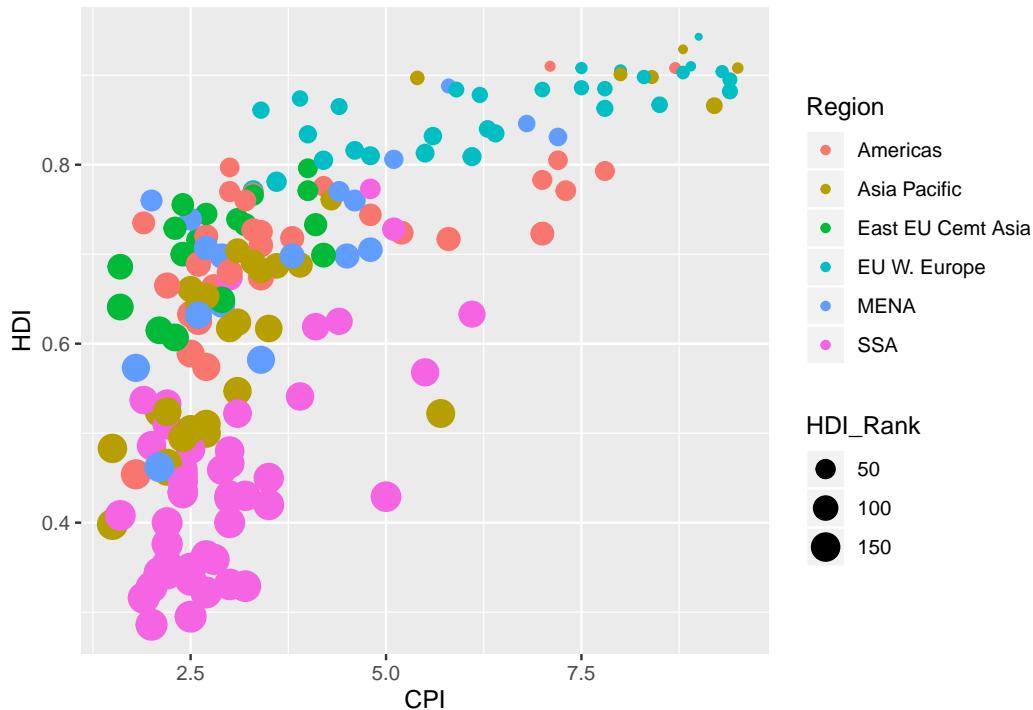
4. Keeping color mapped to Region, make the points bigger by setting size to 2.

```
ggplot(dat, aes(x = CPI, y = HDI)) +  
  geom_point(aes(color = Region), size = 2)
```



5. Keeping color mapped to Region, map the size of the points to HDI\_Rank.

```
ggplot(dat, aes(x = CPI, y = HDI)) +
  geom_point(aes(color = Region, size = HDI_Rank))
```



## 5.4 Statistical transformations

### 5.4.1 Why transform data?

Some plot types (such as scatterplots) do not require transformations; each point is plotted at x and y coordinates equal to the original value. Other plots, such as boxplots, histograms, prediction lines etc. require statistical transformations:

- for a boxplot the y values must be transformed to the median and 1.5(IQR)
- for a smoother the y values must be transformed into predicted values

Each geom has a default statistic, but these can be changed. For example, the default statistic for `geom_histogram()` is `stat_bin()`:

```
args(geom_histogram)
```

```
## function (mapping = NULL, data = NULL, stat = "bin", position = "stack",
##          ..., binwidth = NULL, bins = NULL, na.rm = FALSE, show.legend = NA,
##          inherit.aes = TRUE)
## NULL
```

```
args(stat_bin)

## function (mapping = NULL, data = NULL, geom = "bar", position = "stack",
##   ..., binwidth = NULL, bins = NULL, center = NULL, boundary = NULL,
##   breaks = NULL, closed = c("right", "left"), pad = FALSE,
##   na.rm = FALSE, show.legend = NA, inherit.aes = TRUE)
## NULL
```

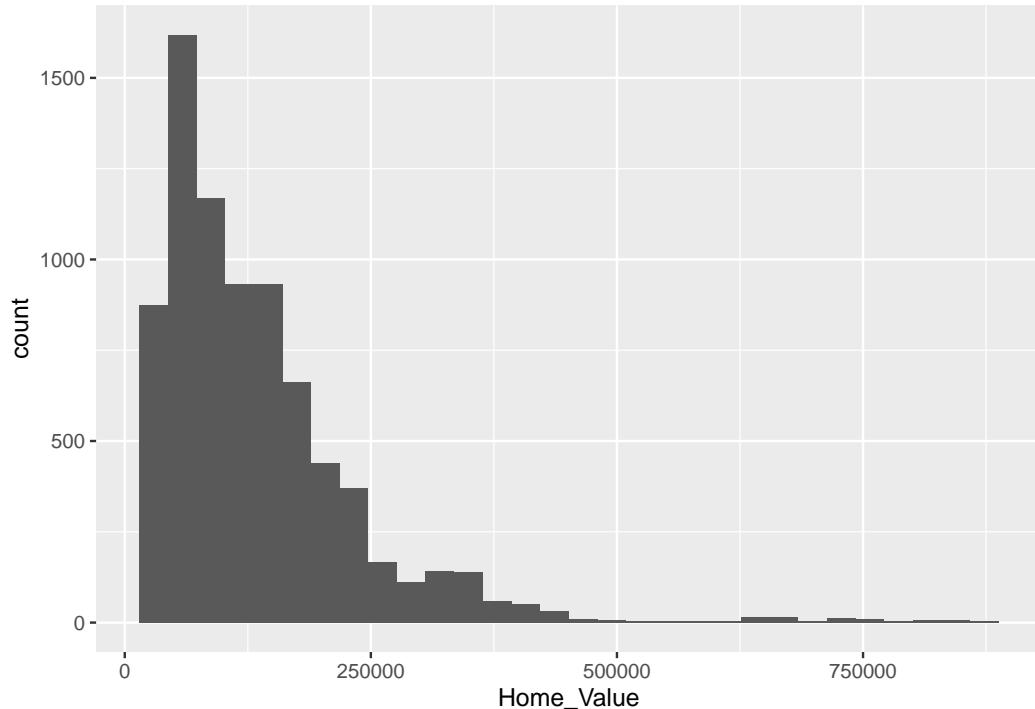
Here is a list of geoms and their default statistics <https://ggplot2.tidyverse.org/reference/>

### 5.4.2 Setting arguments

Arguments to `stat_` functions can be passed through `geom_` functions. This can be slightly annoying because in order to change them you have to first determine which stat the geom uses, then determine the arguments to that stat.

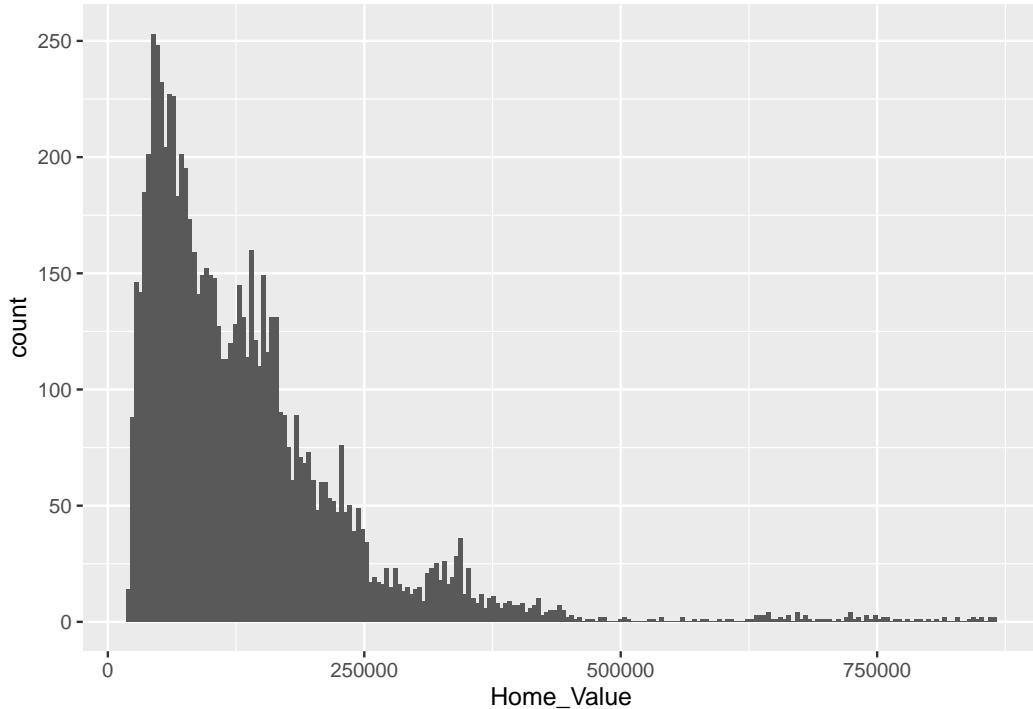
For example, here is the default histogram of `Home_Value`:

```
p2 <- ggplot(housing, aes(x = Home_Value))
p2 + geom_histogram()
```



We can change the binning scheme by passing the `binwidth` argument to the `stat_bin()` function:

```
p2 + geom_histogram(stat = "bin", binwidth = 4000)
```



### 5.4.3 Changing the transformation

Sometimes the default statistical transformation is not what you need. This is often the case with pre-summarized data:

```
housing_sum <-
  housing %>%
  group_by(State) %>%
  summarize(Home_Value_Mean = mean(Home_Value)) %>%
  ungroup()

head(housing_sum)

## # A tibble: 6 x 2
##   State   Home_Value_Mean
##   <chr>      <dbl>
## 1 AK          147385.
```

```

## 2 AL          92545.
## 3 AR          82077.
## 4 AZ          140756.
## 5 CA          282808.
## 6 CO          158176.

ggplot(housing_sum, aes(x = State, y = Home_Value_Mean)) +
  geom_bar()

## Error: stat_count() must not be used with a y aesthetic.

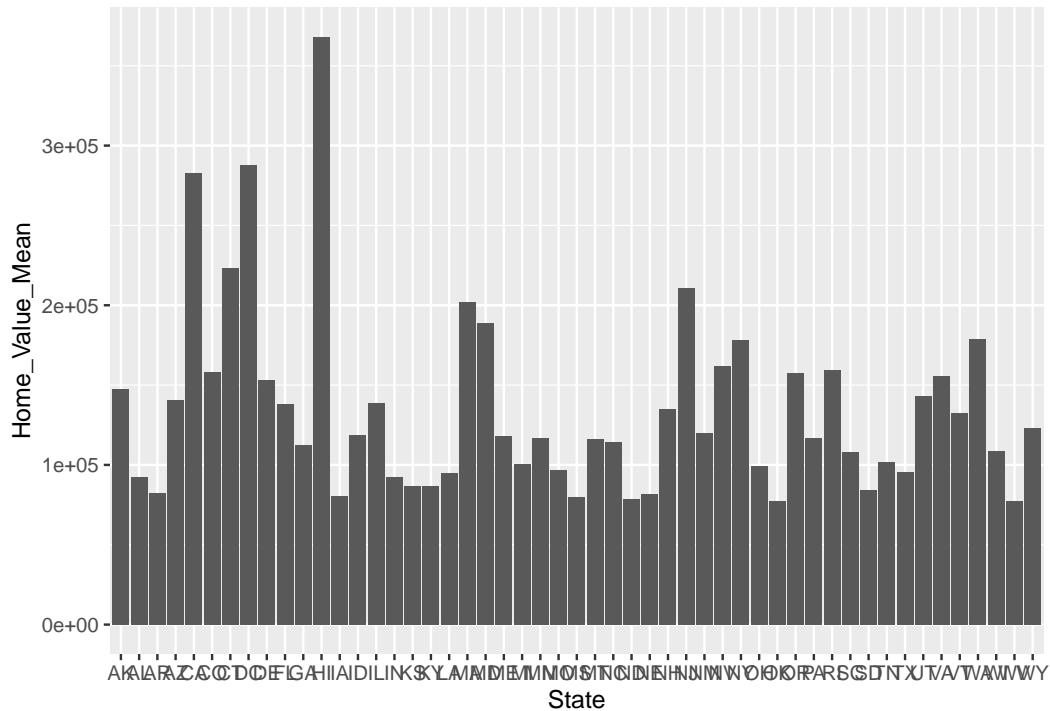
```

What is the problem with the previous plot? Basically we take binned and summarized data and ask ggplot to bin and summarize it again (remember, `geom_bar()` defaults to `stat = stat_count`; obviously this will not work. We can fix it by telling `geom_bar()` to use a different statistical transformation function. The `identity` function returns the same output as the input.

```

ggplot(housing_sum, aes(x = State, y = Home_Value_Mean)) +
  geom_bar(stat = "identity")

```



#### 5.4.4 Exercise 1

1. Re-create a scatter plot with CPI on the x axis and HDI on the y axis (as you did in the previous exercise).

```
##
```

2. Overlay a smoothing line on top of the scatter plot using `geom_smooth()`.

```
##
```

3. Make the smoothing line in `geom_smooth()` less smooth. Hint: see `?loess`.

```
##
```

4. Change the smoothing line in `geom_smooth()` to use a linear model for the predictions. Hint: see `?stat_smooth`.

```
##
```

5. BONUS 1: Allow the smoothing line created in the last plot to vary across the levels of `Region`. Hint: map `Region` to the color and fill aesthetics.

```
##
```

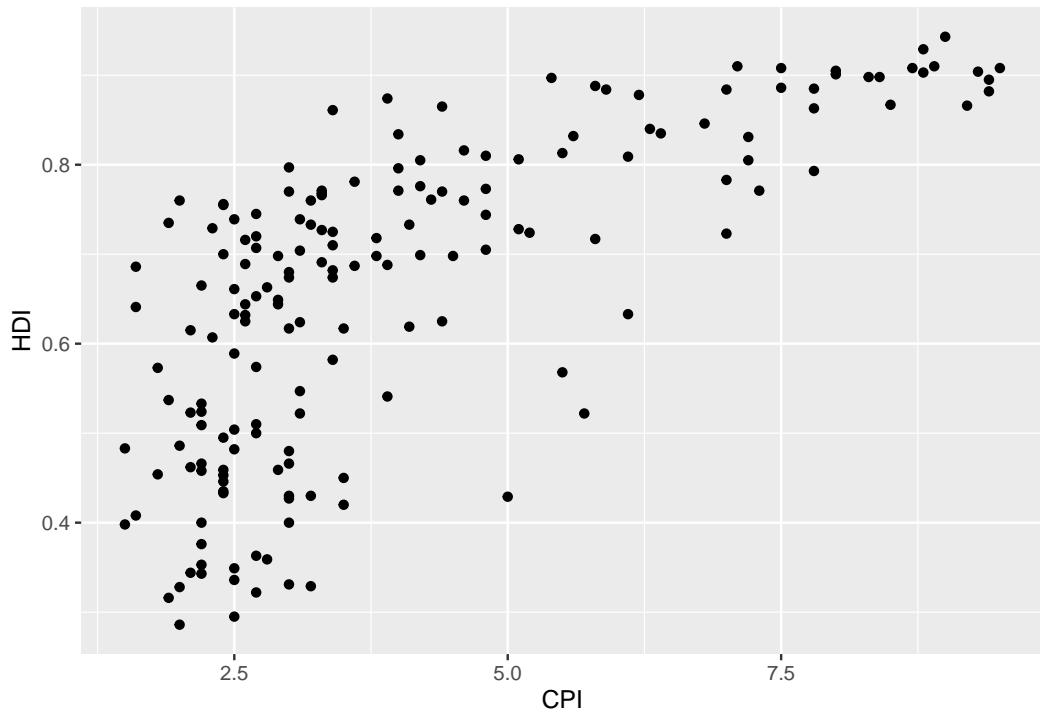
6. BONUS 2: Overlay a loess (`method = "loess"`) smoothing line on top of the scatter plot using `geom_line()`. Hint: change the statistical transformation.

```
##
```

Click for Exercise 1 Solution

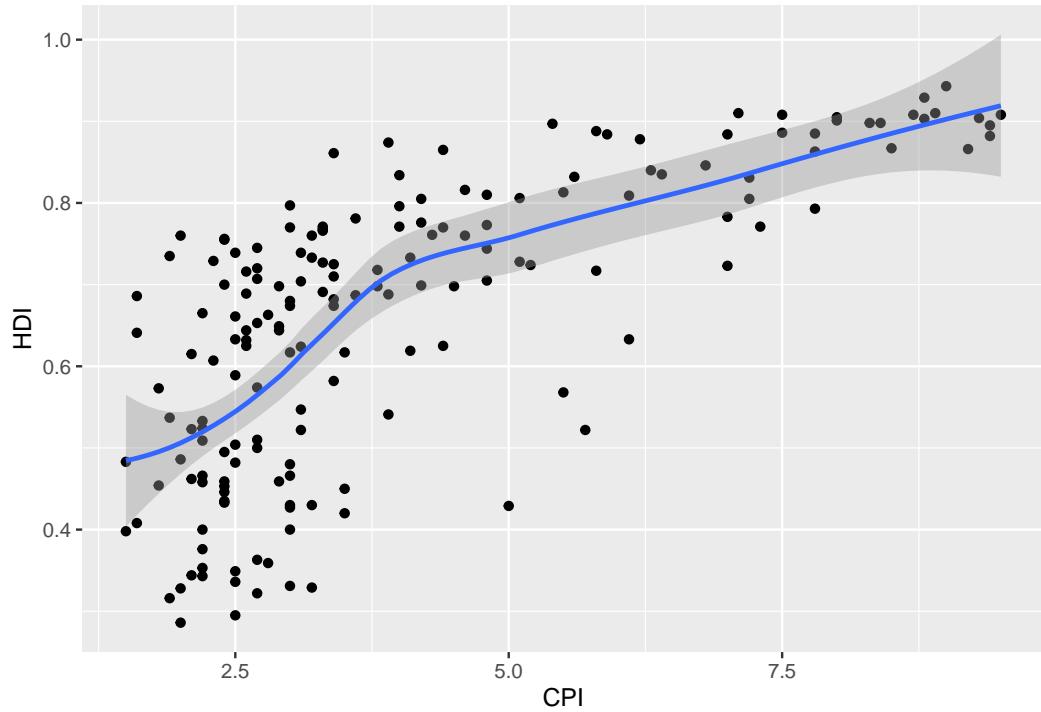
1. Re-create a scatter plot with CPI on the x axis and HDI on the y axis (as you did in the previous exercise).

```
ggplot(dat, aes(x = CPI, y = HDI)) +
  geom_point()
```



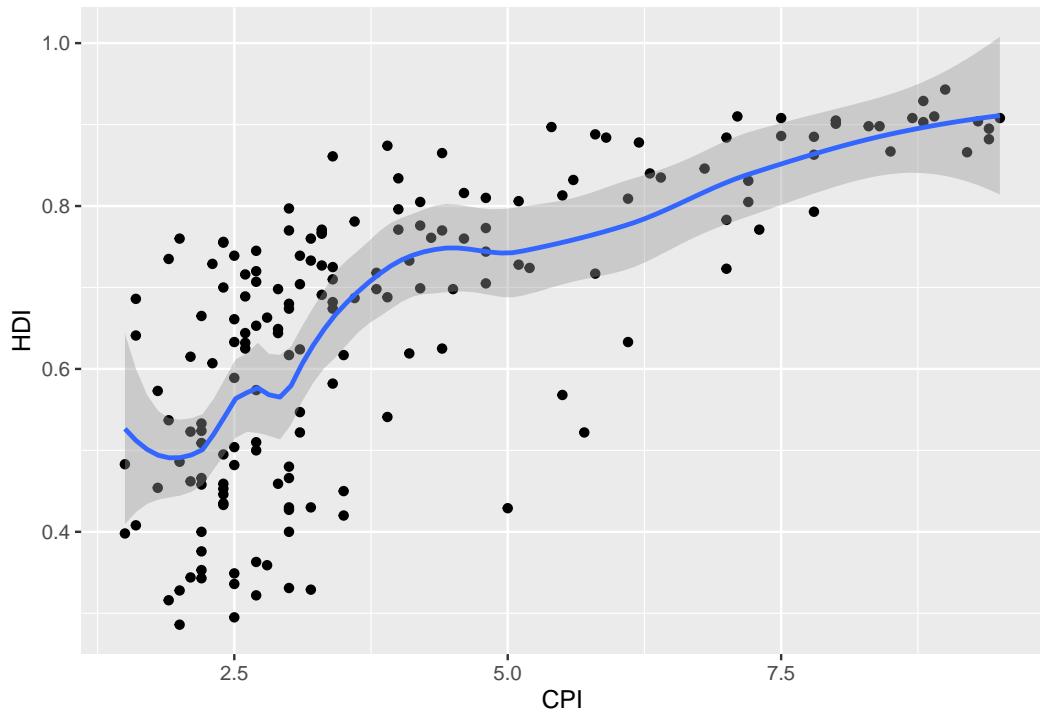
2. Overlay a smoothing line on top of the scatter plot using `geom_smooth()`.

```
ggplot(dat, aes(x = CPI, y = HDI)) +
  geom_point() +
  geom_smooth()
```



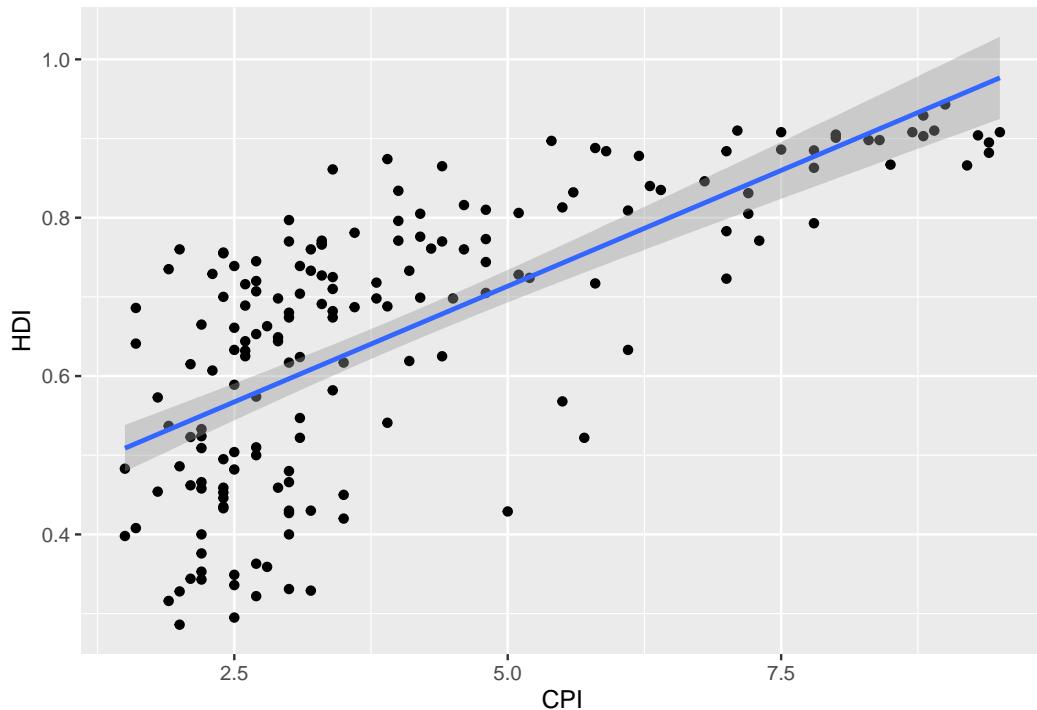
3. Make the smoothing line in `geom_smooth()` less smooth. Hint: see `?loess`.

```
ggplot(dat, aes(x = CPI, y = HDI)) +  
  geom_point() +  
  geom_smooth(span = .4)
```



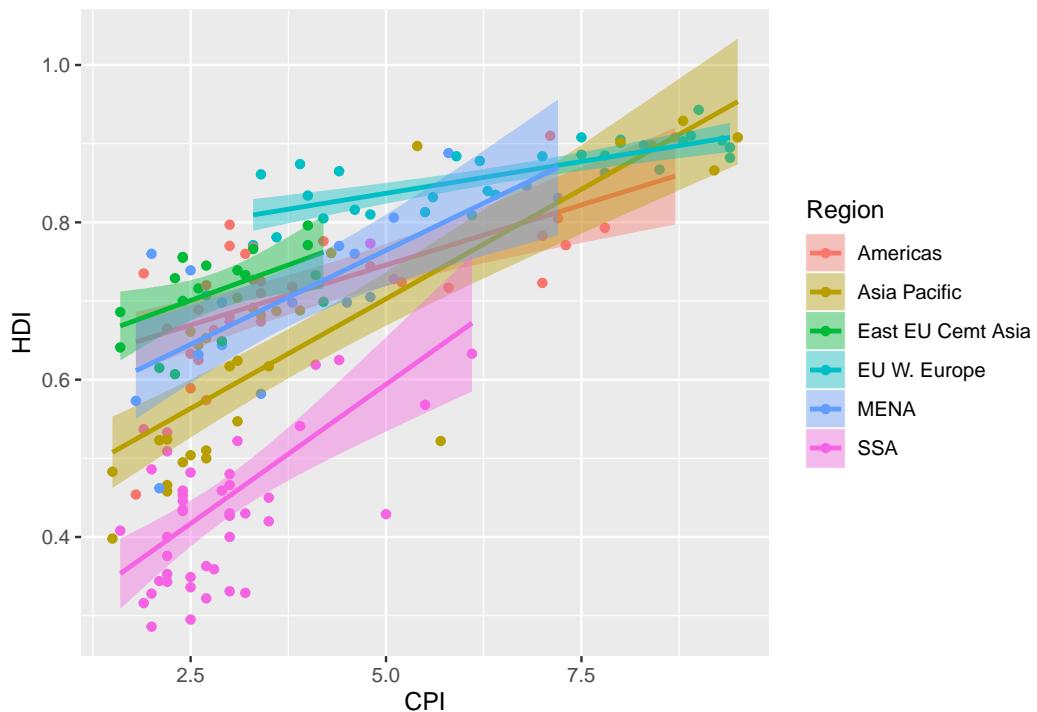
4. Change the smoothing line in `geom_smooth()` to use a linear model for the predictions.  
Hint: see `?stat_smooth`.

```
ggplot(dat, aes(x = CPI, y = HDI)) +
  geom_point() +
  geom_smooth(method = "lm")
```



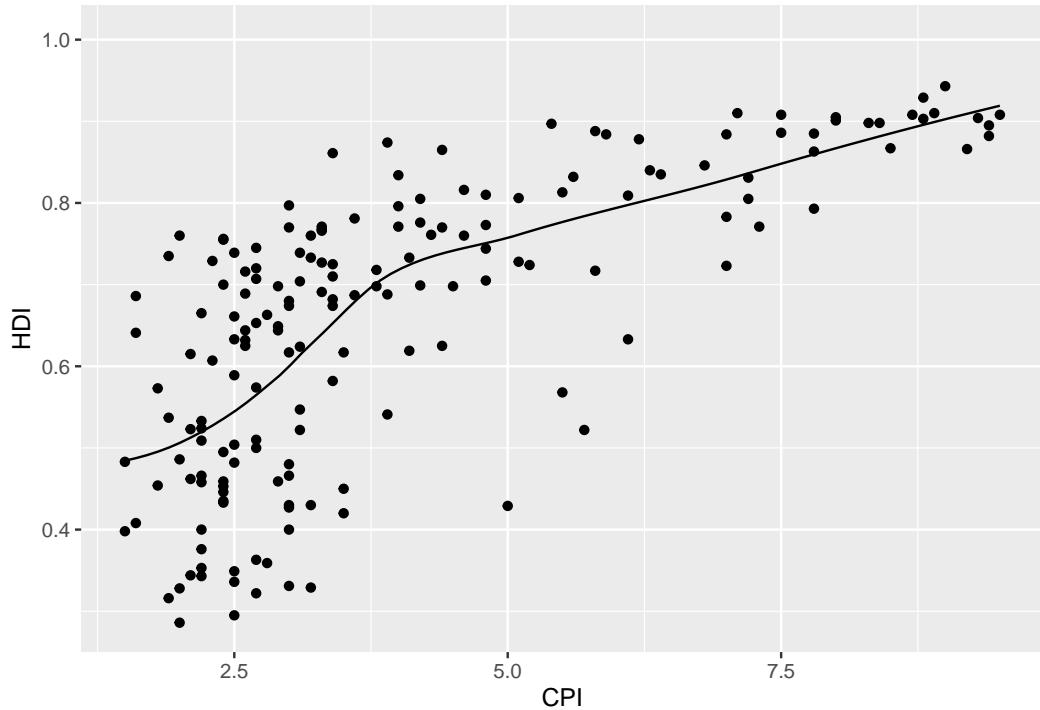
5. BONUS 1: Allow the smoothing line created in the last plot to vary across the levels of `Region`. Hint: map `Region` to the color and fill aesthetics.

```
ggplot(dat, aes(x = CPI, y = HDI, color = Region, fill = Region)) +  
  geom_point() +  
  geom_smooth(method = "lm")
```



6. BONUS 2: Overlay a loess (`method = "loess"`) smoothing line on top of the scatter plot using `geom_line()`. Hint: change the statistical transformation.

```
ggplot(dat, aes(x = CPI, y = HDI)) +
  geom_point() +
  geom_line(stat = "smooth", method = "loess")
```



## 5.5 Scales

### 5.5.1 Controlling aesthetic mapping

Aesthetic mapping (i.e., with `aes()`) only says that a variable should be mapped to an aesthetic. It doesn't say *how* that should happen. For example, when mapping a variable to `shape` with `aes(shape = x)` you don't say *what* shapes should be used. Similarly, `aes(color = y)` doesn't say *what* colors should be used. Also, `aes(size = z)` doesn't say *what* sizes should be used. Describing what colors/shapes/sizes etc. to use is done by modifying the corresponding `scale`. In `ggplot2` scales include

- position
- color and fill
- size
- shape
- line type

Scales are modified with a series of functions using a `scale_<aesthetic>_<type>` naming scheme. Try typing `scale_<tab>` to see a list of scale modification functions.

### 5.5.2 Common scale arguments

The following arguments are common to most scales in `ggplot2`:

- **name:** the axis or legend title
  - **limits:** the minimum and maximum of the scale
  - **breaks:** the points along the scale where labels should appear
  - **labels:** the labels that appear at each break

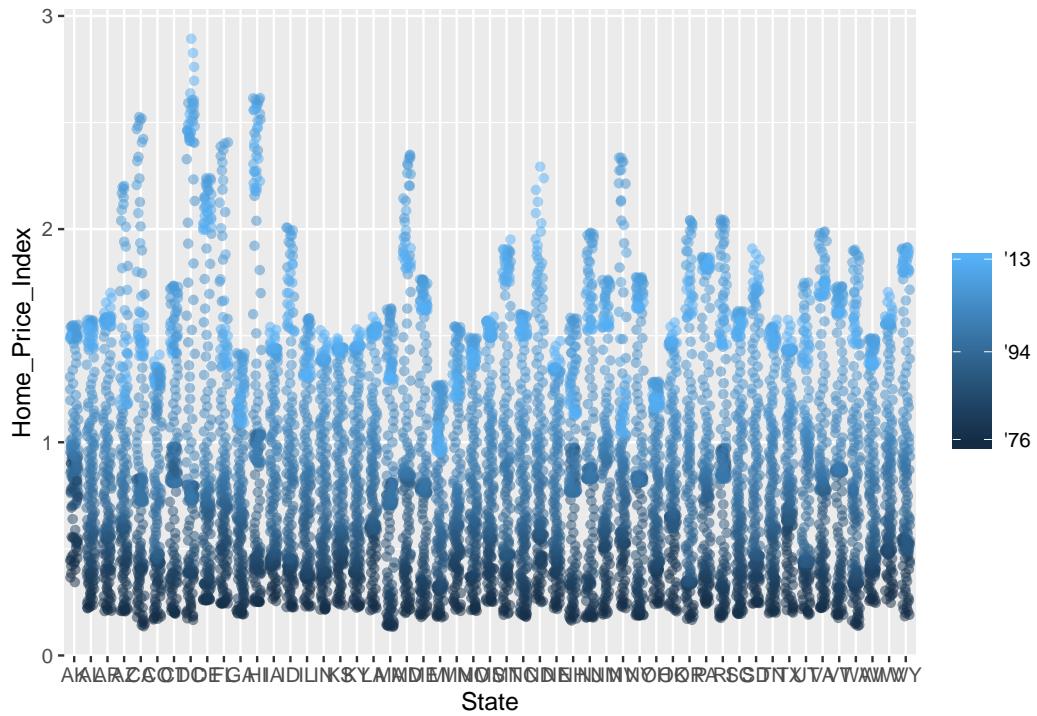
Specific scale functions may have additional arguments; for example, the `scale_color_continuous()` function has arguments `low` and `high` for setting the colors at the low and high end of the scale.

### 5.5.3 Scale modification examples

Start by constructing a dotplot showing the distribution of home values by Date and State.

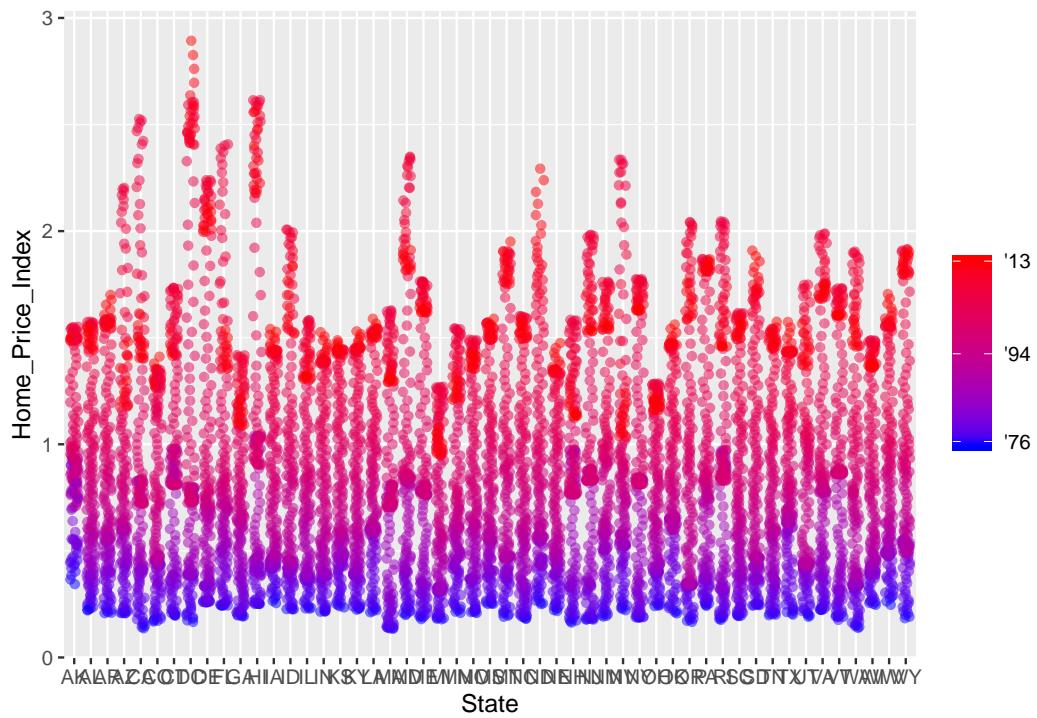
```
p4 <- ggplot(housing, aes(x = State, y = Home_Price_Index)) +  
  geom_point(aes(color = Date), alpha = 0.5, size = 1.5,  
             position = position_jitter(width = 0.25, height = 0))
```

Now modify the breaks for the color scales



Next change the low and high values to blue and red:

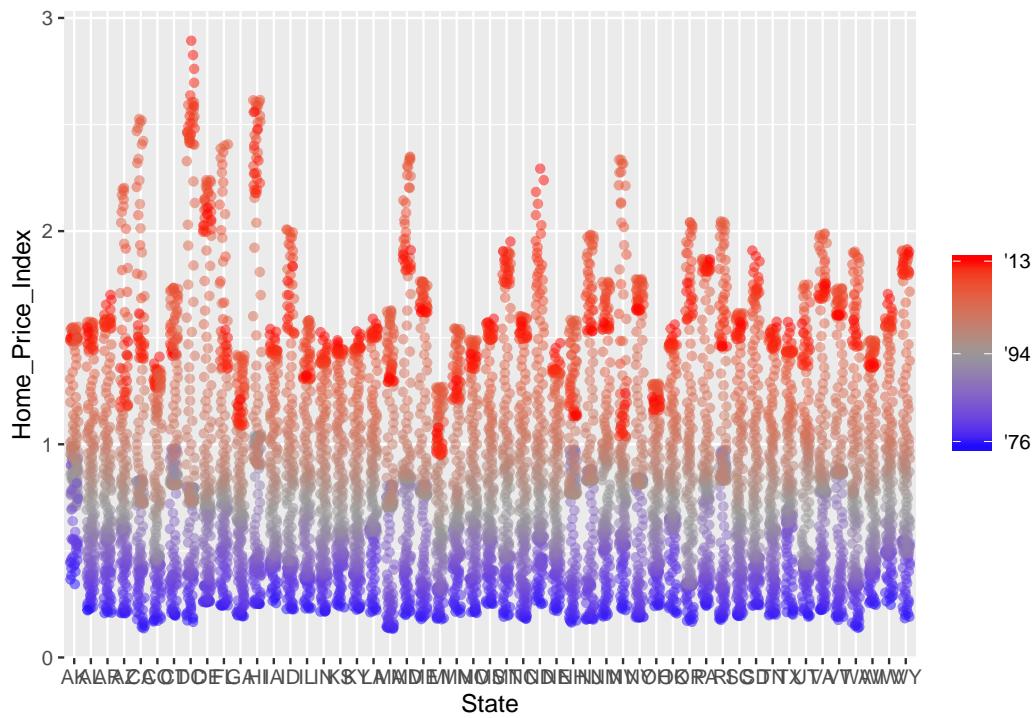
```
p4 +  
  scale_color_continuous(name="",  
                        breaks = c(1976, 1994, 2013),  
                        labels = c("'76", "'94", "'13"),  
                        low = "blue", high = "red")
```



#### 5.5.4 Using different color scales

ggplot2 has a wide variety of color scales; here is an example using `scale_color_gradient2()` to interpolate between three different colors.

```
p4 +
  scale_color_gradient2(name = "", 
                        breaks = c(1976, 1994, 2013),
                        labels = c("'76", "'94", "'13"),
                        low = "blue",
                        high = "red",
                        mid = "gray60",
                        midpoint = 1994)
```



### 5.5.5 Available scales

- Partial combination matrix of available scales

scale_	Types	Examples
scale_color_	identity	scale_fill_continuous()
scale_fill_	manual	scale_color_discrete()
scale_size_	continuous	scale_size_manual()
	discrete	scale_size_discrete()
scale_shape_	discrete	scale_shape_discrete()
scale_linetype_	discrete	scale_shape_manual()
	identity	scale_shape_discrete()
scale_x_	continuous	scale_x_continuous()
scale_y_	discrete	scale_y_discrete()
	reverse	scale_x_log()
	log	scale_y_reverse()
	date	scale_x_date()
	datetime	scale_y_datetime()

Note that in RStudio you can type `scale_` followed by `tab` to get the whole list of available scales. For a complete list of available scales see <https://ggplot2.tidyverse.org/reference/>

### 5.5.6 Exercise 2

1. Create a scatter plot with CPI on the x axis and HDI on the y axis. Color the points to indicate Region.

```
##
```

2. Modify the x, y, and color scales so that they have more easily-understood names (e.g., spell out “Human development Index” instead of HDI). Hint: see `?scale_x_continuous`, `?scale_y_continuous`, and `?scale_color_discrete`.

```
##
```

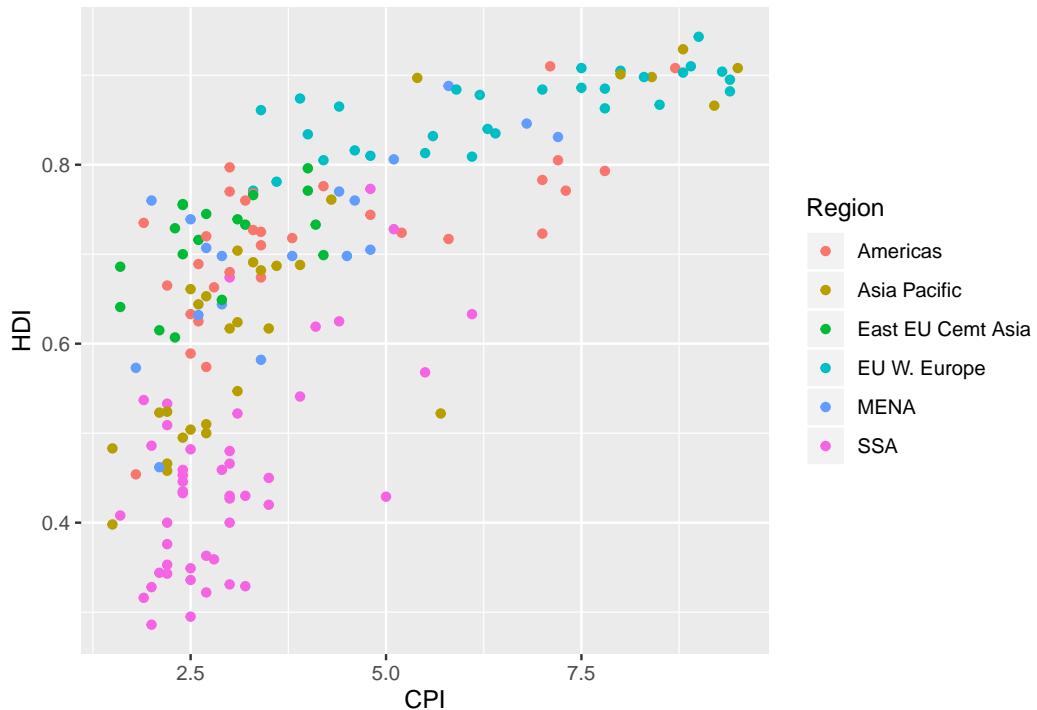
3. Modify the color scale to use specific values of your choosing. Hint: see `?scale_color_manual`. NOTE: you can specify color by name (e.g., “blue”) or by “Hex value” — see <https://www.color-hex.com/>.

```
##
```

Click for Exercise 2 Solution

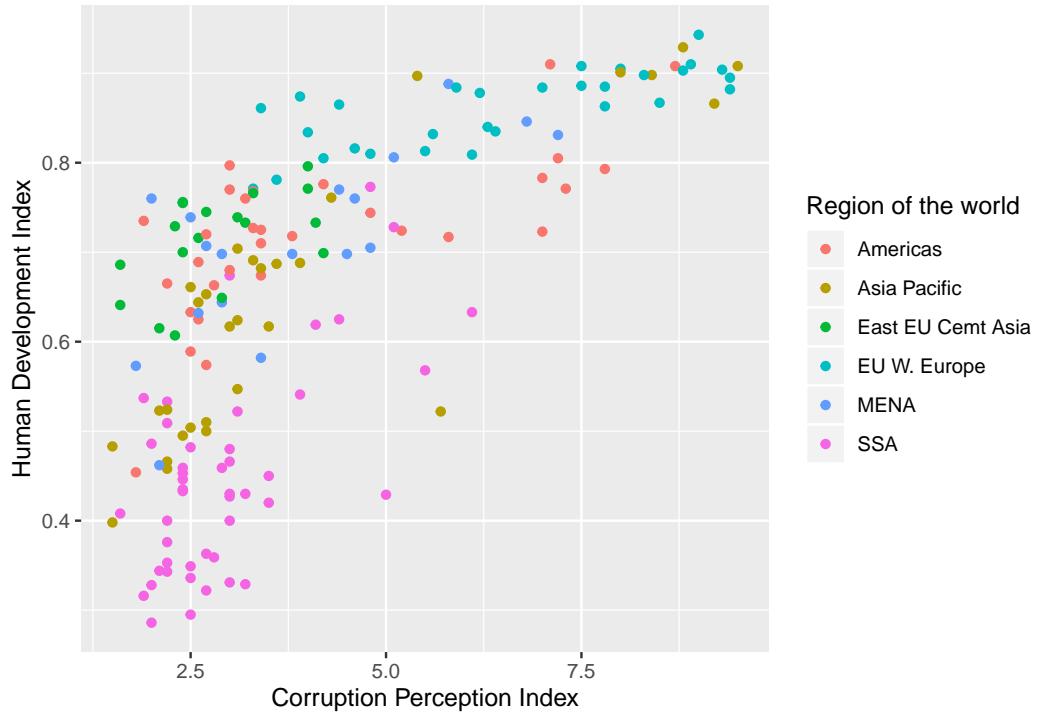
1. Create a scatter plot with CPI on the x axis and HDI on the y axis. Color the points to indicate Region.

```
ggplot(dat, aes(x = CPI, y = HDI, color = Region)) +
  geom_point()
```



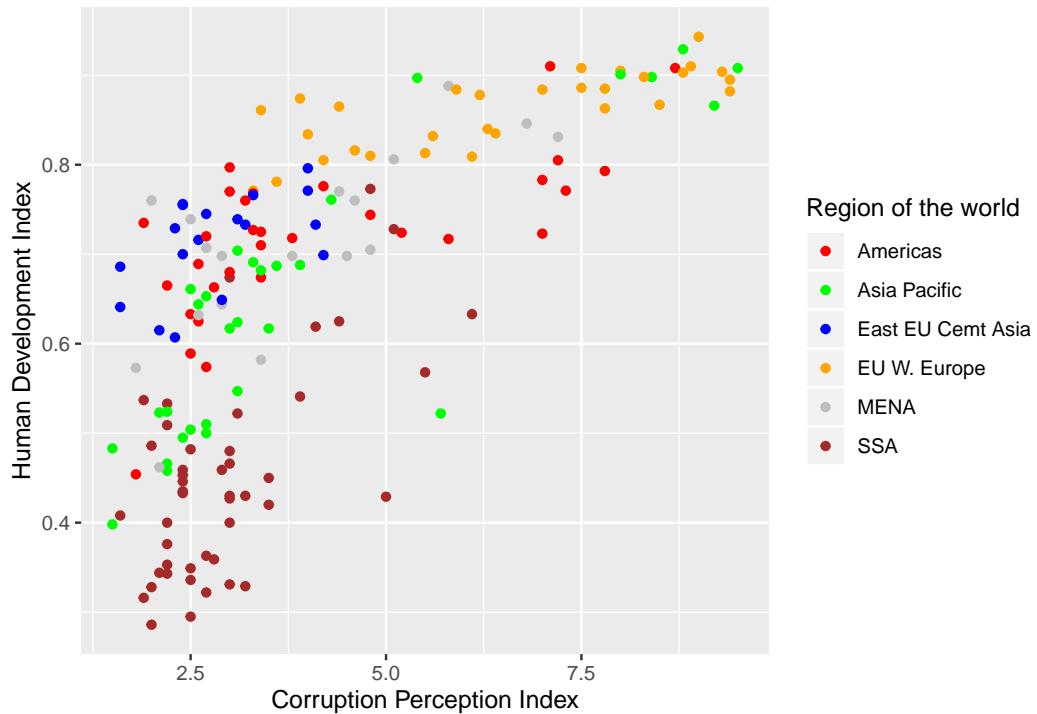
2. Modify the x, y, and color scales so that they have more easily-understood names (e.g., spell out “Human development Index” instead of HDI).

```
ggplot(dat, aes(x = CPI, y = HDI, color = Region)) +
  geom_point() +
  scale_x_continuous(name = "Corruption Perception Index") +
  scale_y_continuous(name = "Human Development Index") +
  scale_color_discrete(name = "Region of the world")
```



3. Modify the color scale to use specific values of your choosing. Hint: see `?scale_color_manual`. NOTE: you can specify color by name (e.g., “blue”) or by “Hex value” — see <https://www.color-hex.com/>.

```
ggplot(dat, aes(x = CPI, y = HDI, color = Region)) +
  geom_point() +
  scale_x_continuous(name = "Corruption Perception Index") +
  scale_y_continuous(name = "Human Development Index") +
  scale_color_manual(name = "Region of the world",
                     values = c("red", "green", "blue", "orange", "grey", "brown"))
```



## 5.6 Faceting

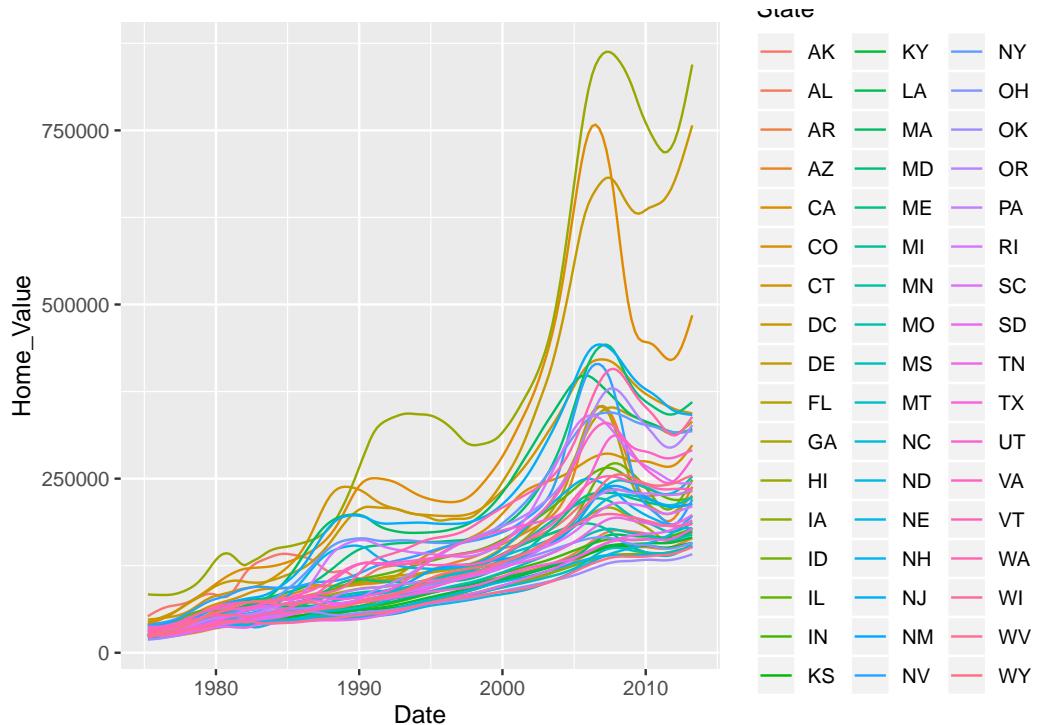
### 5.6.1 What is faceting?

- Faceting is ggplot2 parlance for **small multiples**
- The idea is to create separate graphs for subsets of data
- ggplot2 offers two functions for creating small multiples:
  1. `facet_wrap()`: define subsets as the levels of a single grouping variable
  2. `facet_grid()`: define subsets as the crossing of two grouping variables
- Facilitates comparison among plots, not just of geoms within a plot

### 5.6.2 What is the trend in housing prices in each state?

Start by using a technique we already know; map `State` to color:

```
p5 <- ggplot(housing, aes(x = Date, y = Home_Value))
p5 + geom_line(aes(color = State))
```

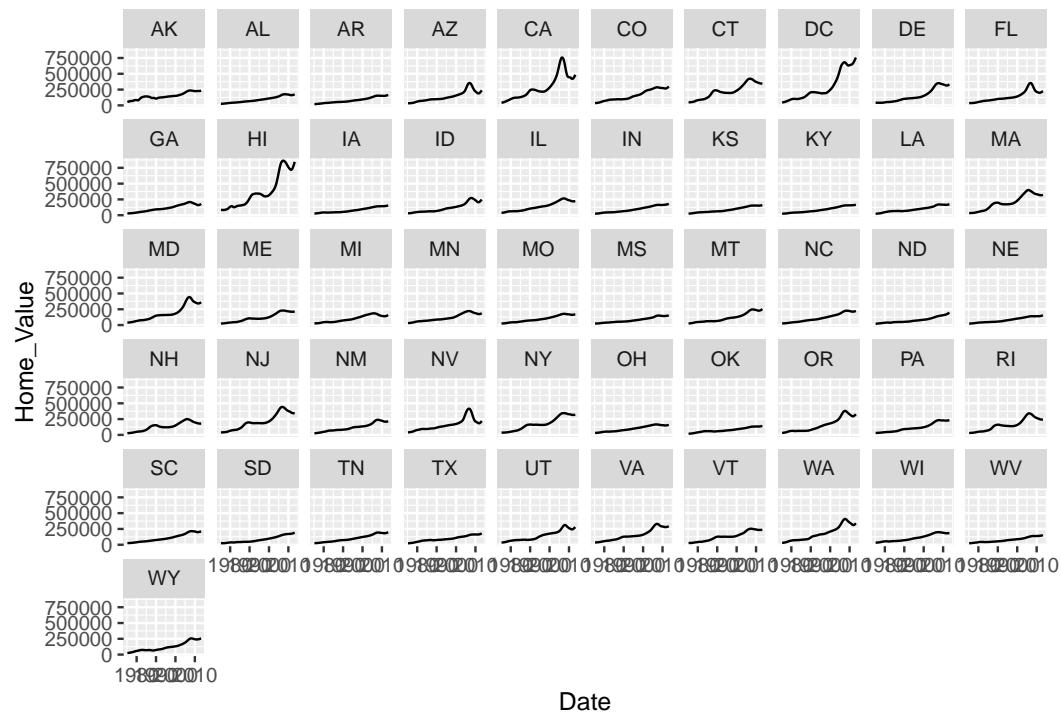


There are two problems here; there are too many states to distinguish each one by color, and the lines obscure one another.

### 5.6.3 Faceting to the rescue

We can remedy the deficiencies of the previous plot by facetting by `State` rather than mapping `State` to color.

```
p5 <- p5 + geom_line() +
  facet_wrap(~ State, ncol = 10)
p5
```



## 5.7 Themes

### 5.7.1 What are themes?

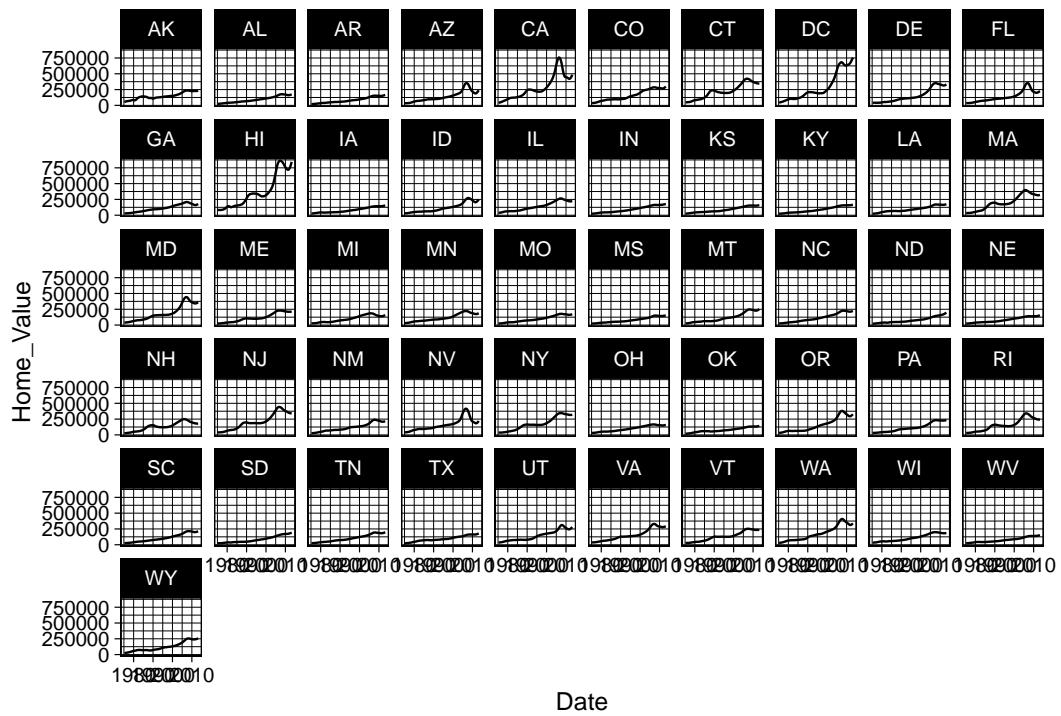
The `ggplot2` theme system handles non-data plot elements such as:

- Axis label properties (e.g., font, size, color, etc.)
- Plot background
- Facet label background
- Legend appearance

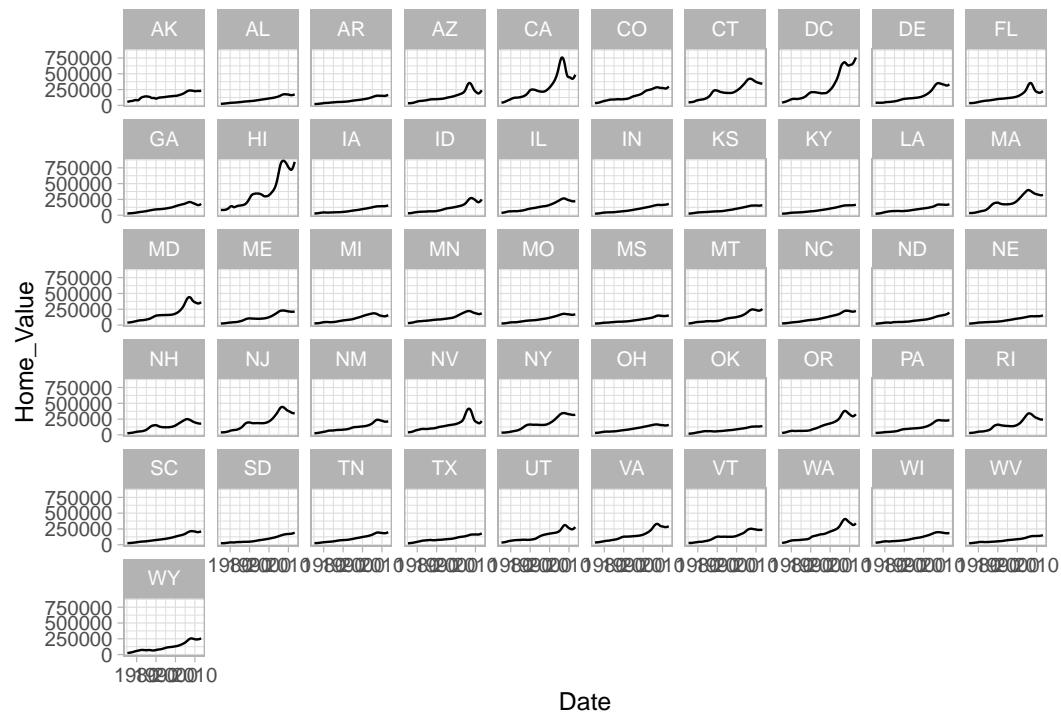
Built-in themes include:

- `theme_gray()` (default)
- `theme_bw()`
- `theme_classic()`

```
p5 + theme_linedraw()
```



```
p5 + theme_light()
```



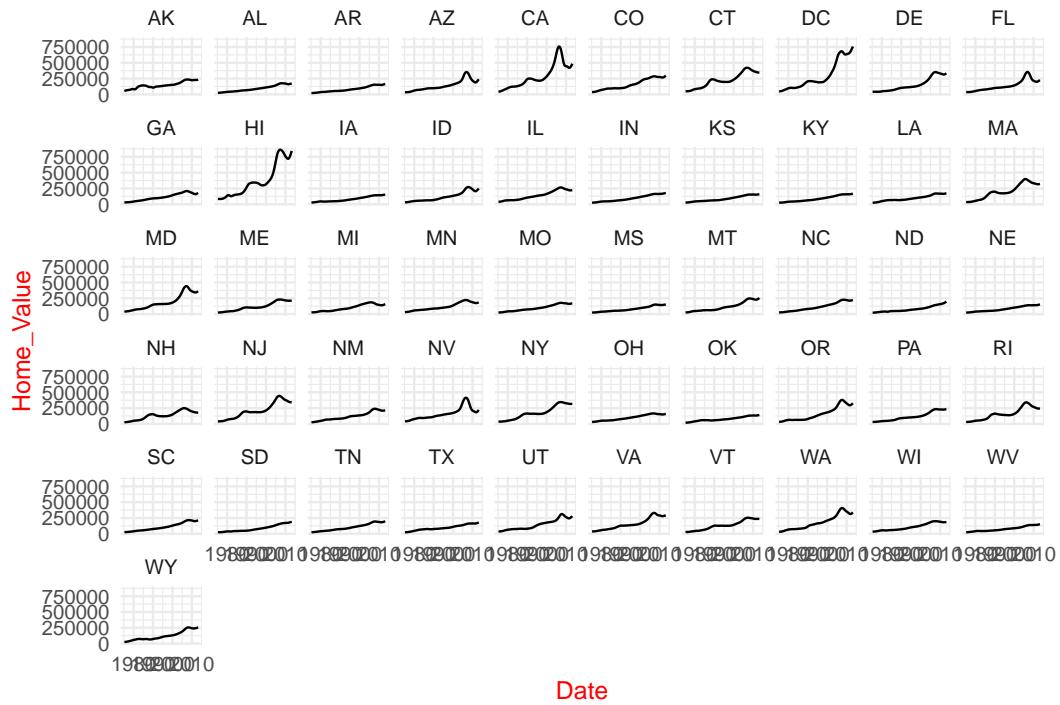
You can see a list of available built-in themes here <https://ggplot2.tidyverse.org/reference/>

### 5.7.2 Overriding theme defaults

Specific theme elements can be overridden using `theme()`. For example:

```
# theme(thing_to_modify = modifying_function(arg1, arg2))

p5 + theme_minimal() +
  theme(text = element_text(color = "red"))
```



All theme options are documented in `?theme`. We can also see the existing default values using:

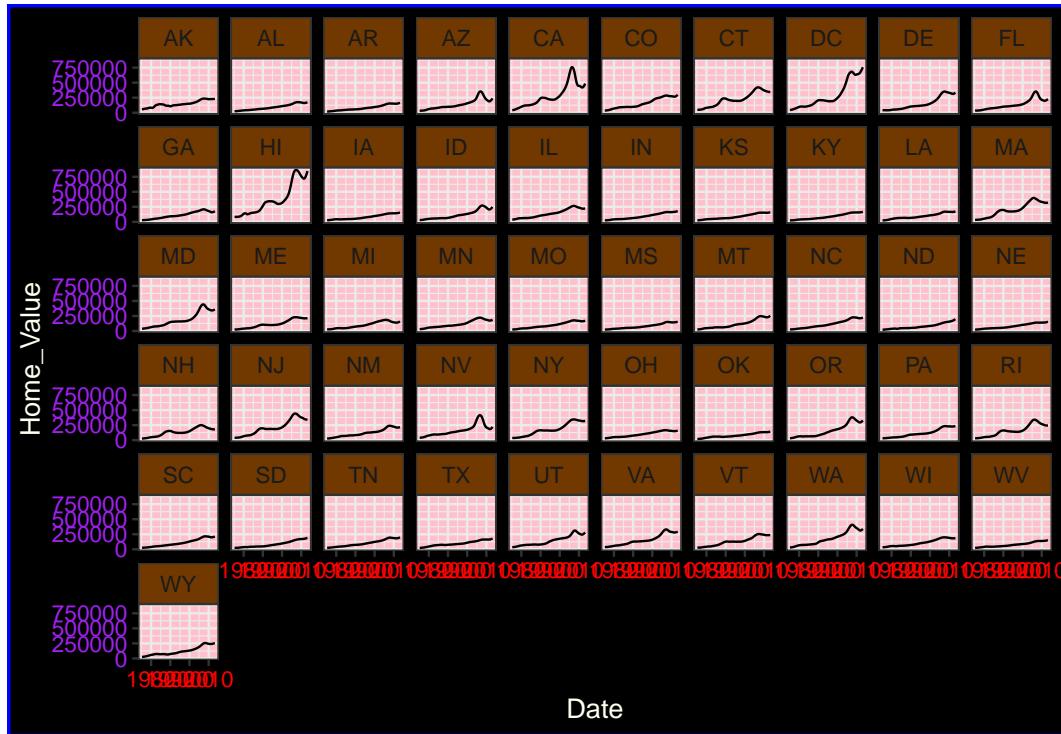
```
theme_get()
```

### 5.7.3 Creating & saving new themes

You can create new themes, as in the following example:

```
theme_new <- theme_bw() +
  theme(plot.background = element_rect(size = 1, color = "blue", fill = "black"),
        text = element_text(size = 12, color = "ivory"),
        axis.text.y = element_text(colour = "purple"),
        axis.text.x = element_text(colour = "red"),
        panel.background = element_rect(fill = "pink"),
        strip.background = element_rect(fill = muted("orange")))

p5 + theme_new
```



## 5.8 Saving plots

We can save a plot to either a vector (e.g., pdf, eps, ps, svg) or raster (e.g., jpg, png, tiff, bmp, wmf) graphics file using the `ggsave()` function:

```
ggsave(filename = "myplot.pdf", plot = p5, device = "pdf", height = 6, width = 6, units = "in")
```

## 5.9 The #1 FAQ

### 5.9.1 Map aesthetic to different columns

The most frequently asked question goes something like this: *I have two variables in my data.frame, and I'd like to plot them as separate points, with different color depending on which variable it is. How do I do that?*

**Wrong**

Fixing, rather than mapping, the color aesthetic:

1. Produces verbose code when using many colors
2. Results in no legend being produced

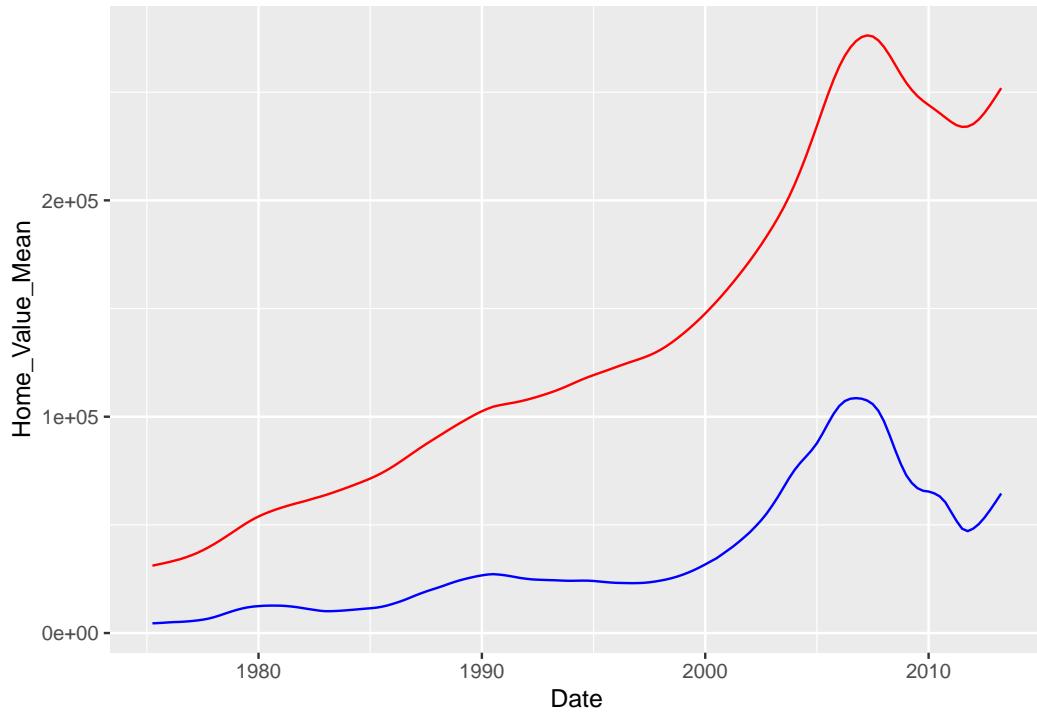
3. Means you cannot change color scales

```

housing_byyear <-
  housing %>%
  group_by(Date) %>%
  summarize(Home_Value_Mean = mean(Home_Value),
            Land_Value_Mean = mean(Land_Value)) %>%
  ungroup()

ggplot(housing_byyear, aes(x=Date)) +
  geom_line(aes(y=Home_Value_Mean), color="red") +
  geom_line(aes(y=Land_Value_Mean), color="blue")

```



### Right

To avoid these pitfalls, we need to **map** our data to the color aesthetic. We can do this by **reshaping** our data from **wide format** to **long format**. Here is the logic behind this process:

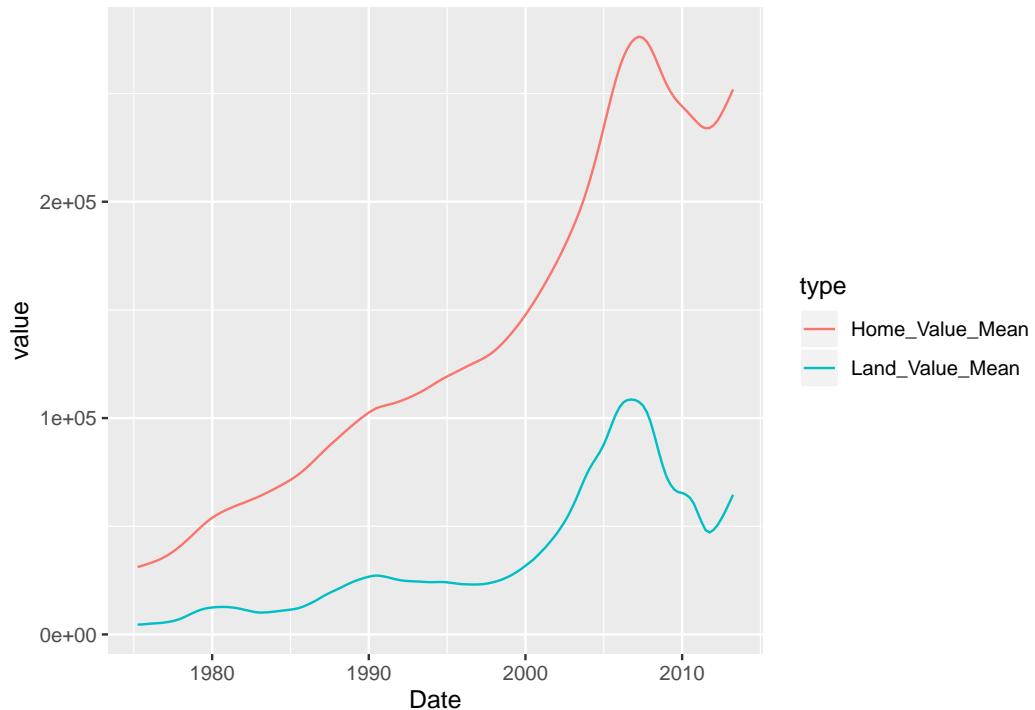
Wide      vs      Long

	ID	A1	A2	A3
1	1	2	3	4
2	1	2	3	4
3	1	2	3	4

ID	ID2	A
1	A1	1
2	A1	2
3	A1	3
1	A2	1
2	A2	2
3	A2	3
1	A3	1
2	A3	2
3	A3	3

Here's the code that implements this transformation:

```
home_land_byyear <-  
  housing_byyear %>%  
  pivot_longer(cols = c(Home_Value_Mean, Land_Value_Mean),  
               names_to = "type",  
               values_to = "value")  
  
ggplot(home_land_byyear, aes(x = Date, y = value, color = type)) +  
  geom_line()
```



### 5.9.2 Exercise 3

For this exercise, we're going to use the built-in `midwest` dataset:

```
data("midwest", package = "ggplot2")
head(midwest)
```

```
## # A tibble: 6 x 28
##   PID county state area poptotal popdensity popwhite popblack popamerindian
##   <int> <chr>  <chr> <dbl>    <int>      <dbl>    <int>    <int>      <int>
## 1  561 ADAMS  IL     0.052    66090     1271.    63917    1702      98
## 2  562 ALEXA~ IL     0.014    10626      759     7054    3496      19
## 3  563 BOND   IL     0.022    14991     681.    14477     429      35
## 4  564 BOONE  IL     0.017    30806     1812.    29344     127      46
## 5  565 BROWN  IL     0.018    5836      324.    5264     547      14
## 6  566 BUREAU IL     0.05     35688     714.    35157      50      65
## # ... with 19 more variables: popasian <int>, popother <int>, percwhite <dbl>,
## #   percblack <dbl>, percamerindian <dbl>, percasiain <dbl>, percother <dbl>,
## #   popadults <int>, perchsd <dbl>, percollege <dbl>, percprof <dbl>,
## #   poppovertyknown <int>, percpovertyknown <dbl>, percbelowpoverty <dbl>,
## #   percchildbelowpovert <dbl>, percadultpoverty <dbl>,
## #   percelderlypoverty <dbl>, inmetro <int>, category <chr>
```

1. Create a scatter plot with `area` on the x axis and the log of `poptotal` on the y axis.

```
##
```

2. Within the `geom_point()` call, map color to `state`, map size to the log of `popdensity`, and fix transparency (`alpha`) to 0.3.

```
##
```

3. Add a smoother and turn off plotting the confidence interval. Hint: see the `se` argument to `geom_smooth()`.

```
##
```

4. Facet the plot by `state`. Set the `scales` argument to `facet_wrap()` to allow separate ranges for the x-axis.

```
##
```

5. Change the default color scale to use the discrete `RColorBrewer` palette called `Set1`. Hint: see `?scale_color_brewer`.

```
##
```

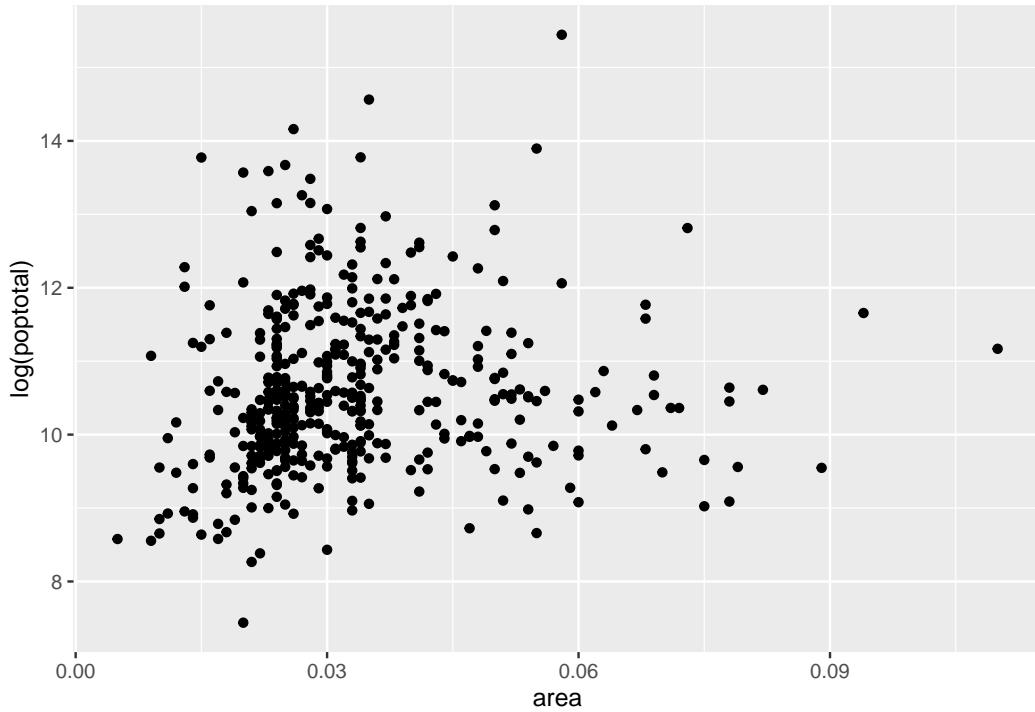
6. BONUS: Change the default theme to `theme_bw()` and modify it so that the axis text and facet label background are blue. Hint: see `?theme` and especially `axis.text` and `strip.background`.

```
##
```

Click for Exercise 3 Solution

1. Create a scatter plot with `area` on the x axis and the log of `poptotal` on the y axis.

```
p6 <- ggplot(midwest, aes(x = area, y = log(poptotal)))
p6 + geom_point()
```



2. Within the `geom_point()` call, map color to `state`, map size to the log of `popdensity`, and fix transparency (`alpha`) to 0.3.

```
p6 <- p6 + geom_point(aes(color = state, size = log(popdensity)), alpha = 0.3)
```

3. Add a smoother and turn off plotting the confidence interval. Hint: see the `se` argument to `geom_smooth()`.

```
p6 <- p6 + geom_smooth(method = "loess", se = FALSE)
```

4. Facet the plot by `state`. Set the `scales` argument to `facet_wrap()` to allow separate ranges for the x-axis.

```
p6 <- p6 + facet_wrap(~ state, scales = "free_x")
```

5. Change the default color scale to use the discrete RColorBrewer palette called `Set1`. Hint: see `?scale_color_brewer`.

```
p6 <- p6 + scale_color_brewer(palette = "Set1")
```

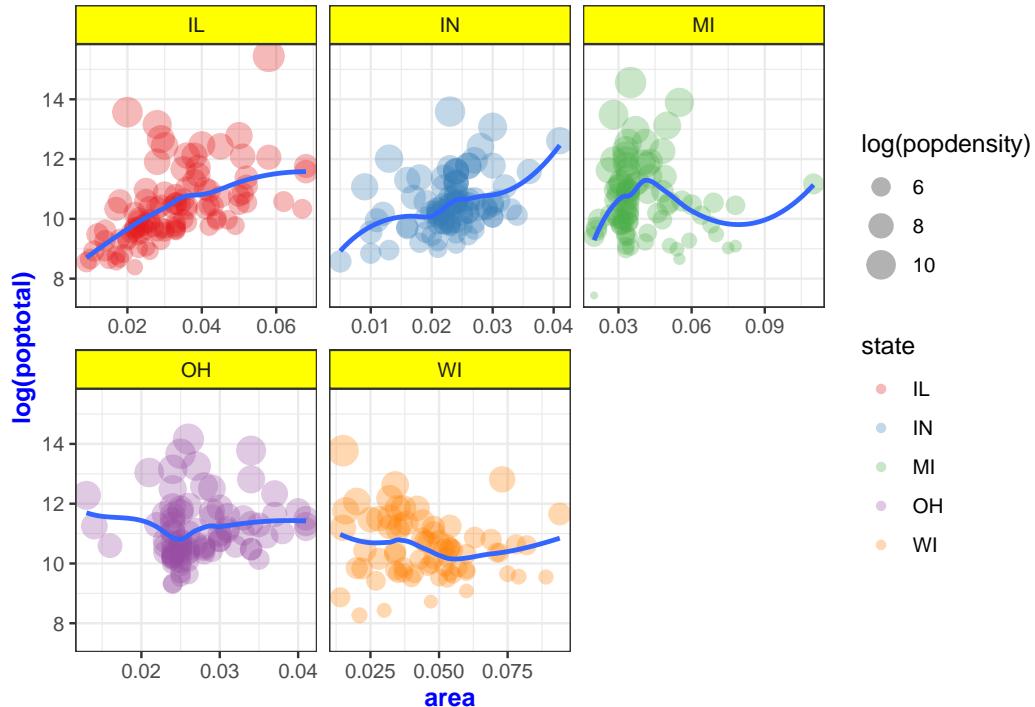
6. BONUS: Change the default theme to `theme_bw()` and modify it so that the axis text and facet label background are blue. Hint: see `?theme` and especially `axis.text` and `strip.background`.

```
p6 <- p6 + theme_bw() +
  theme(axis.title = element_text(color = "blue", face = "bold"),
        strip.background = element_rect(fill = "yellow"))
```

Here's the complete code for the Exercise 3 plot:

```
p6 <- ggplot(midwest, aes(x = area, y = log(poptotal))) +
  geom_point(aes(color = state, size = log(popdensity)), alpha = 0.3) +
  geom_smooth(method = "loess", se = FALSE) +
  facet_wrap(~ state, scales = "free_x") +
  scale_color_brewer(palette = "Set1") +
  theme_bw() +
  theme(axis.title = element_text(color = "blue", face = "bold"),
        strip.background = element_rect(fill = "yellow"))
```

`p6`



## 5.10 Wrap-up

### 5.10.1 Feedback

These workshops are a work in progress, please provide any feedback to: [help@iq.harvard.edu](mailto:help@iq.harvard.edu)

### 5.10.2 Resources

- IQSS
  - Workshops: <https://dss.iq.harvard.edu/workshop-materials>
  - Data Science Services: <https://dss.iq.harvard.edu/>
  - Research Computing Environment: <https://iqss.github.io/dss-rce/>
- HBS
  - Research Computing Services workshops: <https://training.rcs.hbs.org/workshops>
  - Other HBS RCS resources: <https://training.rcs.hbs.org/workshop-materials>
  - RCS consulting email: <mailto:research@hbs.edu>
- ggplot2
  - Reference: <https://ggplot2.tidyverse.org/reference/>
  - Cheatsheets: [https://rstudio.com/wp-content/uploads/2019/01/Cheatsheets\\_2019.pdf](https://rstudio.com/wp-content/uploads/2019/01/Cheatsheets_2019.pdf)
  - Examples: <http://r-statistics.co/Top50-Ggplot2-Visualizations-MasterList-R-Code.html>
  - Tutorial: [https://uc-r.github.io/ggplot\\_intro](https://uc-r.github.io/ggplot_intro)
  - Mailing list: <http://groups.google.com/group/ggplot2>
  - Wiki: <https://github.com/hadley/ggplot2/wiki>
  - Website: <http://had.co.nz/ggplot2/>
  - StackOverflow: <http://stackoverflow.com/questions/tagged/ggplot>

# Chapter 6

## R Data Wrangling

### Topics

- Loading Excel worksheets
- Iterating over files
- Writing your own functions
- Filtering with regular expressions (regex)
- Reshaping data

### 6.1 Setup

#### 6.1.1 Software and Materials

Follow the R Installation instructions and ensure that you can successfully start RStudio.

#### 6.1.2 Class Structure

Informal - Ask questions at any time. Really!

Collaboration is encouraged - please spend a minute introducing yourself to your neighbors!

#### 6.1.3 Prerequisites

This is an intermediate / advanced R course:

- Assumes intermediate knowledge of R
- Relatively fast-paced

### 6.1.4 Launch an R session

Start RStudio and create a new project:

- On Windows click the start button and search for RStudio. On Mac RStudio will be in your applications folder.
- In Rstudio go to `File -> New Project`.
- Choose `Existing Directory` and browse to the workshop materials directory on your desktop.
- Choose `File -> Open File` and select the file with the word “BLANK” in the name.

### 6.1.5 Packages

You should have already installed the `tidyverse` and `rmarkdown` packages onto your computer before the workshop — see R Installation. Now let’s load these packages into the search path of our R session.

```
library(tidyverse)
library(rmarkdown)
library(readxl) # installed with tidyverse, but not loaded into R session
```

### 6.1.6 Workshop Outline

#### Example data

The UK Office for National Statistics provides yearly data on the most popular boys names going back to 1996. The data is provided separately for boys and girls and is stored in Excel spreadsheets.

#### Overall Goal

Our mission is to extract and graph the **top 100** boys names in England and Wales for every year since 1996.

Name	Count	Year
JACK	10779	1996
DANIEL	10338	1996
THOMAS	9603	1996
JAMES	9385	1996
JOSHUA	7887	1996
MATTHEW	7426	1996
RYAN	6496	1996
JOSEPH	6193	1996
SAMUEL	6161	1996
LIAM	5802	1996
JORDAN	5750	1996
LUKE	5664	1996
CONNOR	5009	1996
ALEXANDER	4840	1996
BENJAMIN	4805	1996
ADAM	4538	1996
HARRY	4434	1996
JAKE	4331	1996
GEORGE	4287	1996
CALLUM	4281	1996
WILLIAM	4269	1996
MICHAEL	4187	1996
OLIVER	3655	1996
LEWIS	3569	1996
CHRISTOPHER	3483	1996

### Exercise 0: Problems with the data

There are several things that make our goal challenging. Let's take a look at the data:

1. Locate the files named `1996boys_tcm77-254026.xlsx` and `2015boysnamesfinal.xlsx` and open them separately in a spreadsheet program.

(If you don't have a spreadsheet program installed on your computer you can download one from <https://www.libreoffice.org/download/download/>).

What issues can you identify that might make working with these data difficult?

In what ways is the format different between the two files?

Click for Exercise 0 Solution

1. Multiple Excel sheets in each file, each with a different name, but each file contains a **Table 1**.
2. The data does not start on row one. Headers are on row 7, followed by a blank line, followed by the actual data.
3. The data is stored in an inconvenient way, with ranks 1-50 in the first set of columns and ranks 51-100 in a second set of columns.
4. The second worksheet `2015boysnamesfinal.xlsx` contains extra columns between the data of interest, resulting in the second set of columns (ranks 51-100) being placed in a different position.
5. The year from which the data comes is only reported in the Excel file name, not within the data itself.
6. There are notes below the data.

These differences will make it more difficult to automate re-arranging the data since we have to write code that can handle different input formats.

**Steps to accomplish the goal of extracting and graphing the *top 100* boys names in England and Wales for every year since 1996:**

0. **Explore example data to highlight problems (already done!)**
1. **Reading data from multiple Excel worksheets into R data frames**
  - list Excel file names in a character vector
  - read Excel sheetnames into a list of character vectors
  - read Excel data for “Table 1” only into a list of data frames
2. **Clean up data within each R data frame**
  - sort and merge columns within each data frame inside the list
  - drop missing values from each data frame
  - reshape data format from wide to long
3. **Organize the data into one large data frame and store it**
  - create a year column within each data frame within the list
  - append all the data frames in the list into one large data frame

NOTE: please make sure you close the Excel files before continuing with the workshop, otherwise you may encounter issues with file paths when reading the data into R.

## 6.2 Working with Excel worksheets

**GOAL:** To learn how to read data from multiple Excel worksheets into R data frames. In particular:

1. List Excel file names in a character vector

2. Read Excel sheetnames into a list of character vectors
3. Read Excel data for “Table 1” only into a list of data frames

As you can see, the data is in quite a messy state. Note that this is not a contrived example; this is exactly the way the data came to us from the UK government website! Let’s start cleaning and organizing it.

Each Excel file contains a worksheet with the boy names data we want. Each file also contains additional supplemental worksheets that we are not currently interested in. As noted above, the worksheet of interest differs from year to year, but always has “Table 1” in the sheet name.

The first step is to get a character vector of file names.

```
boy_file_names <- list.files("dataSets/boys", full.names = TRUE)
```

Now that we’ve told R the names of the data files, we can start working with them. For example, the first file is

```
boy_file_names[1]
```

```
## [1] "dataSets/boys/1996boys_tcm77-254026.xlsx"
```

and we can use the `excel_sheets()` function from the `readxl` package within `tidyverse` to list the worksheet names from this file.

```
excel_sheets(boy_file_names[1])
```

```
## [1] "Contents"           "Table 1 - Top 100 boys, E&W"
## [3] "Table 2-Top 10 boys by month" "Table 3 - Boys names - E&W"
```

### 6.2.1 Iterating with `map()`

Now that we know how to retrieve the names of the worksheets in an Excel file, we could start writing code to extract the sheet names from each file, e.g.,

```
excel_sheets(boy_file_names[1])
```

```
## [1] "Contents"           "Table 1 - Top 100 boys, E&W"
## [3] "Table 2-Top 10 boys by month" "Table 3 - Boys names - E&W"
```

```
excel_sheets(boy_file_names[2])
```

```

## [1] "Contents"                      "Table 1 - Top 100 boys, E&W"
## [3] "Table 2 - Top 100 boys, England" "Table 3 - Top 100 boys, Wales"
## [5] "Table 4 - Top 10 boys by region" "Table 5 - Top 10 boys by month"
## [7] "Table 6 - Boys names - E&W"

## ...
excel_sheets(boy_file_names[20])

## [1] "Contents"          "Metadata"           "Terms and Conditions"
## [4] "Table 1"            "Table 2"             "Table 3"
## [7] "Table 4"            "Table 5"             "Table 6"
## [10] "Related Publications"

```

This is not a terrible idea for a small number of files, but it is more convenient to let R do the iteration for us. We could use a `for` loop, or `sapply()`, but the `map()` family of functions from the `purrr` package within `tidyverse` gives us a more consistent alternative, so we'll use that.

```

# map(object to iterate over, function that does task within each iteration)

map(boy_file_names, excel_sheets)

## [[1]]
## [1] "Contents"                      "Table 1 - Top 100 boys, E&W"
## [3] "Table 2-Top 10 boys by month"   "Table 3 - Boys names - E&W"
##
## [[2]]
## [1] "Contents"          "Table 1 - Top 100 boys, E&W"
## [3] "Table 2 - Top 100 boys, England" "Table 3 - Top 100 boys, Wales"
## [5] "Table 4 - Top 10 boys by region" "Table 5 - Top 10 boys by month"
## [7] "Table 6 - Boys names - E&W"
##
## [[3]]
## [1] "Contents"          "Table 1 - Top 100 boys' names"
## [3] "Table 2 - Top 100 boys, England" "Table 3 - Top 100 boys, Wales"
## [5] "Table 4 - Top 10 boys by region" "Table 5 - Top 10 boys by month"
## [7] "Table 6 - Boys names - E&W"
##
## [[4]]
## [1] "Contents"          "Table 1 - Top 100 boys' names"
## [3] "Table 2 - Top 100 boys, England" "Table 3 - Top 100 boys, Wales"
## [5] "Table 4 - Top 10 boys by region" "Table 5 - Top 10 boys by month"
## [7] "Table 6 - Boys names - E&W"
##
## [[5]]
## [1] "Contents"          "Table 1 - Top 100 boys, E&W"

```

```

## [3] "Table 2 - Top 100 boys, England" "Table 3 - Top 100 boys, Wales"
## [5] "Table 4 - Top 10 boys by region" "Table 5 - Top 10 boys by month"
## [7] "Table 6 - Boys names - E&W"
##
## [[6]]
## [1] "Contents" "Table 1 - Top 100 boys, E&W"
## [3] "Table 2 - Top 100 boys, England" "Table 3 - Top 100 boys, Wales"
## [5] "Table 4 - Top 10 boys by region" "Table 5 - Top 10 boys by month"
## [7] "Table 6 - Boys names - E&W"
##
## [[7]]
## [1] "Contents" "Table 1 - Top 100 boys, E&W"
## [3] "Table 2 - Top 100 boys, England" "Table 3 - Top 100 boys, Wales"
## [5] "Table 4 - Top 10 boys by region" "Table 5 - Top 10 boys by month"
## [7] "Table 6 - Boys names - E&W"
##
## [[8]]
## [1] "Contents" "Table 1 - Top 100 boys, E&W"
## [3] "Table 2 - Top 100 boys, England" "Table 3 - Top 100 boys, Wales"
## [5] "Table 4 - Top 10 boys by region" "Table 5 - Top 10 boys by month"
## [7] "Table 6 - Boys names - E&W"
##
## [[9]]
## [1] "Contents" "Table 1 - Top 100 boys, E&W"
## [3] "Table 2 - Top 100 boys, England" "Table 3 - Top 100 boys, Wales"
## [5] "Table 4 - Top 10 boys by region" "Table 5 - Top 10 boys by month"
## [7] "Table 6 - Boys names - E&W"
##
## [[10]]
## [1] "Contents" "Table 1 - Top 100 boys, E&W"
## [3] "Table 2 - Top 100 boys, England" "Table 3 - Top 100 boys, Wales"
## [5] "Table 4 - Top 10 boys by region" "Table 5 - Top 10 boys by month"
## [7] "Table 6 - Boys names - E&W"
##
## [[11]]
## [1] "Contents" "Table 1 - Top 100 boys, E&W"
## [3] "Table 2 - Top 100 boys, England" "Table 3 - Top 100 boys, Wales"
## [5] "Table 4 - Top 10 boys by region" "Table 5 - Top 10 boys by month"
## [7] "Table 6 - Boys names - E&W"
##
## [[12]]
## [1] "Contents" "Table 1 - Top 100 boys, E&W"
## [3] "Table 2 - Top 100 boys, England" "Table 3 - Top 100 boys, Wales"
## [5] "Table 4 - Top 10 boys by region" "Table 5 - Top 10 boys by month"
## [7] "Table 6 - Boys names - E&W"
##
## [[13]]
## [1] "Contents" "Table 1 - Top 100 boys' names"

```

```

## [3] "Table 2 - Top 100 boys, England" "Table 3 - Top 100 boys, Wales"
## [5] "Table 4 - Top 10 boys by region" "Table 5 - Top 10 boys by month"
## [7] "Table 6 - Boys names - E&W"
##
## [[14]]
## [1] "Contents" "Table 1 - Top 100 boys' names"
## [3] "Table 2 - Top 100 boys, England" "Table 3 - Top 100 boys, Wales"
## [5] "Table 4 - Top 10 boys by region" "Table 5 - Top 10 boys by month"
## [7] "Table 6 - Boys names - E&W"
##
## [[15]]
## [1] "Contents" "Table 1 - Top 100 boys, E&W"
## [3] "Table 2 - Top 100 boys, England" "Table 3 - Top 100 boys, Wales"
## [5] "Table 4 - Top 10 boys by region" "Table 5 - Top 10 boys by month"
## [7] "Table 6 - Boys names - E&W"
##
## [[16]]
## [1] "Contents" "Metadata"
## [3] "Terms and Conditions" "Table 1 - Top 100 boys, E&W"
## [5] "Table 2 - Top 100 boys, England" "Table 3 - Top 100 boys, Wales"
## [7] "Table 4 - Top 10 boys by region" "Table 5 - Top 10 boys by month"
## [9] "Table 6 - Boys names - E&W" "Related Publications"
##
## [[17]]
## [1] "Contents" "Metadata"
## [3] "Terms and Conditions" "Table 1 - Top 100 boys, E&W"
## [5] "Table 2 - Top 100 boys, England" "Table 3 - Top 100 boys, Wales"
## [7] "Table 4 - Top 10 boys by region" "Table 5 - Top 10 boys by month"
## [9] "Table 6 - Boys names - E&W" "Related Publications"
##
## [[18]]
## [1] "Contents" "Metadata"
## [3] "Terms and Conditions" "Table 1 - Top 100 boys, E&W"
## [5] "Table 2 - Top 100 boys, England" "Table 3 - Top 100 boys, Wales"
## [7] "Table 4 - Top 10 boys by region" "Table 5 - Top 10 boys by month"
## [9] "Table 6 - Boys names - E&W" "Related Publications"
##
## [[19]]
## [1] "Contents" "Metadata"
## [3] "Terms and Conditions" "Table 1 - Top 100 boys, E&W"
## [5] "Table 2 - Top 100 boys, England" "Table 3 - Top 100 boys, Wales"
## [7] "Table 4 - Top 10 boys by region" "Table 5 - Top 10 boys by month"
## [9] "Table 6 - Boys names - E&W" "Related Publications"
##
## [[20]]
## [1] "Contents" "Metadata" "Terms and Conditions"
## [4] "Table 1" "Table 2" "Table 3"
## [7] "Table 4" "Table 5" "Table 6"

```

```
## [10] "Related Publications"
```

### 6.2.2 Filtering strings using regex

To extract the correct worksheet names we need a way to extract strings containing “Table 1”.

Base R provides some string manipulation capabilities (see `?regex`, `?sub` and `?grep`), but we will use the `stringr` package within `tidyverse` because it is more user-friendly. `stringr` provides functions to:

1. detect
2. locate
3. extract
4. match
5. replace
6. combine
7. split

strings. Here we want to detect the pattern “Table 1”, and only return elements with this pattern. We can do that using the `str_subset()` function:

1. The first argument to `str_subset()` is character vector we want to search in.
2. The second argument is a *regular expression* matching the pattern we want to retain.

If you are not familiar with regular expressions (regex), <http://www.regexr.com/> is a good place to start. Regex is essentially just a programmatic way of doing operations like “find” or “find and replace” in MS Word or Excel.

Now that we know how to filter character vectors using `str_subset()` we can identify the correct sheet in a particular Excel file. For example,

```
# str_subset(character_vector, regex_pattern)

# nesting functions
str_subset(excel_sheets(boy_file_names[1]), pattern = "Table 1")
```

```
## [1] "Table 1 - Top 100 boys, E&W"
```

```
# piping functions
excel_sheets(boy_file_names[1]) %>% str_subset(pattern = "Table 1")
```

```
## [1] "Table 1 - Top 100 boys, E&W"
```

### 6.2.3 Writing your own functions

The next step is to retrieve worksheet names and subset them.

The `map*` functions are useful when you want to apply a function to a vector of inputs and obtain the return values for each input. This is very convenient when a function already exists that does exactly what you want. In the examples above we mapped the `excel_sheets()` function to the elements of a character vector containing file names.

However, there is no function that both:

1. Retrieves worksheet names, and
2. Subsets the names

So, we will have to write one. Fortunately, writing functions in R is easy. Functions require 3 elements:

1. A **name**
2. One or more **arguments**
3. A **body** containing computations

Anatomy of a function:

```
function_name <- function(arg1, arg2, ....) {  
  body of function # where stuff happens  
  return( results )  
}
```

Simple examples:

```
myfun <- function(x) {  
  x^2  
}  
  
myfun(1:10)  
  
## [1] 1 4 9 16 25 36 49 64 81 100  
  
myfun2 <- function(x, y) {  
  z <- x^2 + y  
  return(z)  
}  
  
myfun2(x=1:10, y=42)
```

```
## [1] 43 46 51 58 67 78 91 106 123 142
```

Examples using the Excel data:

```
get_data_sheet_name <- function(file, term){
  excel_sheets(file) %>% str_subset(pattern = term)
}

# the goal is generalization
get_data_sheet_name(boy_file_names[1], term = "Table 1")
```

```
## [1] "Table 1 - Top 100 boys, E&W"
```

```
get_data_sheet_name(boy_file_names[1], term = "Table 2")
```

```
## [1] "Table 2-Top 10 boys by month"
```

Now we can map this new function over our vector of file names.

```
# map(object to iterate over,
#      function that does task within each iteration,
#      arguments to previous function)

map(boy_file_names,       # list object
    get_data_sheet_name, # function
    term = "Table 1")   # argument to previous function
```

```
## [[1]]
## [1] "Table 1 - Top 100 boys, E&W"
##
## [[2]]
## [1] "Table 1 - Top 100 boys, E&W"
##
## [[3]]
## [1] "Table 1 - Top 100 boys' names"
##
## [[4]]
## [1] "Table 1 - Top 100 boys' names"
##
## [[5]]
## [1] "Table 1 - Top 100 boys, E&W"
##
## [[6]]
## [1] "Table 1 - Top 100 boys, E&W"
##
```

```
## [[7]]
## [1] "Table 1 - Top 100 boys, E&W"
##
## [[8]]
## [1] "Table 1 - Top 100 boys, E&W"
##
## [[9]]
## [1] "Table 1 - Top 100 boys, E&W"
##
## [[10]]
## [1] "Table 1 - Top 100 boys, E&W"
##
## [[11]]
## [1] "Table 1 - Top 100 boys, E&W"
##
## [[12]]
## [1] "Table 1 - Top 100 boys, E&W"
##
## [[13]]
## [1] "Table 1 - Top 100 boys' names"
##
## [[14]]
## [1] "Table 1 - Top 100 boys' names"
##
## [[15]]
## [1] "Table 1 - Top 100 boys, E&W"
##
## [[16]]
## [1] "Table 1 - Top 100 boys, E&W"
##
## [[17]]
## [1] "Table 1 - Top 100 boys, E&W"
##
## [[18]]
## [1] "Table 1 - Top 100 boys, E&W"
##
## [[19]]
## [1] "Table 1 - Top 100 boys, E&W"
##
## [[20]]
## [1] "Table 1"
```

### 6.3 Reading Excel data files

Now that we know the correct worksheet from each file, we can actually read those data into R. We can do that using the `read_excel()` function.

We'll start by reading the data from the first file, just to check that it works. Recall that the actual data starts on row 7, so we want to skip the first 6 rows. We can use the `glimpse()` function from the `dplyr` package within `tidyverse` to view the output.

```
temp <- read_excel(
  path = boy_file_names[1],
  sheet = get_data_sheet_name(boy_file_names[1], term = "Table 1"),
  skip = 6
)

glimpse(temp)

## # Observations: 59
## # Variables: 7
## $ ...1      <chr> NA, "1", "2", "3", "4", "5", "6", "7", "8", "9", "10", "1...
## $ Name...2   <chr> NA, "JACK", "DANIEL", "THOMAS", "JAMES", "JOSHUA", "MATTH...
## $ Count...3  <dbl> NA, 10779, 10338, 9603, 9385, 7887, 7426, 6496, 6193, 616...
## $ ...4      <lgl> NA, N...
## $ ...5      <dbl> NA, 51, 52, 53, 54, 55, 56, 57, 58, 59, 60, 61, 62, 63, 6...
## $ Name...6   <chr> NA, "DOMINIC", "NICHOLAS", "BRANDON", "RHYS", "MARK", "MA...
## $ Count...7  <dbl> NA, 1519, 1385, 1337, 1259, 1222, 1192, 1186, 1135, 1128,...
```

Note that R has added a suffix to each column name ...1, ...2, ...3, etc. because duplicate names are not allowed, so the suffix serves to disambiguate. The trailing number represents the index of the column.

### 6.3.1 Exercise 1

1. Write a function called `read_boys_names` that takes a file name as an argument and reads the worksheet containing “Table 1” from that file. Don’t forget to skip the first 6 rows.

```
##
```

2. Test your function by using it to read *one* of the boys names Excel files.

```
##
```

3. Use the `map()` function to create a list of data frames called `boysNames` from all the Excel files, using the function you wrote in step 1.

```
##
```

[Click for Exercise 1 Solution](#)

1. Write a function that takes a file name as an argument and reads the worksheet containing “Table 1” from that file.

```
read_boys_names <- function(file, sheet_name) {
  read_excel(
    path = file,
    sheet = get_data_sheet_name(file, term = sheet_name),
    skip = 6
  )
}
```

2. Test your function by using it to read *one* of the boys names Excel files.

```
read_boys_names(boy_file_names[1], sheet_name = "Table 1") %>% glimpse()

## # Observations: 59
## # Variables: 7
## $ ...1      <chr> NA, "1", "2", "3", "4", "5", "6", "7", "8", "9", "10", "1...
## $ Name...2   <chr> NA, "JACK", "DANIEL", "THOMAS", "JAMES", "JOSHUA", "MATTH...
## $ Count...3  <dbl> NA, 10779, 10338, 9603, 9385, 7887, 7426, 6496, 6193, 616...
## $ ...4      <lgl> NA, N...
## $ ...5      <dbl> NA, 51, 52, 53, 54, 55, 56, 57, 58, 59, 60, 61, 62, 63, 6...
## $ Name...6   <chr> NA, "DOMINIC", "NICHOLAS", "BRANDON", "RHYS", "MARK", "MA...
## $ Count...7  <dbl> NA, 1519, 1385, 1337, 1259, 1222, 1192, 1186, 1135, 1128,...
```

3. Use the `map()` function to read data from all the Excel files, using the function you wrote in step 1.

```
boysNames <- map(boy_file_names, read_boys_names, sheet_name = "Table 1")
```

## 6.4 Data cleanup

**GOAL:** To learn how to clean up data within each R data frame. In particular:

1. Sort and merge columns within each data frame inside the list
2. Drop missing values from each data frame
3. Reshape data format from wide to long

Now that we've read in the data, we can see that there are some problems we need to fix. Specifically, we need to:

1. fix column names
2. get rid of blank row at the top and the notes at the bottom

3. get rid of extraneous “changes in rank” columns if they exist
4. transform the side-by-side tables layout to a single table

```
# Rank 1:50 --- Names / Counts are in columns 2 and 3
# Rank 51:100 --- Names / Counts are in columns 6 and 7
glimpse(boysNames[[1]])
```

```
## Observations: 59
## Variables: 7
## $ ...1      <chr> NA, "1", "2", "3", "4", "5", "6", "7", "8", "9", "10", "1...
## $ Name...2   <chr> NA, "JACK", "DANIEL", "THOMAS", "JAMES", "JOSHUA", "MATTH...
## $ Count...3  <dbl> NA, 10779, 10338, 9603, 9385, 7887, 7426, 6496, 6193, 616...
## $ ...4      <lgl> NA, N...
## $ ...5      <dbl> NA, 51, 52, 53, 54, 55, 56, 57, 58, 59, 60, 61, 62, 63, 6...
## $ Name...6   <chr> NA, "DOMINIC", "NICHOLAS", "BRANDON", "RHYS", "MARK", "MA...
## $ Count...7  <dbl> NA, 1519, 1385, 1337, 1259, 1222, 1192, 1186, 1135, 1128,...
```

```
# Rank 1:50 --- Names / Counts are in columns 2 and 3
# Rank 51:100 --- Names / Counts are in columns 7 and 8
glimpse(boysNames[[10]])
```

```
## Observations: 61
## Variables: 9
## $ ...1          <chr> NA, "1", "2", "3", "4", "5", "6", "7", "8", "9", ...
## $ Name...2       <chr> NA, "JACK", "JOSHUA", "THOMAS", "JAMES", "OLIVER",...
## $ Count...3      <dbl> NA, 7434, 7167, 6792, 5654, 5516, 5270, 5219, 5106...
## $ `since 2004...`4 <chr> NA, "-", "-", "-", "+2", "-1", "-1", "-", "+2...
## $ ...5          <lgl> NA, NA...
## $ ...6          <dbl> NA, 51, 52, 53, 53, 55, 56, 57, 58, 59, 60, 61, 62...
## $ Name...7       <chr> NA, "NOAH", "MUHAMMAD", "ALEX", "ISAAC", "OSCAR", ...
## $ Count...8      <dbl> NA, 1346, 1318, 1302, 1302, 1262, 1256, 1172, 1126...
## $ `since 2004...`9 <chr> NA, "+23", "-1", "-7", "+5", "+4", "-4", "+6", "+1...
```

```
# Rank 1:50 --- Names / Counts are in columns 2 and 3
# Rank 51:100 --- Names / Counts are in columns 8 and 9
glimpse(boysNames[[20]])
```

```
## Observations: 61
## Variables: 11
## $ Rank...1        <chr> NA, "1", "2", "3", "4", "5", "6", "7", "8", "9", ...
## $ Name...2        <chr> NA, "OLIVER", "JACK", "HARRY", "GEORGE", "JACOB",...
## $ Count...3        <dbl> NA, 6941, 5371, 5308, 4869, 4850, 4831, 4148, 408...
## $ `since 2014...`4 <chr> NA, " ", " ", " ", "+3", "-1", "-1", "+4",...
## $ `since 2005...`5 <chr> NA, "+4", "-1", "+6", "+13", "+16", "+6", "...
## $ ...6          <lgl> NA, N...
## $ Rank...7        <chr> NA, "51", "52", "53", "54", "55", "56", "57", "58...
```

```
## $ Name...8      <chr> NA, "REUBEN", "HARLEY", "LUCA", "MICHAEL", "HUGO"...
## $ Count...9     <dbl> NA, 1188, 1175, 1167, 1165, 1153, 1148, 1112, 109...
## $ `since 2014...10` <chr> NA, " ", "-7 ", "+5 ", "-2 ", "+15 ", "-10 ", "+...
## $ `since 2005...11` <chr> NA, "+51* ", "+18 ", "+30 ", "-12 ", "+124* ", "-...
```

In short, we want to go from this:

Rank	Name	Count	since 2014	since 2005	Rank	Name	Count	since 2014	since 2005			
6	CHARLIE	4,831	-1	+6	56	LEWIS	1,148	-10	-37			
7	NOAH	4,148	+4	+44	57	FRANKIE	1,112	+7	+93*			
8	WILLIAM	4,083	+2		58	LUKE	1,095	-14	-45			
9	THOMAS	4,075	-3	-6	59	STANLEY	1,078	+1	+85*			
10	OSCAR	4,066	-2	+45	60	TOMMY	1,075	-5	+63*			
11	JAMES	3,912	-2	-7	61	JUDE	1,040	+4	+42*			
12	MUHAMMAD	3,730	+2	+40	62	BLAKE	1,024	-5	+79*			
13	HENRY	3,581	+2	+31	63	LOUIE	1,002	+4	+44*			
14	ALFIE	3,540	-2	+9	64	NATHAN	997	-2	-29			
15	LEO	3,468	+1	+22	65	GABRIEL	989	+13	+31			
16	JOSHUA	3,394	-3	-14	66	CHARLES	985	-3	-17			
17	FREDDIE	3,219	+3	+62	67	BOBBY	983	+4	+45*			
18	ETHAN	2,940			68	MOHAMMAD	976	-12				
19	ARCHIE	2,912	-2	+19	69	RYAN	955		-44			
20	ISAAC	2,829	+5	+33	70	TYLER	948	-23	-41			
21	JOSEPH	2,786	-2	-11	71	ELLIOTT	938	+1	+54*			
22	ALEXANDER	2,759			72	ALBERT	933	+12	+142*			
23	SAMUEL	2,705	-2	-16	73	ELLIOT	926	+10	+9			
24	DANIEL	2,622		-18	74	RORY	912	+13	+68*			
25	LOGAN	2,610	-2	+52	75	ALEX	900		-22			
26	EDWARD	2,593	+5	+20	76	FREDERICK	875	+5	+22			
27	LUCAS	2,448	+3	+31	77	OLLIE	873	-3	+152*			
28	MAX	2,407	-2	+3	78	LOUIS	854	-10	-35			
29	MOHAMMED	2,332	-2	-9	79	DEXTER	850	-6	+216*			
30	BENJAMIN	2,328	-2	-19	80	JAXON	837	+35*	+1055*			
31	MASON	2,283	-2	+29	81	LIAM	836	-5	-53			
32	HARRISON	2,241		+7	82	JACKSON	818	+18	+154*			
33	THEO	2,103	+4	+85*	83	CALLUM	798	-1	-69			
34	JAKE	2,013	-1	-18	83	RONNIE	798	+3	+77*			
35	SEBASTIAN	1,988	+3	+54	85	LEON	795		-10			
36	FINLEY	1,978		+28	86	KAI	775	-9	-20			
37	ARTHUR	1,966	+4	+98*	87	AARON	773	-7	-42			
38	ADAM	1,903	+1	-12	88	ROMAN	763	+22*	+105*			
38	DYLAN	1,903	-4	-14	89	AUSTIN	751		+171*			
40	RILEY	1,728	-5	+34	90	ELLIS	721	+4	-3			
41	ZACHARY	1,644	-1	+54	91	JAMIE	708	-3	-58			
42	TEDDY	1,430	+24	+226*	91	REGGIE	708	+18*	+201*			
43	DAVID	1,394	+7	+18	93	SETH	703	-3	+88*			
44	TOBY	1,363	-2	+4	94	CARTER	689	+24*	+182*			
45	THEODORE	1,302	+14	+113*	95	FELIX	680	+3	+48*			
46	ELIJAH	1,294	+7	+109*	96	IBRAHIM	674	-5	+32*			
47	MATTHEW	1,279	+2	-32	97	SONNY	670	-2	+17*			
48	JENSON	1,223	+13	+127*	98	KIAN	665	-44	-35			
49	JAYDEN	1,219	-6	+35	99	CALEB	659	-6	+32*			
50	HARVEY	1,190	-2	-23	100	CONNOR	642	-21	-70			

Notes:  
These rankings have been produced using the exact spelling of the name given at birth registration. Similar names with different spellings have been counted separately.  
Births where the name was not stated have been excluded from these figures. Of the 358,136 baby boys in the 2015 dataset, 14 were excluded for this reason.  
The sum of the counts for individual names appearing in Table 2 and Table 3 may not equal the count in Table 1. This is because births where the usual residence of mother was not stated at the time of registration have been excluded from the counts in Table 2 and Table 3.  
\* denotes new entry to top 100

to this:

Rank	Name	Count
1	OLIVER	6,941
2	JACK	5,371
3	HARRY	5,308
4	GEORGE	4,869
5	JACOB	4,850
6	CHARLIE	4,831
7	NOAH	4,148
8	WILLIAM	4,083
9	THOMAS	4,075
10	OSCAR	4,066
11	JAMES	3,912
12	MUHAMMAD	3,730
13	HENRY	3,581
14	ALFIE	3,540
15	LEO	3,468
16	JOSHUA	3,394
17	FREDDIE	3,219
18	ETHAN	2,940
19	ARCHIE	2,912
20	ISAAC	2,829
21	JOSEPH	2,786
22	ALEXANDER	2,759
23	SAMUEL	2,705
24	DANIEL	2,622
25	LOGAN	2,610
26	EDWARD	2,593
27	LUCAS	2,448
28	MAX	2,407
29	MOHAMMED	2,332
30	BENJAMIN	2,328
31	MASON	2,263
32	HARRISON	2,241
33	THEO	2,103
34	JAKE	2,013
35	SEBASTIAN	1,988
36	FINLEY	1,978
37	ARTHUR	1,966
38	ADAM	1,903
38	DYLAN	1,903
40	RILEY	1,728
41	ZACHARY	1,644
42	TEDDY	1,430
43	DAVID	1,394
44	TOBY	1,363
45	THEODORE	1,302
46	ELIJAH	1,294
47	MATTHEW	1,279
48	JENSON	1,223
49	JAYDEN	1,219
50	HARVEY	1,190
51	REUBEN	1,188
52	HARLEY	1,175
53	LUCA	1,167
54	MICHAEL	1,165
55	HUGO	1,153
56	LEWIS	1,148
57	FRANKIE	1,140

There are many ways to do this kind of data manipulation in R. We're going to use the `dplyr` and `tidyverse` packages from within `tidyverse` to make our lives easier.

### 6.4.1 Selecting columns

Next we want to retain just the `Name...2`, `Name...6`, `Count...3` and `Count...7` columns. We can do that using the `select()` function:

```
boysNames[[1]]
```

```
## # A tibble: 59 x 7
##   ...1 Name...2 Count...3 ...4   ...5 Name...6 Count...7
##   <chr> <chr>     <dbl> <lgl> <dbl> <chr>     <dbl>
## 1 <NA>  <NA>      NA NA    NA <NA>      NA
## 2 1     JACK       10779 NA    51 DOMINIC   1519
## 3 2     DANIEL     10338 NA    52 NICHOLAS 1385
## 4 3     THOMAS     9603  NA   53 BRANDON   1337
## 5 4     JAMES      9385  NA   54 RHYS      1259
## 6 5     JOSHUA     7887  NA   55 MARK      1222
## 7 6     MATTHEW    7426  NA   56 MAX       1192
## 8 7     RYAN       6496  NA   57 DYLAN     1186
## 9 8     JOSEPH     6193  NA   58 HENRY     1135
## 10 9    SAMUEL     6161  NA   59 PETER     1128
## # ... with 49 more rows
```

```
boysNames[[1]] <- select(boysNames[[1]], Name...2, Name...6, Count...3, Count...7)
boysNames[[1]]
```

```
## # A tibble: 59 x 4
##   Name...2 Name...6 Count...3 Count...7
##   <chr>   <chr>     <dbl>     <dbl>
## 1 <NA>    <NA>      NA        NA
## 2 JACK    DOMINIC   10779    1519
## 3 DANIEL  NICHOLAS 10338    1385
## 4 THOMAS  BRANDON   9603     1337
## 5 JAMES   RHYS      9385     1259
## 6 JOSHUA  MARK      7887     1222
## 7 MATTHEW MAX       7426     1192
## 8 RYAN    DYLAN     6496     1186
## 9 JOSEPH  HENRY    6193     1135
## 10 SAMUEL PETER     6161     1128
## # ... with 49 more rows
```

### 6.4.2 Data types and structures

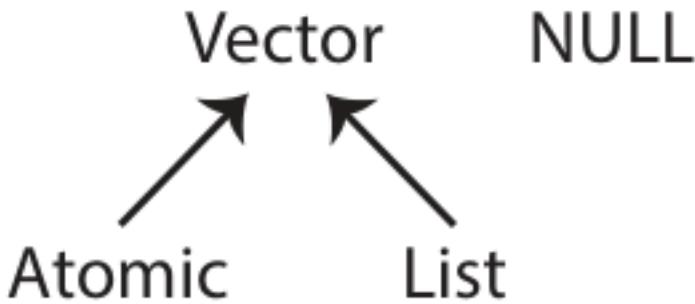
We've now encountered several different data types and data structures. Let's take a step back and survey the options available in R.

**Data structures:**

In R, the most foundational data structure is the **vector**. Vectors are *containers* that can hold a *collection* of values. Vectors come in two basic forms:

1. **atomic**: only hold elements of the same type; they are **homogeneous**. The `c()` function can be used to create atomic vectors.
2. **list**: can hold elements of different types; they are **heterogeneous**. The `list()` function can be used to create list vectors.

`NULL` is closely related to vectors and often serves the role of a zero length vector.



From these two basic forms, the following six structures are derived:

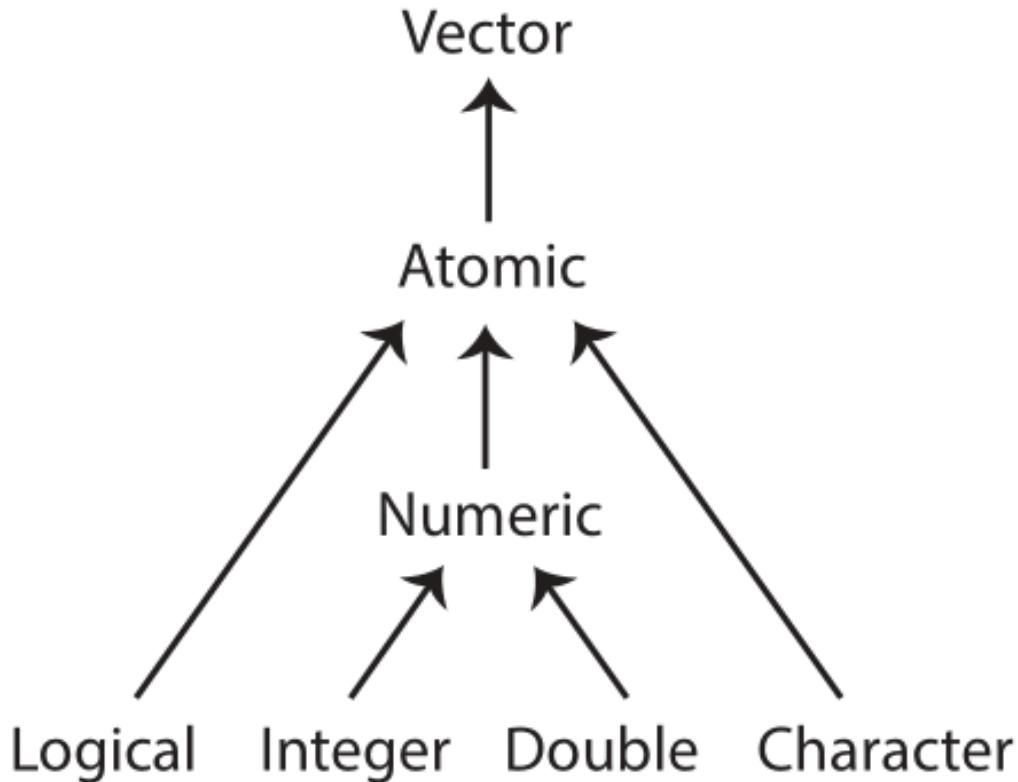
Type	Elements	Description
atomic	homogeneous	contains elements of the same <b>type</b> , one of: character, integer, double, logical
vector	homogeneous	an atomic vector with attributes giving dimensions (1, 2, or >2)
array	homogeneous	an array with 2 dimensions
matrix	homogeneous	an atomic integer vector containing only predefined values, storing categorical data
factor	homogeneous	an atomic integer vector containing only predefined values, storing categorical data
list	heterogeneous	a container whose elements can encompass any mixture of data types
data.frame	heterogeneous	a rectangular list with elements (columns) containing atomic vectors of equal length

Each vector can have **attributes**, which are a named list of metadata that can include the vector's **dimensions** and its **class**. The latter is a property assigned to an object that determines how **generic functions** operate with it, and thus which **methods** are available for it. The class of an object can be queried using the `class()` function. You can learn more details about R data structures here: <https://adv-r.hadley.nz/vectors-chap.html>

**Data types:**

There are four primary types of atomic vectors. Collectively, integer and double vectors are known as numeric vectors. You can query the **type** of an object using the `typeof()`

function.



Type	Description
character	"a", "swc"
integer	2L (the L tells R to store this as an integer)
double (floating point)	2, 15.5
logical	TRUE, FALSE

### Coercion:

If heterogeneous elements are stored in an atomic vector, R will **coerce** the vector to the simplest type required to store all the information. The order of coercion is roughly: logical -> integer -> double -> character -> list. For example:

```
x <- c(1.5, 2.7, 3.9)
typeof(x)
```

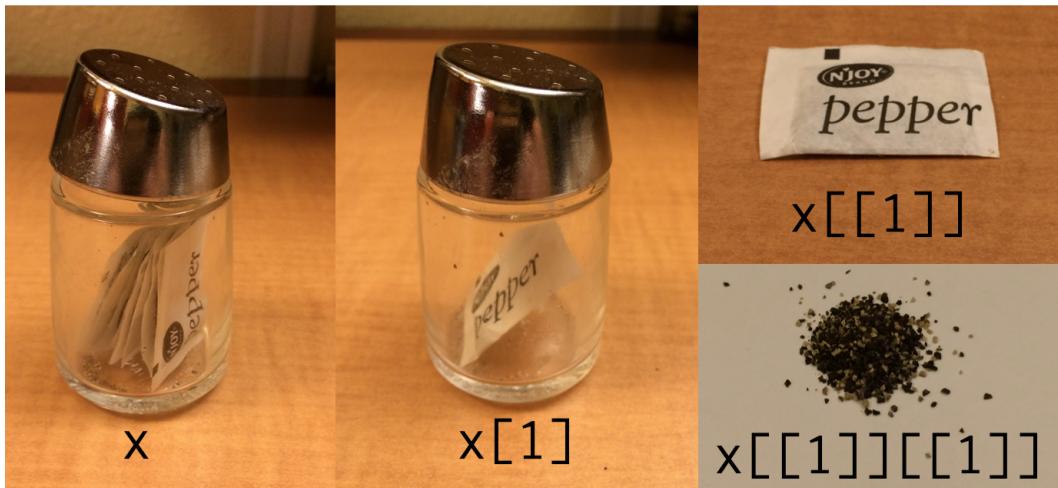
```
## [1] "double"
```

```
y <- c(1.5, 2.7, 3.9, "a")
typeof(y)
```

```
## [1] "character"
```

### 6.4.3 List indexing

Now that we know about data structures more generally, let's focus on the *list* structure we created for `boysNames`. Why are we using **double brackets** `[[` to index this list object, instead of the single brackets `[` we used to index atomic vectors?



```
# various data structures
numbers <- 1:10
letters <- LETTERS[1:4]
dat <- head(mtcars)
x <- 237L

# combine in a list
mylist <- list(numbers, letters, dat, x)

# indexing the list
mylist[2]

## [[1]]
## [1] "A" "B" "C" "D"

class(mylist[2]) # a list

## [1] "list"
```

```
mylist[[2]]  
  
## [1] "A" "B" "C" "D"  
  
class(mylist[[2]]) # a character vector  
  
## [1] "character"
```

#### 6.4.4 Dropping missing values

Next we want to remove blank rows and rows used for notes. An easy way to do that is to use `drop_na()` from the `tidyverse` package within `tidyverse` to remove rows with missing values.

```
boysNames[[1]]  
  
## # A tibble: 59 x 4  
##   Name...2 Name...6 Count...3 Count...7  
##   <chr>     <chr>      <dbl>      <dbl>  
## 1 <NA>      <NA>        NA        NA  
## 2 JACK       DOMINIC    10779     1519  
## 3 DANIEL    NICHOLAS   10338     1385  
## 4 THOMAS    BRANDON    9603      1337  
## 5 JAMES     RHYS       9385      1259  
## 6 JOSHUA    MARK       7887      1222  
## 7 MATTHEW   MAX        7426      1192  
## 8 RYAN      DYLAN      6496      1186  
## 9 JOSEPH    HENRY     6193      1135  
## 10 SAMUEL   PETER     6161      1128  
## # ... with 49 more rows
```

```
boysNames[[1]] <- boysNames[[1]] %>% drop_na()
```

```
boysNames[[1]]
```

```
## # A tibble: 50 x 4  
##   Name...2 Name...6 Count...3 Count...7  
##   <chr>     <chr>      <dbl>      <dbl>  
## 1 JACK       DOMINIC    10779     1519  
## 2 DANIEL    NICHOLAS   10338     1385  
## 3 THOMAS    BRANDON    9603      1337  
## 4 JAMES     RHYS       9385      1259  
## 5 JOSHUA    MARK       7887      1222  
## 6 MATTHEW   MAX        7426      1192
```

```
## 7 RYAN      DYLAN        6496      1186
## 8 JOSEPH    HENRY        6193      1135
## 9 SAMUEL    PETER        6161      1128
## 10 LIAM     STEPHEN       5802      1122
## # ... with 40 more rows
```

### 6.4.5 Exercise 2

1. Write a function called `namecount` that takes a data frame as an argument and returns a modified version, which keeps only columns that include the strings `Name` and `Count` in the column names. HINT: see the `?matches` function.

```
##
```

2. Test your function on the first data frame in the list of boys names data.

```
##
```

3. Use the `map()` function to each data frame in the list of boys names data and save it to the list called `boysNames`.

```
##
```

[Click for Exercise 2 Solution](#)

1. Write a function that takes a data frame as an argument and returns a modified version, which keeps only columns that include the strings `Name` and `Count` in the column names. HINT: see the `?matches` function.

```
namecount <- function(data) {
  select(data, matches("Name|Count"))
}
```

2. Test your function on the first data frame in the list of boys names data.

```
namecount(boysNames[[1]])
```

```
## # A tibble: 50 x 4
##   Name...2 Name...6 Count...3 Count...7
##   <chr>    <chr>      <dbl>      <dbl>
## 1 JACK     DOMINIC     10779      1519
## 2 DANIEL   NICHOLAS   10338      1385
## 3 THOMAS   BRANDON    9603       1337
## 4 JAMES    RHYS        9385      1259
```

```
##  5 JOSHUA  MARK      7887      1222
##  6 MATTHEW MAX       7426      1192
##  7 RYAN    DYLAN     6496      1186
##  8 JOSEPH  HENRY    6193      1135
##  9 SAMUEL  PETER     6161      1128
## 10 LIAM    STEPHEN   5802      1122
## # ... with 40 more rows
```

3. Use the `map()` function to each data frame in the list of boys names data.

```
boysNames <- map(boysNames, namecount)
```

#### 6.4.6 Reshaping from wide to long

Our final task is to re-arrange the data so that it is all in a single table instead of in two side-by-side tables. For many similar tasks the `gather()` function in the `tidyverse` package is useful, but in this case we will be better off using a combination of `select()` and `bind_rows()`. Here's the logic behind this step:

	Wide	vs	Long																																														
	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>ID</th> <th>A1</th> <th>A2</th> <th>A3</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>1</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>3</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	ID	A1	A2	A3	1				2				3					<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>ID</th> <th>ID2</th> <th>A</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>A1</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td>A1</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>3</td> <td>A1</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>A2</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td>A2</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>3</td> <td>A2</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>A3</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td>A3</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>3</td> <td>A3</td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	ID	ID2	A	1	A1		2	A1		3	A1		1	A2		2	A2		3	A2		1	A3		2	A3		3	A3	
ID	A1	A2	A3																																														
1																																																	
2																																																	
3																																																	
ID	ID2	A																																															
1	A1																																																
2	A1																																																
3	A1																																																
1	A2																																																
2	A2																																																
3	A2																																																
1	A3																																																
2	A3																																																
3	A3																																																

Here's the code that implements the transformation:

```
boysNames[[1]]
```

```
## # A tibble: 50 x 4
##       Name...2 Name...6 Count...3 Count...7
##       <chr>     <chr>     <dbl>     <dbl>
```

```

## 1 JACK DOMINIC 10779 1519
## 2 DANIEL NICHOLAS 10338 1385
## 3 THOMAS BRANDON 9603 1337
## 4 JAMES RHYS 9385 1259
## 5 JOSHUA MARK 7887 1222
## 6 MATTHEW MAX 7426 1192
## 7 RYAN DYLAN 6496 1186
## 8 JOSEPH HENRY 6193 1135
## 9 SAMUEL PETER 6161 1128
## 10 LIAM STEPHEN 5802 1122
## # ... with 40 more rows

first_columns <- select(boysNames[[1]], Name = Name...2, Count = Count...3)
second_columns <- select(boysNames[[1]], Name = Name...6, Count = Count...7)

bind_rows(first_columns, second_columns)

## # A tibble: 100 x 2
##   Name     Count
##   <chr>   <dbl>
## 1 JACK     10779
## 2 DANIEL   10338
## 3 THOMAS   9603
## 4 JAMES    9385
## 5 JOSHUA   7887
## 6 MATTHEW   7426
## 7 RYAN      6496
## 8 JOSEPH    6193
## 9 SAMUEL    6161
## 10 LIAM     5802
## # ... with 90 more rows

```

### 6.4.7 Exercise 3

#### Cleanup all the data

In the previous examples we learned how to drop empty rows with `drop_na()`, select only relevant columns with `select()`, and re-arrange our data with `select()` and `bind_rows()`. In each case we applied the changes only to the first element of our `boysNames` list.

NOTE: some Excel files include extra blank columns between the first and second set of `Name` and `Count` columns, resulting in different numeric suffixes for the second set of columns. You will need to use a regular expression to match each of these different column names. HINT: see the `?matches` function.

1. Create a new function called `cleanupNamesData` that:

```
# 1) subsets data to include only those columns that include the term `Name` and `Count` and app
# 2) subset two separate data frames, with first and second set of `Name` and `Count` columns
# 3) append the two datasets
```

2. Your task now is to use the `map()` function to apply each of these transformations to all the elements in `boysNames`.

```
##
```

[Click for Exercise 3 Solution](#)

1. Create a new function called `cleanupNamesData` that:

```
cleanupNamesData <- function(file){

  # subset data to include only those columns that include the term `Name` and `Count`
  subsettet_file <- file %>%
    select(matches("Name|Count")) %>%
    drop_na()

  # subset two separate data frames, with first and second set of `Name` and `Count` columns
  first_columns <- select(subsettet_file, Name = Name...2, Count = Count...3)

  second_columns <- select(subsettet_file, Name = matches("Name...6|Name...7|Name...8"),
                            Count = matches("Count...7|Count...8|Count...9"))

  # append the two datasets
  bind_rows(first_columns, second_columns)
}
```

```
## test it out on the second data frame in the list
boysNames[[2]] %>% glimpse() # before cleanup
```

```
## Observations: 61
## Variables: 4
## $ Name...2 <chr> NA, "JACK", "JAMES", "THOMAS", "DANIEL", "JOSHUA", "MATTH...
## $ Count...3 <dbl> NA, 10145, 9853, 9479, 9047, 7698, 7443, 6367, 5809, 5631...
## $ Name...7 <chr> NA, "SEAN", "DYLAN", "DOMINIC", "LOUIS", "RHYS", "NICHOLA...
## $ Count...8 <dbl> NA, 1388, 1380, 1359, 1325, 1291, 1274, 1244, 1241, 1158,...
```

```
boysNames[[2]] %>% cleanupNamesData() %>% glimpse() # after cleanup
```

```
## Observations: 100
## Variables: 2
## $ Name <chr> "JACK", "JAMES", "THOMAS", "DANIEL", "JOSHUA", "MATTHEW", "SA...
## $ Count <dbl> 10145, 9853, 9479, 9047, 7698, 7443, 6367, 5809, 5631, 5404, ...
```

2. Your task now is to use the `map()` function to apply each of these transformations to all the elements in `boysNames`.

```
boysNames <- map(boysNames, cleanupNamesData)
```

## 6.5 Data organization & storage

**GOAL:** To learn how to organize the data into one large data frame and store it. In particular:

1. Create a year column within each data frame within the list
2. Append all the data frames in the list into one large data frame

Now that we have the data cleaned up and augmented, we can turn our attention to organizing and storing the data.

### 6.5.1 A list of data frames

Right now we have a list of data frames; one for each year. This is not a bad way to go. It has the advantage of making it easy to work with individual years; it has the disadvantage of making it more difficult to examine questions that require data from multiple years. To make the arrangement of the data clearer it helps to name each element of the list with the year it corresponds to.

```
head(boysNames) %>% glimpse()
```

```
## List of 6
## $ :Classes 'tbl_df', 'tbl' and 'data.frame': 100 obs. of 2 variables:
##   ..$ Name : chr [1:100] "JACK" "DANIEL" "THOMAS" "JAMES" ...
##   ..$ Count: num [1:100] 10779 10338 9603 9385 7887 ...
## $ :Classes 'tbl_df', 'tbl' and 'data.frame': 100 obs. of 2 variables:
##   ..$ Name : chr [1:100] "JACK" "JAMES" "THOMAS" "DANIEL" ...
##   ..$ Count: num [1:100] 10145 9853 9479 9047 7698 ...
## $ :Classes 'tbl_df', 'tbl' and 'data.frame': 100 obs. of 2 variables:
##   ..$ Name : chr [1:100] "JACK" "THOMAS" "JAMES" "DANIEL" ...
##   ..$ Count: num [1:100] 9845 9468 9197 7732 7672 ...
## $ :Classes 'tbl_df', 'tbl' and 'data.frame': 100 obs. of 2 variables:
##   ..$ Name : chr [1:100] "JACK" "THOMAS" "JAMES" "JOSHUA" ...
##   ..$ Count: num [1:100] 9785 9454 8748 7275 6935 ...
```

```

## $ :Classes 'tbl_df', 'tbl' and 'data.frame': 100 obs. of 2 variables:
## ..$ Name : chr [1:100] "JACK" "THOMAS" "JAMES" "JOSHUA" ...
## ..$ Count: num [1:100] 9079 8672 7489 7097 6229 ...
## $ :Classes 'tbl_df', 'tbl' and 'data.frame': 100 obs. of 2 variables:
## ..$ Name : chr [1:100] "JACK" "THOMAS" "JOSHUA" "JAMES" ...
## ..$ Count: num [1:100] 9000 8337 7182 7026 5759 ...

head(boy_file_names)

## [1] "dataSets/boys/1996boys_tcm77-254026.xlsx"
## [2] "dataSets/boys/1997boys_tcm77-254022.xlsx"
## [3] "dataSets/boys/1998boys_tcm77-254018.xlsx"
## [4] "dataSets/boys/1999boys_tcm77-254014.xlsx"
## [5] "dataSets/boys/2000boys_tcm77-254008.xlsx"
## [6] "dataSets/boys/2001boys_tcm77-254000.xlsx"

# use regex to extract years from file names
Years <- str_extract(boy_file_names, pattern = "[0-9]{4}")
Years

## [1] "1996" "1997" "1998" "1999" "2000" "2001" "2002" "2003" "2004" "2005"
## [11] "2006" "2007" "2008" "2009" "2010" "2011" "2012" "2013" "2014" "2015"

names(boysNames) # returns NULL - no names in the list

## NULL

# assign years to list names
names(boysNames) <- Years

names(boysNames) # returns the years as list names

## [1] "1996" "1997" "1998" "1999" "2000" "2001" "2002" "2003" "2004" "2005"
## [11] "2006" "2007" "2008" "2009" "2010" "2011" "2012" "2013" "2014" "2015"

head(boysNames) %>% glimpse()

## List of 6
## $ 1996:Classes 'tbl_df', 'tbl' and 'data.frame': 100 obs. of 2 variables:
## ..$ Name : chr [1:100] "JACK" "DANIEL" "THOMAS" "JAMES" ...
## ..$ Count: num [1:100] 10779 10338 9603 9385 7887 ...
## $ 1997:Classes 'tbl_df', 'tbl' and 'data.frame': 100 obs. of 2 variables:
## ..$ Name : chr [1:100] "JACK" "JAMES" "THOMAS" "DANIEL" ...
## ..$ Count: num [1:100] 10145 9853 9479 9047 7698 ...

```

```
## $ 1998:Classes 'tbl_df', 'tbl' and 'data.frame': 100 obs. of 2 variables:
## ..$ Name : chr [1:100] "JACK" "THOMAS" "JAMES" "DANIEL" ...
## ..$ Count: num [1:100] 9845 9468 9197 7732 7672 ...
## $ 1999:Classes 'tbl_df', 'tbl' and 'data.frame': 100 obs. of 2 variables:
## ..$ Name : chr [1:100] "JACK" "THOMAS" "JAMES" "JOSHUA" ...
## ..$ Count: num [1:100] 9785 9454 8748 7275 6935 ...
## $ 2000:Classes 'tbl_df', 'tbl' and 'data.frame': 100 obs. of 2 variables:
## ..$ Name : chr [1:100] "JACK" "THOMAS" "JAMES" "JOSHUA" ...
## ..$ Count: num [1:100] 9079 8672 7489 7097 6229 ...
## $ 2001:Classes 'tbl_df', 'tbl' and 'data.frame': 100 obs. of 2 variables:
## ..$ Name : chr [1:100] "JACK" "THOMAS" "JOSHUA" "JAMES" ...
## ..$ Count: num [1:100] 9000 8337 7182 7026 5759 ...
```

### 6.5.2 One big data frame

While storing the data in separate data frames by year makes some sense, many operations will be easier if the data is simply stored in one big data frame. We've already seen how to turn a list of data frames into a single data.frame using `bind_rows()`, but there is a problem; The year information is stored in the names of the list elements, and so flattening the data.frames into one will result in losing the year information! Fortunately it is not too much trouble to add the year information to each data frame before flattening.

```
# apply name of the list element (.y) as a new column in the data.frame (.x)
boysNames <- imap(boysNames, ~ mutate(.x, Year = as.integer(.y)))

boysNames[1]
```

```
## $`1996`
## # A tibble: 100 x 3
##   Name   Count Year
##   <chr> <dbl> <int>
## 1 JACK    10779  1996
## 2 DANIEL  10338  1996
## 3 THOMAS   9603  1996
## 4 JAMES    9385  1996
## 5 JOSHUA   7887  1996
## 6 MATTHEW  7426  1996
## 7 RYAN     6496  1996
## 8 JOSEPH   6193  1996
## 9 SAMUEL   6161  1996
## 10 LIAM     5802  1996
## # ... with 90 more rows
```

### 6.5.3 Exercise 4

Make one big data.frame

1. Turn the list of boys names data frames into a single data frame. HINT: see `?bind_rows`.

```
##
```

2. Create a new directory called `all` within `dataSets` and write the data to a `.csv` file. HINT: see the `?dir.create` and `?write_csv` functions.

```
##
```

3. What were the five most popular names in 2013?

```
##
```

4. How has the popularity of the name “ANDREW” changed over time?

```
##
```

[Click for Exercise 4 Solution](#)

1. Turn the list of boys names data frames into a single data frame.

```
boysNames <- bind_rows(boysNames)
glimpse(boysNames)
```

```
## Observations: 2,000
## Variables: 3
## $ Name <chr> "JACK", "DANIEL", "THOMAS", "JAMES", "JOSHUA", "MATTHEW", "RY...
## $ Count <dbl> 10779, 10338, 9603, 9385, 7887, 7426, 6496, 6193, 6161, 5802, ...
## $ Year <int> 1996, 1996, 1996, 1996, 1996, 1996, 1996, 1996, 1996, 1996, 1...
```

2. Create a new directory called `all` within `dataSets` and write the data to a `.csv` file. HINT: see the `?dir.create` and `?write_csv` functions.

```
dir.create("dataSets/all")
write_csv(boysNames, "dataSets/all/boys_names.csv")
```

3. What were the five most popular names in 2013?

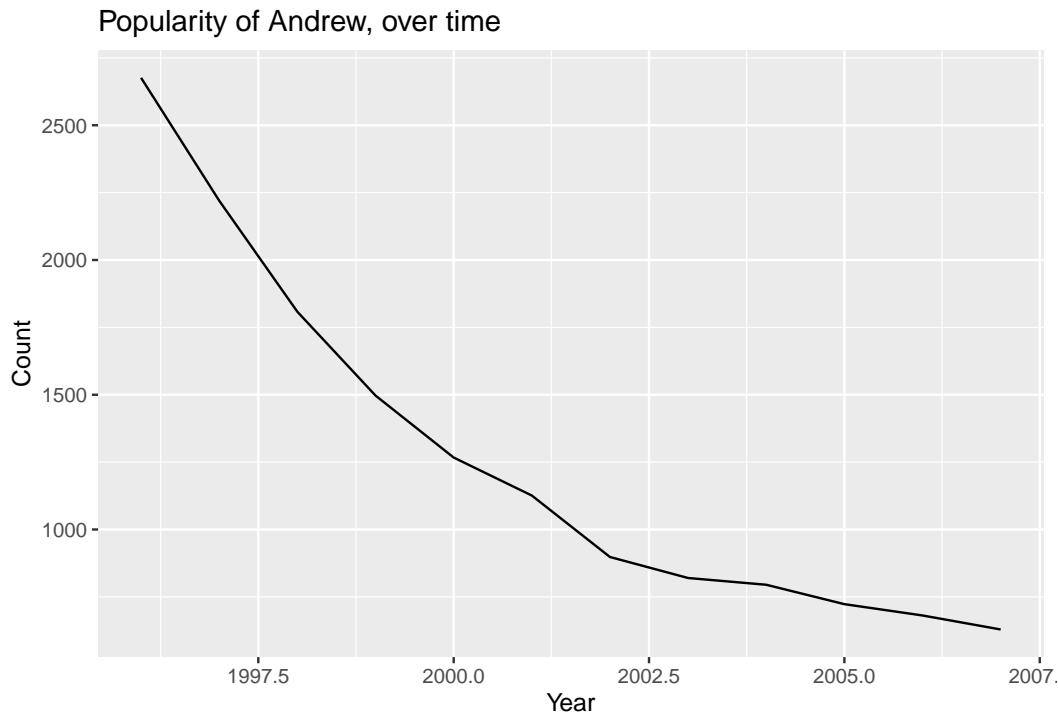
```
boysNames %>%
  filter(Year == 2013) %>%
  arrange(desc(Count)) %>%
  head()
```

```
## # A tibble: 6 x 3
##   Name    Count Year
##   <chr>   <dbl> <int>
## 1 OLIVER   6949  2013
## 2 JACK     6212  2013
## 3 HARRY    5888  2013
## 4 JACOB    5126  2013
## 5 CHARLIE  5039  2013
## 6 THOMAS   4591  2013
```

- How has the popularity of the name “ANDREW” changed over time?

```
andrew <- filter(boysNames, Name == "ANDREW")

ggplot(andrew, aes(x = Year, y = Count)) +
  geom_line() +
  ggtitle("Popularity of Andrew, over time")
```



## 6.6 Complete code

- Code for Section 1: Reading data from multiple Excel worksheets into R data frames

```

boy_file_names <- list.files("dataSets/boys", full.names = TRUE)

get_data_sheet_name <- function(file, term){
  excel_sheets(file) %>% str_subset(pattern = term)
}

read_boys_names <- function(file, sheet_name) {
  read_excel(
    path = file,
    sheet = get_data_sheet_name(file, term = sheet_name),
    skip = 6
  )
}

boysNames <- map(boy_file_names, read_boys_names, sheet_name = "Table 1")

```

2. Code for Section 2: Clean up data within each R data frame

```

cleanupNamesData <- function(file){
  # subset data to include only those columns that include the term `Name` and `Count`
  subsetteted_file <- file %>%
    select(matches("Name|Count")) %>%
    drop_na()
  # subset two separate data frames, with first and second set of `Name` and `Count` columns
  first_columns <- select(subsetteted_file, Name = Name...2, Count = Count...3)
  second_columns <- select(subsetteted_file, Name = matches("Name...6|Name...7|Name...8"),
                            Count = matches("Count...7|Count...8|Count...9"))
  # append the two datasets
  bind_rows(first_columns, second_columns)
}

boysNames <- map(boysNames, cleanupNamesData)

```

3. Code for Section 3: Organize the data into one large data frame and store it

```

Years <- str_extract(boy_file_names, pattern = "[0-9]{4}")

names(boysNames) <- Years

boysNames <- imap(boysNames, ~ mutate(.x, Year = as.integer(.y)))

boysNames <- bind_rows(boysNames)

```

## 6.7 Wrap-up

### 6.7.1 Feedback

These workshops are a work in progress, please provide any feedback to: [help@iq.harvard.edu](mailto:help@iq.harvard.edu)

### 6.7.2 Resources

- IQSS
  - Workshops: <https://dss.iq.harvard.edu/workshop-materials>
  - Data Science Services: <https://dss.iq.harvard.edu/>
  - Research Computing Environment: <https://iqss.github.io/dss-rce/>
- HBS
  - Research Computing Services workshops: <https://training.rcs.hbs.org/workshops>
  - Other HBS RCS resources: <https://training.rcs.hbs.org/workshop-materials>
  - RCS consulting email: <mailto:research@hbs.edu>
- R
  - Learn from the best: <http://adv-r.had.co.nz/>; <http://r4ds.had.co.nz/>
  - R documentation: <http://cran.r-project.org/manuals.html>
  - Collection of R tutorials: <http://cran.r-project.org/other-docs.html>
  - R for Programmers (by Norman Matloff, UC-Davis) <http://heather.cs.ucdavis.edu/~matloff/R/RProg.pdf>
  - Calling C and Fortran from R (by Charles Geyer, UMinn) <http://www.stat.umn.edu/~charlie/rc/>
  - State of the Art in Parallel Computing with R (Schmidberger et al.) <http://www.jstatso.org/v31/i01/paper>



## **Part III**

# **Python**



## Chapter 7

# Python Installation

Your professional conduct is greatly appreciated. Out of respect to your fellow workshop attendees and instructors, please arrive at your workshop on time, having pre-installed all necessary software and materials. This will likely take 15-20 minutes.

Before starting any of our Python workshops, it is necessary to complete 2 tasks. Please make sure both of these tasks are completed **before** you attend your workshop, as, depending on your internet speed, they may take a long time.

1. download and unzip **class materials**
2. download and install **Anaconda Python 3 distribution**



### 7.1 Troubleshooting session

We will hold a troubleshooting session during the 20 minutes prior to the start of the workshop. **If you are unable to complete all of the tasks, please stop by the training room during this session.** Once the workshop starts we will **NOT** be able to give you one-to-one assistance with troubleshooting installation problems. Likewise, if you arrive late, please do **NOT** expect one-to-one assistance for anything covered at the beginning of the workshop.

## 7.2 Materials

Download class materials for your workshop:

- Python Introduction: <https://github.com/IQSS/dss-workshops/raw/master/Python/PythonIntro.zip>
- Python Webscraping: <https://github.com/IQSS/dss-workshops/raw/master/Python/PythonWebScrape.zip>

Extract materials from the zipped directory (Right-click => Extract All on Windows, double-click on Mac) and move them to your desktop.

It will be useful when you view the above materials for you to see the different file extensions on your computer. Here are instructions for enabling this:

- Mac OS
- Windows OS

## 7.3 Software

The Anaconda Python distribution is designed with data Science in mind and contains a curated set of 270+ pre-installed Python packages.

### Mac OS X:

- Install Anaconda Python 3 by downloading and running this .pkg file. Accept the defaults proposed by the Anaconda installer.

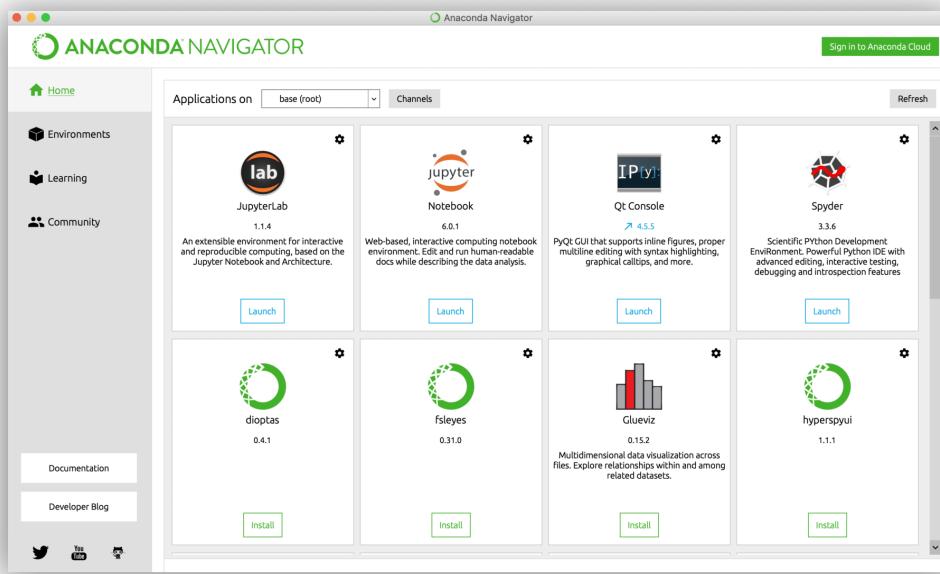
### Windows:

- Install Anaconda Python 3 by downloading and running this .exe file. Accept the defaults proposed by the Anaconda installer.

### Linux:

- Install Anaconda Python 3 by downloading and running this .sh file. Accept the defaults proposed by the Anaconda installer.

**Success? After installing, please start the Anaconda Navigator program. If you were successful with the installation, you should see a window similar to this:**



To check that the installation is working correctly, click the `Launch` button under `JupyterLab`. A `JupyterLab` window should open in your web browser.

**If you are having any difficulties with the installation, please stop by the training room 20 minutes prior to the start of the workshop.**

## 7.4 Jupyter notebook interfaces

We will be using Jupyter Notebooks to run our Python code. Jupyter Notebooks are documents that combine text, code, images, math, and rich media and can be viewed in a browser. There are two main ways to interact with Jupyter Notebooks:

1. using **JupyterLab**, a modern “extensible environment for interactive and reproducible computing” that runs in your web browser.
2. using **Jupyter Notebook**, an older browser-based application.

Compared to Jupyter Notebook, JupyterLab provides a more modern, richer and more robust coding environment. For this reason, **we strongly recommend that you use JupyterLab to interact with notebooks.**

### 7.4.1 Launch JupyterLab

Here's how to start JupyterLab and open a notebook within this interface (**recommended**):

1. Start the **Anaconda Navigator** program
2. Click the **Launch** button under **JupyterLab**
3. A browser window will open with your computer's files listed on the left hand side of the page. Navigate to the folder with the workshop materials that you downloaded to your desktop and double-click on the folder
4. Within the workshop materials folder, double-click on the file with the word "BLANK" in the name (`*_BLANK.ipynb`). (If a pop-up window asks you to **Select Kernel** choose **Python 3** kernel.) The Jupyter Notebook should now open on the right hand side of the page.

If you have technical difficulty with JupyterLab you can try the older Jupyter Notebook as a fallback by clicking the **Launch** button under **Jupyter Notebook** in step 2.

## 7.5 Resources

- IQSS
  - Workshops: <https://dss.iq.harvard.edu/workshop-materials>
  - Data Science Services: <https://dss.iq.harvard.edu/>
  - Research Computing Environment: <https://iqss.github.io/dss-rce/>
- HBS
  - Research Computing Services workshops: <https://training.rcs.hbs.org/workshops>
  - Other HBS RCS resources: <https://training.rcs.hbs.org/workshop-materials>
  - RCS consulting email: <mailto:research@hbs.edu>

# Chapter 8

# Python Introduction

## Topics

- Functions
- Objects
- Assignment
- Finding help
- List and dictionary structures
- Indexing data structures
- Iterating over collections of data
- Importing packages

## 8.1 Setup

### 8.1.1 Software and Materials

Follow the Python Installation instructions and ensure that you can successfully start JupyterLab.

A handy cheat-sheet is available to help you look up and remember basic syntax.

### 8.1.2 Class Structure

Informal - Ask questions at any time. Really!

Collaboration is encouraged - please spend a minute introducing yourself to your neighbors!

### 8.1.3 Prerequisites

This is an introductory Python course:

- Assumes no prior knowledge of **how to use** Python
- We do assume you know **why** you want to learn Python. If you don't, and want a comparison of Python to other statistical software, see our Data Science Tools workshop
- Relatively slow-paced

### 8.1.4 Goals

We will learn about the Python language by analyzing the text of Lewis Carroll's *Alice's Adventures in Wonderland*. In particular, our goals are to learn about:

1. What Python is and how it works
2. How we can interact with Python
3. Foundations of the language (functions, objects, assignment, methods)
4. Using methods and lists to analyze data
5. Iterating over collections of data to automate repetitive tasks
6. Storing related data in dictionaries (as key - value pairs)
7. Importing packages to add functionality

## 8.2 Python basics

**GOAL:** To learn about the foundations of the Python language.

1. What Python is and how it works
2. Python interfaces
3. Functions
4. Objects
5. Assignment
6. Methods

### 8.2.1 What is Python?

- Python is a free general purpose programming language
- Python is an interpreted language, not a compiled one, meaning that all commands typed on the keyboard are directly executed without requiring to build a complete program (this is like R and unlike C, Fortran, Pascal, etc.)
- Python has existed for about 30 years
- Python is modular — most functionality is from add-on packages. So the language can be thought of as a *platform* for creating and running a large number of useful packages.

### 8.2.2 Why use Python?

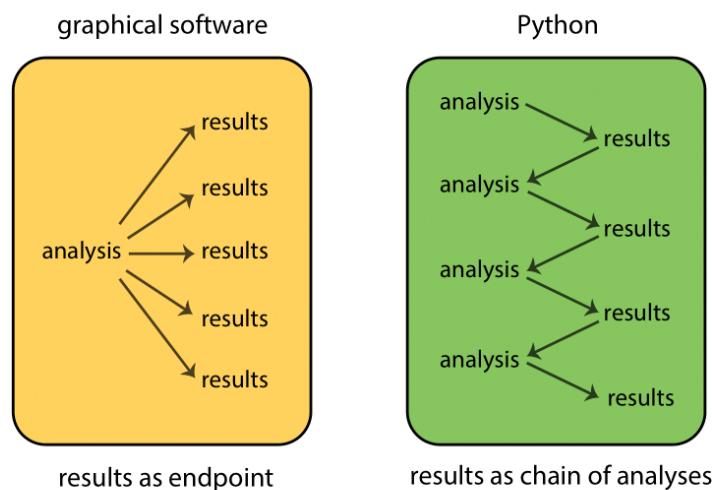
- Relatively easy to learn

- Extremely flexible: can be used to manipulate, analyze, and visualize data, make web sites, write games, and much more (Youtube and DropBox were written in Python)
- Cutting edge machine learning tools
- Publication quality graphics
- 150,000+ add on packages covering all aspects of statistics and machine learning
- Active community of users

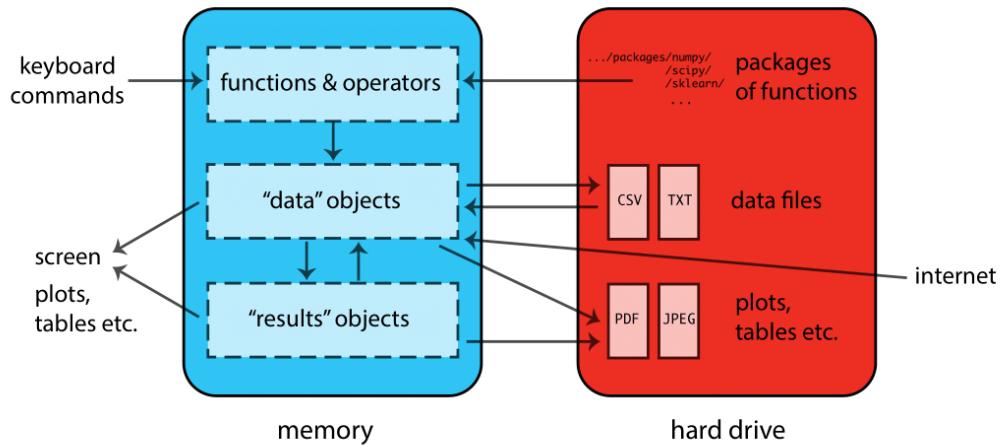
### 8.2.3 How does Python work?

While graphical-based statistical software (e.g., SPSS, GraphPad) immediately display the results of an analysis, **Python stores results in an object (a data structure)**, so that an analysis can be done with no result displayed. Such a feature is very useful, since a user can extract only that part of the results that is of interest and can pass results into further analyses.

For example, if you run a series of 20 regressions and want to compare the different regression coefficients, Python can display only the estimated coefficients: thus the results may take a single line, whereas graphical-based software could open 20 results windows. In addition, these regression coefficients can be passed directly into further analyses — such as generating predictions.



When Python is running, variables, data, functions, results, etc., are **stored in memory** on the computer in the form of **objects** that have a name. The user can **perform actions** on these objects with **operators** (arithmetic, logical, comparison, etc.) and **functions** (which are themselves objects). Here's a schematic of how this all fits together:



## 8.2.4 Interfaces

### 8.2.4.1 Text editors, IDEs, & Notebooks

There are different ways of interacting with Python. The two main ways are through:

1. **text editors or Integrated Development Environments (IDEs):** Text editors and IDEs are not really separate categories; as you add features to a text editor it becomes more like an IDE. Some editors/IDEs are language-specific while others are general purpose — typically providing language support via plugins. The following table lists a few popular editors/IDEs that can be used with Python. In this workshop, we will use JupyterLab, a modern “extensible environment for interactive and reproducible computing” that runs in your web browser.

Editor / IDE	Features	Ease of use	Language support
Spyder	Excellent	Easy	Python only
PyCharm	Excellent	Moderate	Python only
JupyterLab	Good	Easy	Excellent
VS code	Excellent	Easy	Very good
Atom	Good	Moderate	Good
Vim	Excellent	Hard	Good
Emacs	Excellent	Hard	Excellent

2. **Notebooks:** Browser-based applications that allow you to create and share documents that contain live code, equations, visualizations, and narrative text. One popular choice is Jupyter Notebook; an open source notebook that has support for 40+ languages, but has limited features compared with the JupyterLab IDE.

#### 8.2.4.2 Source code & literate programming

There are also several different **formats** available for writing code in Python. These basically boil down to a choice between:

1. **Source code:** the practice of writing code, and possibly comments, in a plain text document. In Python this is done by writing code in a text file with a `.py` extension. Writing source code has the great advantage of being simple. Souce code is the format of choice if you intend to run your code as a complete script - for example, from the command line.
2. **Literate programming:** the practice of embedding computer code in a natural language document. In Python this is often done using the aformentioned Jupyter Notebook, which is a JSON document containing an ordered list of input/output cells which can contain code, text (using *Markdown*), mathematics, plots, and rich media, usually ending with the `.ipynb` extension. Jupyter Notebooks are easy to write, human-readable, and the format of choice if you intend to run your code interactively, by running small pieces of code and looking at each output. Researchers can use Notebooks to write their journal papers, dissertations, and statistics/math class notes, since it is easy to convert into other formats later, such as HTML (for a webpage), MS Word, or PDF (via LaTeX).

Here are some resources for learning more about Jupyter Notebooks:

- <https://www.dataquest.io/blog/jupyter-notebook-tutorial/>
- <https://www.datacamp.com/community/tutorials/tutorial-jupyter-notebook>
- <https://realpython.com/jupyter-notebook-introduction/>

#### 8.2.5 Launch JupyterLab

1. Start the **Anaconda Navigator** program
2. Click the **Launch** button under **JupyterLab**
3. A browser window will open with your computer's files listed on the left hand side of the page. Navigate to the folder called **PythonIntro** that you downloaded to your desktop and double-click on the folder
4. Within the **PythonIntro** folder, double-click on the file with the word "BLANK" in the name (`PythonIntro_BLANK.ipynb`). A pop-up window will ask you to **Select Kernel** — you should select the Python 3 kernel. The Jupyter Notebook should now open on the right hand side of the page

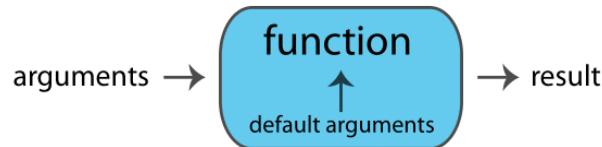
A Jupyter Notebook contains one or more *cells* containing notes or code. To insert a new cell click the **+** button in the upper left. To execute a cell, select it and press **Control+Enter** or click the **Run** button at the top.

### 8.2.6 Syntax rules

- Python is case sensitive
- Python uses white space as part of the syntax (it's important!)
- Variable names should start with a letter (A-Z and a-z) and can include letters, digits (0-9), and underscores (\_)
- Comments can be inserted using a hash # symbol
- Functions must be written with parentheses, even if there is nothing within them; for example: `len()`

### 8.2.7 Function calls

**Functions perform actions** — they take some input, called **arguments** and return some output (i.e., a result). Here's a schematic of how a function works:



The general form for calling Python functions is

```
# function_name(arg1, arg2, arg3, ... argn)
```

The arguments in a function can be objects (data, formulae, expressions, etc.), some of which could be defined by default in the function; these default values may be modified by the user by specifying options.

### 8.2.8 Assignment

In Python we can assign an object (data structure) to a name using the = operator.

```
# name = thing_to_assign
x = 10
```

The name on the left of the equals sign is one that we chose. When choosing names, they must:

1. start with a *letter*
2. use only *letters*, *numbers* and *underscores*

### 8.2.9 Reading data

Reading information from a file is the first step in many projects, so we'll use functions to read data into Python and assign them to a named object. The workshop materials you downloaded earlier include a file named `Alice_in_wonderland.txt` which contains the text of Lewis Carroll's *Alice's Adventures in Wonderland*. We can use the `open()` function to create a file **object** that makes a **connection** to the file:

```
alice_file = open("Alice_in_wonderland.txt")
```

The `alice_file` object name we just created does *not* contain the contents of `Alice_in_wonderland.txt`. It is a representation in Python of the *file itself* rather than the *contents* of the file.

### 8.2.10 Object methods

The `alice_file` object provides *methods* that we can use to do things with it. Methods are invoked using syntax that looks like `ObjectName.method()`. You can see the methods available for acting on an object by typing the object's name followed by a `.` and pressing the `tab` key. For example, typing `alice_file.` and pressing `tab` will display a list of methods as shown below.

The screenshot shows a Jupyter Notebook cell with the following content:

```
In [21]: alice_file.  
Out[21]: alice_file.buffer  
          alice_file.close  
          alice_file.closed  
          alice_file.detach  
          alice_file.encoding  
          alice_file.errors  
In [10]: alice_file.fileno  
          alice_file.flush  
          alice_file.isatty  
          alice_file.line_buffering
```

The word `alice_file.` is typed in blue, indicating it is the current object being interacted with. A dropdown menu lists several methods: `buffer`, `close`, `closed`, `detach`, `encoding`, `errors`, `fileno`, `flush`, `isatty`, and `line_buffering`. The method `buffer` is highlighted in blue, matching the color of the object name.

Among the methods we have for doing things with our `alice_file` object is one named `read`. We can use the `help` function to learn more about it.

```
help(alice_file.read)  
  
## Help on built-in function read:  
##  
## read(size=-1, /) method of _io.TextIOWrapper instance
```

```
##      Read at most n characters from stream.
##
##      Read from underlying buffer until we have n characters or we hit EOF.
##      If n is negative or omitted, read until EOF.
```

Since `alice_file.read` looks promising, we will invoke this method and see what it does.

```
alice_txt = alice_file.read()
print(alice_txt[:500]) # the [:500] gets the first 500 character -- more on this later.
```

```
## ALICE'S ADVENTURES IN WONDERLAND
##
## by
##
## Lewis Carroll
##
## CHAPTER I. Down the Rabbit-Hole
##
## Alice was beginning to get very tired of sitting by her sister on the
## bank, and of having nothing to do: once or twice she had peeped into the
## book her sister was reading, but it had no pictures or conversations in
## it, 'and what is the use of a book,' thought Alice 'without pictures or
## conversations?'
##
## So she was considering in her own mind (as well as she could, for the
## hot day made her feel very sleepy and s
```

That's all there is to it! We've read the contents of `Alice_in_wonderland.txt` and stored this text in a Python object we named `alice_txt`. Now let's start to explore this object, and learn some more things about Python along the way.

### 8.3 Using object methods & lists

**GOAL:** To learn how to use methods and lists to analyze data. We will do this using the Alice text to count:

1. Words
2. Chapters
3. Paragraphs

How many words does the text contain? To answer this question, we can split the text up so there is one element per word, and then count the number of words.

### 8.3.1 Splitting a string into a list of words

How do we figure out how to split strings in Python? We can ask Python what our `alice_txt` object is and what methods it provides. We can ask Python what things are using the `type()` function, like this:

```
type(alice_txt)
```

```
## <class 'str'>
```

Python tells us that `alice_txt` is of type `str` (i.e., it is a string). We can find out what methods are available for working with strings by typing `alice_txt.` and pressing `tab`. We'll see that among the methods is one named `split`, as shown below.

A screenshot of a code editor showing a completion dropdown menu. The menu lists several methods available for the `alice_txt` object, including `rpartition`, `rsplit`, `rstrip`, `split`, `splitlines`, `startswith`, `strip`, `swapcase`, `title`, and `translate`. Below the list, the method `split` is highlighted in orange, indicating it is the current suggestion. The code editor interface shows a dark background with light-colored text and a vertical scrollbar on the right side of the dropdown.

```
alice_txt.rpartition
alice_txt.rsplit
alice_txt.rstrip
alice_txt.split
alice_txt.splitlines
alice_txt.startswith
alice_txt.strip
alice_txt.swapcase
alice_txt.title
alice_txt.translate
alice_txt.
```

To learn how to use this method we can check the documentation.

```
help(alice_txt.split)
```

```
## Help on built-in function split:
##
## split(sep=None, maxsplit=-1) method of builtins.str instance
##     Return a list of the words in the string, using sep as the delimiter string.
##
##     sep
##         The delimiter according which to split the string.
##         None (the default value) means split according to any whitespace,
##         and discard empty strings from the result.
##     maxsplit
##         Maximum number of splits to do.
##         -1 (the default value) means no limit.
```

Since the default is to split on whitespace (spaces, newlines, tabs) we can get a reasonable word count simply by calling the `split` method and counting the number of elements in the result. But, before we do that, we should learn more about the type of object the `split` method has returned.

```
alice_words = alice_txt.split() # returns a list
type(alice_words)

## <class 'list'>
```

### 8.3.2 Working with lists

The `split` method we used to break up the text of *Alice in Wonderland* into words produced a *list*. A lot of the techniques we'll use later to analyze this text also produce lists, so it's worth taking a few minutes to learn more about them.

Note that the displayed representation of lists and other data structures in Python often closely matches the syntax used to create them. For example, we can create a list using square brackets, just as we see when we print a list.

A *list* in Python is used to store a collection of items:

```
# create a list
y = [1, "b", 3, "D", 5, 6]
```

As with other types in Python, you can get a list of methods by typing the name of the object followed by a `.` and pressing `tab`.

### 8.3.3 Extracting subsets from lists

Among the things you can do with a list is extract subsets of items using **bracket indexing notation**. This is useful in many situations, including the current one where we want to inspect a long list without printing out the whole thing.

The examples below show how indexing works in Python. First using pseudocode:

```
# syntax
# object[ start : end : by ]

# defaults
# object[ 0 : end : 1 ]
```

Then using a real list:

```
# create a list
y = [1, "b", 3, "D", 5, 6]

y[0] # returns first element - the number 1 (yes, the index counts from zero!)
```

```

## 1

y[1] # returns second element - the letter "b"

## 'b'

y[ :3] # returns a list with only the first 3 elements, but index is of length 4 (0 to 3) because

## [1, 'b', 3]

y[2:5] # returns a list with elements 3, "D", 5

## [3, 'D', 5]

y[-1] # returns last element - the number 6

## 6

y[-4: ] # returns a list with last 4 elements

## [3, 'D', 5, 6]

alice_words[11:20] # returns a list with words 11 through 19

## ['Rabbit-Hole', 'Alice', 'was', 'beginning', 'to', 'get', 'very', 'tired', 'of']

alice_words[-10: ] # returns a list with the last 10 words

## ['her', 'own', 'child-life,', 'and', 'the', 'happy', 'summer', 'days.', 'THE', 'END']

```

### 8.3.4 Using sets to count unique items

Now that we have a list containing the individual words from *Alice's Adventures in Wonderland*, we can calculate how many words there are in total using the `len()` (length) function:

```

len(alice_words) # counts elements in a data structure

## 26445

```

According to our above computation, there are about 26 thousand total words in the Alice text. But how many *unique* words are there? Python has a special data structure called a *set* that makes it easy to find out. A *set* drops all duplicates, giving a collection of the unique elements. Here's a simple example:

```
# set example
mylist = {1, 5, 9, 9, 4, 5}
set(mylist)

## {1, 4, 5, 9}
```

Now we can count the number of unique elements in the list by getting the length `len()` of the set `set()`:

```
len(set(mylist))
```

```
## 4
```

We can now use the `set()` function to convert the list of all words (`alice_words`) into a set of *unique* words and then count them:

```
len(set(alice_words)) # counts unique elements in a data structure
```

```
## 5295
```

There are 5295 unique words in the text.

### 8.3.5 Exercise 0

#### Reading text from a file & splitting

*Alice's Adventures in Wonderland* is full of memorable characters. The main characters from the story are listed, one-per-line, in the file named `Characters.txt`.

NOTE: we will not always explicitly demonstrate everything you need to know in order to complete an exercise. Instead we focus on teaching you how to discover available methods and how use the help function to learn how to use them. It is expected that you will spend some time during the exercises looking for appropriate methods and perhaps reading documentation.

1. Open the `Characters.txt` file and read its contents.

```
##
```

2. Split text on newlines to produce a list with one element per line. Store the result as `alice_characters`. HINT: you can split on newlines using the `\n` separator.

```
##
```

Click for Exercise 0 Solution

1. Open the Characters.txt file and read its contents.

```
characters_file = open("Characters.txt")
characters_txt = characters_file.read()
```

2. Split text on newlines to produce a list with one element per line. Store the result as "alice\_characters".

```
alice_characters = characters_txt.split(sep="\n")
alice_characters
```

```
## ['Alice', 'White Rabbit', 'Mouse', 'Dodo', 'Lory', 'Eaglet', 'Duck', 'Pat', 'Bill the Lizard']
```

### 8.3.6 Control flow

Sometimes we may want to control the flow of code in an analysis using **choices**, such as **if** and **else** statements, which allow you to run different code depending on the input. The basic form is:

```
```python
if (condition) true_action else false_action
```
```

If `condition` is `TRUE`, `true\_action` is evaluated; if `condition` is `FALSE`, the optional `false\_action` is evaluated.

The conditions that are evaluated use **logical and relational operators** to determine equivalence or make some other relational comparisons.

### 8.3.7 Logical & relational operators

Here's a table of commonly used relational operators:

| Operator | Meaning                  |
|----------|--------------------------|
| ==       | equal to                 |
| !=       | not equal to             |
| >        | greater than             |
| >=       | greater than or equal to |
| <        | less than                |
| <=       | less than or equal to    |

These relational operators may be combined with logical operators, such as `and` or `or`, as we'll see below.

### 8.3.8 Counting list elements

Now that we know how to split a string and how to work with the resulting list, we can split on chapter markers to count the number of chapters. All we need to do is specify the string to split on. Since each chapter is marked with the string 'CHAPTER ' followed by the chapter number, we can split the text up into chapters using this as the separator.

```
alice_chapters = alice_txt.split("CHAPTER ")
len(alice_chapters)
```

```
## 13
```

Since the first element contains the material *before* the first chapter, this tells us there are twelve chapters in the book.

We can also count the number of times the "Bunny" and "Duck" characters appear in a given Chapter, say Chapter 2:

```
bunny_count_ch2 = alice_chapters[2].count("Bunny")
print(bunny_count_ch2)
```

```
## 0
```

```
duck_count_ch2 = alice_chapters[2].count("Duck")
print(duck_count_ch2)
```

```
## 1
```

By combining choice statements with logical and/or relational operators, we can then determine which of these two characters appears more often in Chapter 2:

```
if bunny_count_ch2 < duck_count_ch2:
    print("Bunny count is less than Duck count in Chapter II.")
elif bunny_count_ch2 > duck_count_ch2:
    print("Bunny count is larger than Duck count in Chapter II.")
else:
    print("Bunny count is equal to Duck count in Chapter II.)
```

```
## Bunny count is less than Duck count in Chapter II.
```

We can count paragraphs in a similar way to chapters. Paragraphs are indicated by a blank line, i.e., two newlines in a row. When working with strings we can represent newlines with \n. Paragraphs are indicated by two new lines, and so our basic paragraph separator is \n\n. We can see this separator by looking at the content.

```
print(alice_txt[:500]) # explicit printing --- formats text nicely
```

```
## ALICE'S ADVENTURES IN WONDERLAND
##
## by
##
## Lewis Carroll
##
## CHAPTER I. Down the Rabbit-Hole
##
## Alice was beginning to get very tired of sitting by her sister on the
## bank, and of having nothing to do: once or twice she had peeped into the
## book her sister was reading, but it had no pictures or conversations in
## it, 'and what is the use of a book,' thought Alice 'without pictures or
## conversations?'
##
## So she was considering in her own mind (as well as she could, for the
## hot day made her feel very sleepy and s
```

```
alice_txt[:500] # returns content without printing it
```

```
## "\ufeffALICE'S ADVENTURES IN WONDERLAND\n\nby\n\nLewis Carroll\n\nCHAPTER I. Down the Rabbit-Hole
```

```
alice_paragraphs = alice_txt.split("\n\n")
```

Before counting the number of paragraphs, I want to inspect the result to see if it looks correct:

```
print(alice_paragraphs[0], "\n=====")
```

```
## ALICE'S ADVENTURES IN WONDERLAND
## =====
```

```
print(alice_paragraphs[1], "\n=====")
```

```
## by
## =====
```

```
print(alice_paragraphs[2], "\n=====")
```

```
## Lewis Carroll
## =====
```

We're counting the title, author, and chapter lines as paragraphs, but this will do for a rough count.

```
len(alice_paragraphs)
```

```
## 830
```

Now let's use a logical operator to find out if "Alice" or "Eaglet" appear in paragraph 11:

```
alice_eaglet_exist = "Alice" in alice_paragraphs[10] or "Eaglet" in alice_paragraphs[10]
```

```
alice_eaglet_exist
```

```
## True
```

### 8.3.9 Exercise 1

#### Count the number of main characters

So far we've learned that there are 12 chapters, around 830 paragraphs, and about 26 thousand words in *Alice's Adventures in Wonderland*. Along the way we've also learned how to open a file and read its contents, split strings, calculate the length of objects, discover methods for string and list objects, and index/subset lists in Python. Now it is time for you to put these skills to use to learn something about the main characters in the story.

1. Count the number of main characters in the story (i.e., get the length of the list you created in previous exercise).

```
##
```

2. Extract and print just the first character from the list you created in the previous exercise.

```
##
```

3. Test whether the length of the 3rd and 8th character's names are equal. Test whether the length of the 3rd character's name is greater than or equal to the length of the 6th character's name. Now test whether EITHER of the above conditions are true. HINT: use the `len()` function.

```
##
```

4. (BONUS, optional): Sort the list you created in step 2 alphabetically, and then extract the last element.

```
##
```

Click for Exercise 1 Solution

1. Count the number of main characters in the story (i.e., get the length of the list you created in previous exercise).

```
len(alice_characters)
```

```
## 22
```

2. Extract and print just the first character from the list you created in the previous exercise.

```
print(alice_characters[0])
```

```
## Alice
```

3. Test whether the length of the 3rd and 8th character's names are equal. Test whether the length of the 3rd character's name is greater than or equal to the length of the 6th character's name. Now test whether EITHER of the above conditions are true. HINT: use the `len()` function.

```
len(alice_characters[2]) == len(alice_characters[7]) or len(alice_characters[2]) >= len(alice_cha
```

```
## False
```

4. (BONUS, optional): Sort the list you created in step 2 alphabetically, and then extract the last element.

```
alice_characters.sort()  
alice_characters[-1]
```

```
## 'White Rabbit'
```

## 8.4 Iterating over collections of data

**GOAL:** To learn how to automate repetitive tasks by iterating over collections of data. We will do this using the Alice text to count:

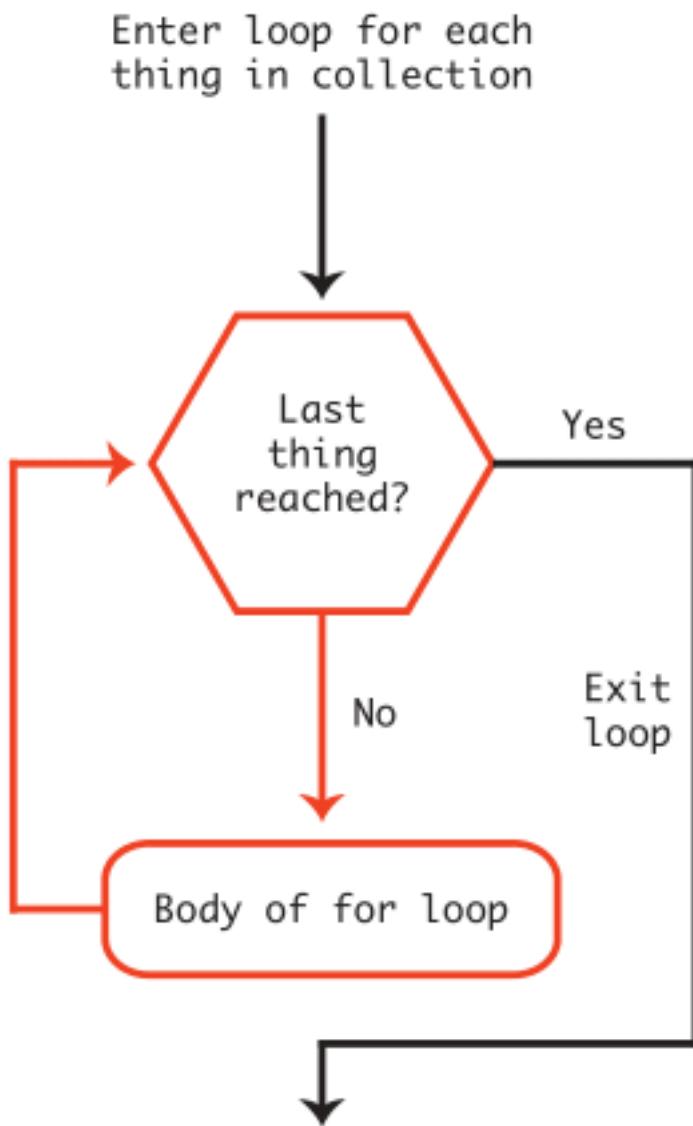
1. Words nested within paragraphs
2. Paragraphs nested within chapters

This far our analysis has treated the text as a “flat” data structure. For example, when we counted words we just counted words in the whole document, rather than counting the number of words in each chapter. If we want to treat our document as a nested structure, with words forming sentences, sentences forming paragraphs, paragraphs forming chapters, and chapters forming the book, we need to learn some additional tools. Specifically, we need to learn how to iterate over lists (or other collections) and do things with each element in a collection.

There are several ways to iterate in Python, of which we will focus on *for loops*.

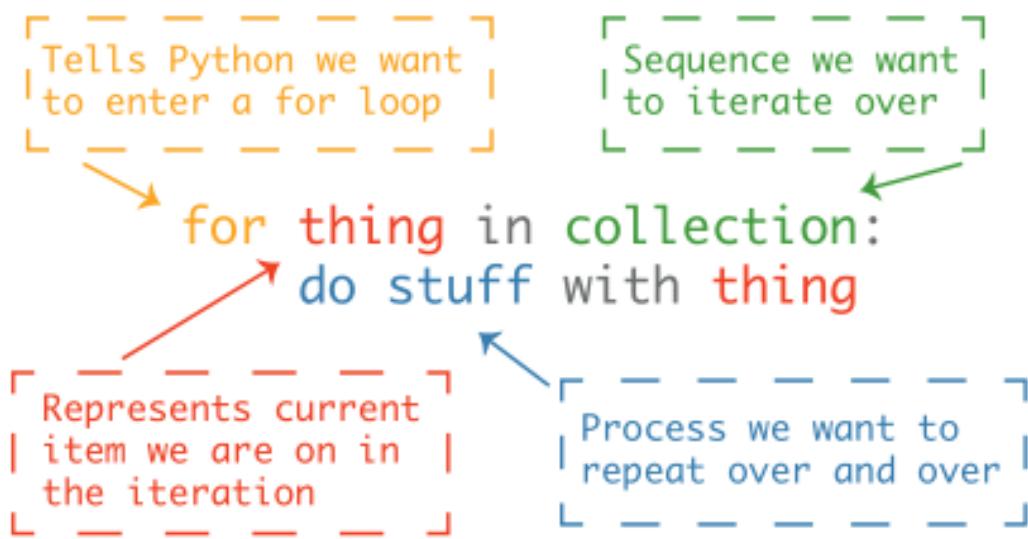
### 8.4.1 Iterating over lists using for-loops

A *for loop* is a way of cycling through the elements of a collection and doing something with each one. The for loop logic is:



The for loop syntax is:

```
for <thing> in <collection>:  
    do stuff with <thing>
```



Notice that:

1. **the body of the for-loop is indented**. This is important, because it is this indentation that defines the *body* of the loop — the place where things are done.
2. **White space matters in Python!**

A simple example:

```

for i in range(10):
    print(i)
  
```

```

## 0
## 1
## 2
## 3
## 4
## 5
## 6
## 7
## 8
## 9
  
```

```

print('DONE.')
  
```

```

## DONE.
  
```

Notice that “DONE.” is only printed once, since `print('DONE.')` is not indented and is therefore outside of the body of the loop.

As a simple example using the Alice text, we can cycle through the first 6 paragraphs and print each one. Cycling through with a loop makes it easy to insert a separator between the paragraphs, making it much clearer to read the output:

```
for paragraph in alice_paragraphs[:6]:
    print(paragraph)
    print('=====')

## ALICE'S ADVENTURES IN WONDERLAND
## =====
## by
## =====
## Lewis Carroll
## =====
## CHAPTER I. Down the Rabbit-Hole
## =====
## Alice was beginning to get very tired of sitting by her sister on the
## bank, and of having nothing to do: once or twice she had peeped into the
## book her sister was reading, but it had no pictures or conversations in
## it, 'and what is the use of a book,' thought Alice 'without pictures or
## conversations?'
## =====
## So she was considering in her own mind (as well as she could, for the
## hot day made her feel very sleepy and stupid), whether the pleasure
## of making a daisy-chain would be worth the trouble of getting up and
## picking the daisies, when suddenly a White Rabbit with pink eyes ran
## close by her.
## =====

print('DONE.')

## DONE.
```

Loops in Python are great because the syntax is relatively simple, and because they are very powerful. Inside of the body of a loop you can use all the tools you use elsewhere in Python.

Here is one more example of a loop, this time iterating over all the chapters and calculating the number of paragraphs in each chapter.

```
for chapter in alice_chapters[1:]:
    paragraphs = chapter.split("\n\n")
    print(len(paragraphs))

## 33
## 29
```

```
## 51
## 45
## 81
## 84
## 108
## 74
## 95
## 88
## 77
## 73
```

#### 8.4.2 Organizing results in dictionaries

It's often useful to store separate pieces of data that are related to one another in a `dict` (i.e., "dictionary"), which is designed to store key-value pairs. For example, we can calculate the number of times "Alice" is mentioned per chapter and associate each count with the chapter title it corresponds to.

The dictionary structure looks like:

```
# mydict = {key1:value1, key2:value2, key3:value3}
```

A simple example:

```
mydict = {"apple":5, "pear":6, "grape":10}
print(mydict)
```

```
## {'apple': 5, 'pear': 6, 'grape': 10}
```

```
# compare the above dict to a list
mylist =[5, 6, 10]
print(mylist)
```

```
## [5, 6, 10]
```

To associate chapter titles with "Alice" counts, we will first need to learn how to **append** elements to a list:

```
container = [] # a list

for i in range(10):
    container.append(i) # append elements to the list

print(container)
```

```
## [0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9]
```

Now, with the Alice text, first we can iterate over each chapter and grab just the first line (that is, the chapter titles). These will become our **keys**.

```
chapter_titles = []

for chapter in alice_chapters[1:]:
    chapter_titles.append(chapter.split(sep="\n")[0])

print(chapter_titles)

## ['I. Down the Rabbit-Hole', 'II. The Pool of Tears', 'III. A Caucus-Race and a Long Tale', 'IV.
```

Next, we can iterate over each chapter and count the number of times “Alice” was mentioned. These will become our **values**.

```
chapter_Alice = []

for chapter in alice_chapters[1:]:
    chapter_Alice.append(chapter.count("Alice"))

print(chapter_Alice)

## [28, 24, 23, 31, 35, 43, 51, 39, 52, 30, 16, 23]
```

Finally we can combine the chapter titles (**keys**) and “Alice” counts (**values**) and convert them to a dictionary.

```
# combine titles and counts
mydict = dict(zip(chapter_titles, chapter_Alice))

print(mydict)

# help(zip)
```

```
## {'I. Down the Rabbit-Hole': 28, 'II. The Pool of Tears': 24, 'III. A Caucus-Race and a Long Tale': 16, 'IV. A Caucus-Race and a Long Tale': 23, 'V. Alice's Adventures Under Ground': 31, 'VI. The Pool of Tears': 35, 'VII. A Caucus-Race and a Long Tale': 39, 'VIII. A Caucus-Race and a Long Tale': 51, 'IX. A Caucus-Race and a Long Tale': 43, 'X. Alice's Adventures Under Ground': 28}
```

### 8.4.3 Exercise 2

#### Iterating & counting things

Now that we know how to iterate using for-loops, the possibilities really start to open up. For example, we can use these techniques to count the number of times each character appears in the story.

1. Make sure you have both the text and the list of characters.

Open and read both “Alice\_in\_wonderland.txt” and “Characters.txt” if you have not already done so.

```
##
```

2. Which chapter has the most words?

Split the text into chapters (i.e., split on “CHAPTER”) and use a for-loop to iterate over the chapters. For each chapter, split it into words and calculate the length.

```
##
```

3. How many times is each character mentioned in the text?

Iterate over the list of characters using a for-loop. For each character, call the count method with that character as the argument.

```
##
```

4. (BONUS, optional): Put the character counts computed above in a dictionary with character names as the keys and counts as the values.

```
##
```

[Click for Exercise 2 Solution](#)

1. Make sure you have both the text and the list of characters. Open and read both “Alice\_in\_wonderland.txt” and “Characters.txt” if you have not already done so.

```
characters_txt = open("Characters.txt").read()
alice_txt = open("Alice_in_wonderland.txt").read()
```

2. Which chapter has the most words? Split the text into chapters (i.e., split on “CHAPTER”) and use a for-loop to iterate over the chapters. For each chapter, split it into words and calculate the length.

```
words_per_chapter = []

for chapter in alice_chapters:
    words_per_chapter.append(len(chapter.split()))

print(words_per_chapter)
```

```
## [7, 2184, 2098, 1701, 2614, 2185, 2592, 2286, 2486, 2271, 2028, 1877, 2104]
```

3. How many times is each character mentioned in the text? Iterate over the list of characters using a for-loop. For each character, call the count method with that character as the argument.

```
num_per_character = []

for character in characters_txt.split(sep="\n"):
    num_per_character.append(alice_txt.count(character))

print(num_per_character)
```

```
## [395, 20, 30, 13, 7, 3, 3, 3, 0, 0, 27, 42, 4, 30, 55, 40, 3, 3, 0, 55, 53, 144403]
```

4. (BONUS, optional): Put the character counts computed above in a dictionary with character names as the keys and counts as the values.

```
characters = characters_txt.split(sep="\n")
dict(zip(characters, num_per_character))
```

```
## {'Alice': 395, 'White Rabbit': 20, 'Mouse': 30, 'Dodo': 13, 'Lory': 7, 'Eaglet': 3, 'Duck': 3}
```

## 8.5 Importing packages

**GOAL:** To learn how to expand Python's functionality by importing packages.

1. Import `numpy`
2. Calculate simple statistics

Now that we know how to iterate over lists and calculate numbers for each element, we may wish to do some simple math using these numbers. For example, we may want to calculate the mean and standard deviation of the distribution of the number of paragraphs in each chapter. Python has a handful of math functions built-in (e.g., `min()` and `max()`) but built-in math support is pretty limited.

When you find that something isn't available in Python itself, its time to look for a package that does it. Although it is somewhat overkill for simply calculating a mean we're going to use a popular package called `numpy` for this. The `numpy` package is included in the Anaconda Python distribution we are using, so we don't need to install it separately.

To use `numpy` or other packages, you must first import them.

```
# import <package-name>
```

We can import `numpy` as follows:

```
import numpy
```

To use functions from a package, we can prefix the function with the package name, separated by a period:

```
# <package-name>. <function_name>()
```

The `numpy` package is very popular and includes a lot of useful functions. For example, we can use it to calculate means and standard deviations:

```
print(numpy.mean(chapter_Alice))
```

```
## 32.916666666666664
```

```
print(numpy.std(chapter_Alice))
```

```
## 10.92747556493366
```

## 8.6 Wrap-up

### 8.6.1 Feedback

These workshops are a work in progress, please provide any feedback to: `help@iq.harvard.edu`

### 8.6.2 Resources

- IQSS
  - Workshops: <https://dss.iq.harvard.edu/workshop-materials>
  - Data Science Services: <https://dss.iq.harvard.edu/>
  - Research Computing Environment: <https://iqss.github.io/dss-rce/>
- HBS
  - Research Computing Services workshops: <https://training.rcs.hbs.org/workshops>
  - Other HBS RCS resources: <https://training.rcs.hbs.org/workshop-materials>
  - RCS consulting email: <mailto:research@hbs.edu>
- Graphics
  - matplotlib: <https://matplotlib.org/>
  - seaborn: <https://seaborn.pydata.org/>

- plotly: <https://plot.ly/python/>
- Quantitative Data Analysis
  - numpy: <http://www.numpy.org/>
  - scipy: <https://www.scipy.org/>
  - pandas: <https://pandas.pydata.org/>
  - scikit-learn: <http://scikit-learn.org/stable/>
  - statsmodels: <http://www.statsmodels.org/stable/>
- Text analysis
  - textblob: <https://textblob.readthedocs.io/en/dev/>
  - nltk: <http://www.nltk.org/>
  - Gensim: <https://radimrehurek.com/gensim/>
- Webscraping
  - scrapy: <https://scrapy.org/>
  - requests: <http://docs.python-requests.org/en/master/>
  - lxml: <https://lxml.de/>
  - BeautifulSoup: <https://www.crummy.com/software/BeautifulSoup/>
- Social Network Analysis
  - networkx: <https://networkx.github.io/>
  - graph-tool: <https://graph-tool.skewed.de/>



# Chapter 9

# Python Web-Scraping

## Topics

- Web basics
- Making web requests
- Inspecting web sites
- Retrieving JSON data
- Using Xpaths to retrieve `html` content
- Parsing `html` content
- Cleaning and storing text from `html`

## 9.1 Setup

### 9.1.1 Software and Materials

Follow the Python Installation instructions and ensure that you can successfully start JupyterLab.

### 9.1.2 Class Structure

Informal - Ask questions at any time. Really!

Collaboration is encouraged - please spend a minute introducing yourself to your neighbors!

### 9.1.3 Prerequisites

This is an intermediate / advanced Python course:

- Assumes knowledge of Python, including:

- lists
  - dictionaries
  - logical indexing
  - iteration with for-loops
- Assumes basic knowledge of web page structure
  - Relatively fast-paced

If you need an introduction to Python or a refresher, we recommend our Python Introduction.

#### 9.1.4 Goals

This workshop is organized into two main parts:

1. Retrieve information in JSON format
2. Parse HTML files

Note that this workshop will not teach you everything you need to know in order to retrieve data from any web service you might wish to scrape.

## 9.2 Web scraping background

### 9.2.1 What is web scraping?

Web scraping is the activity of automating retrieval of information from a web service designed for human interaction.

### 9.2.2 Is web scraping legal? Is it ethical?

It depends. If you have legal questions seek legal counsel. You can mitigate some ethical issues by building delays and restrictions into your web scraping program so as to avoid impacting the availability of the web service for other users or the cost of hosting the service for the service provider.

### 9.2.3 Web scraping approaches

No two websites are identical — websites are built for different purposes by different people and so have different underlying structures. Because they are heterogeneous, there is no single way to scrape a website. **The scraping approach therefore has to be tailored to each individual site.** Here are some commonly used approaches:

1. Use requests to extract information from structured JSON / XML files

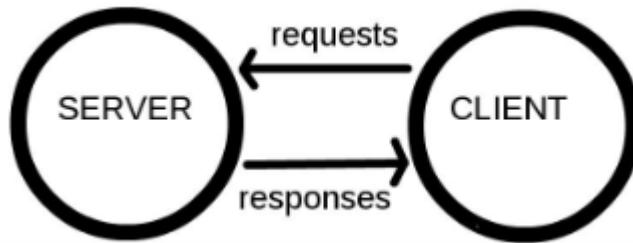
2. Use requests to extract information from HTML
3. Automate a browser to retrieve information from HTML

Bear in mind that even once you've decided upon the best approach for a particular site, it will be necessary to modify that approach to suit your particular use-case.

### 9.2.4 How does the web work?

#### 9.2.4.1 Components

Computers connected to the web are called **clients** and **servers**. A simplified diagram of how they interact might look like this:



- **Clients** are the typical web user's internet-connected devices (for example, your computer connected to your Wi-Fi) and web-accessing software available on those devices (usually a web browser like Firefox or Chrome).
- **Servers** are computers that store webpages, sites, or apps. When a client device wants to access a webpage, a copy of the webpage is downloaded from the server onto the client machine to be displayed in the user's web browser.
- **HTTP** is a language for clients and servers to speak to each other.

#### 9.2.4.2 So what happens?

When you type a web address into your browser:

1. The browser finds the address of the server that the website lives on.
2. The browser sends an **HTTP request message** to the server, asking it to send a copy of the website to the client.
3. If the server approves the client's request, the server sends the client a **200 OK** message, and then starts displaying the website in the browser.

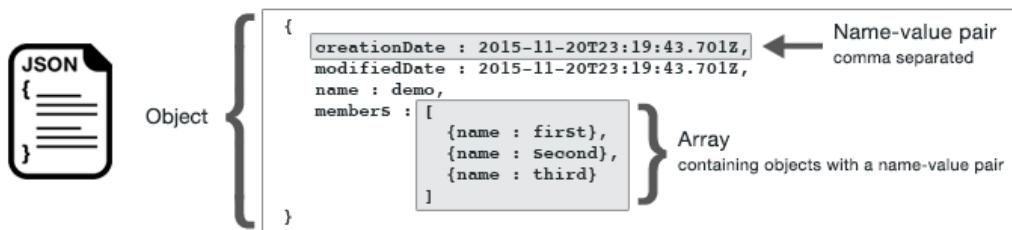
## 9.3 Retrieve data in JSON format if you can

**GOAL:** To retrieve information in JSON format and organize it into a spreadsheet.

1. Inspect the website to check if the content is stored in JSON format
2. Make a request to the website server to retrieve the JSON file
3. Convert from JSON format into a Python dictionary
4. Extract the data from the dictionary and store in a .csv file

We wish to extract information from <https://www.harvardartmuseums.org/collections>. Like most modern web pages, a lot goes on behind the scenes to produce the page we see in our browser. Our goal is to pull back the curtain to see what the website does when we interact with it. Once we see how the website works we can start retrieving data from it.

If we are lucky we'll find a resource that returns the data we're looking for in a structured format like JSON or XML.



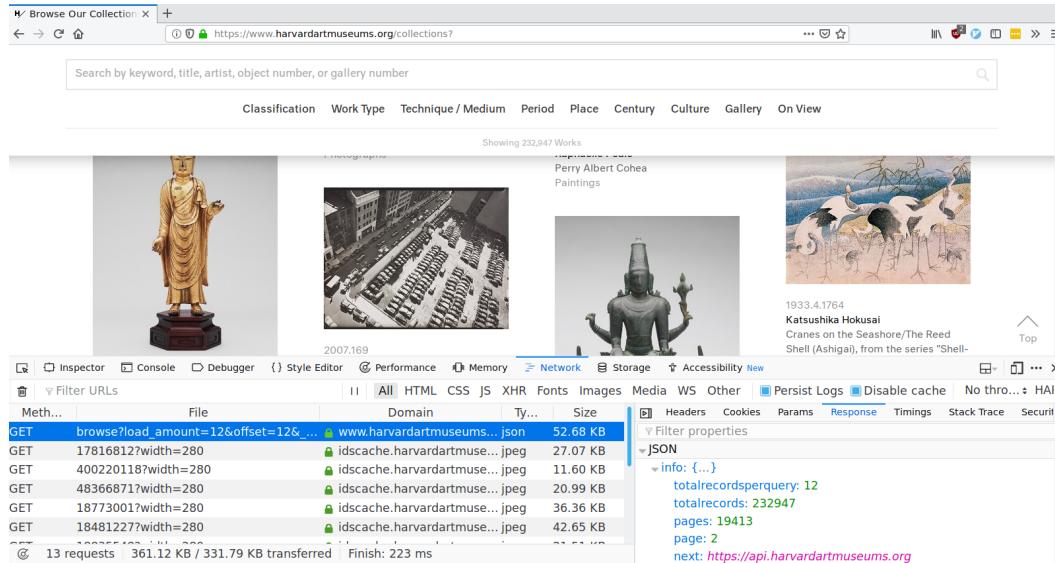
This is useful because it is very easy to convert data from JSON or XML into a spreadsheet type format — like a csv or Excel file.

### 9.3.1 Examine the website's structure

The basic strategy is pretty much the same for most scraping projects. We will use our web browser (Chrome or Firefox recommended) to examine the page you wish to retrieve data from, and copy/paste information from your web browser into your scraping program.

We start by opening the collections web page in a web browser and inspecting it.

If we scroll down to the bottom of the Collections page, we'll see a button that says "Load More". Let's see what happens when we click on that button. To do so, click on "Network" in the developer tools window, then click the "Load More Collections" button. You should see a list of requests that were made as a result of clicking that button, as shown below.



If we look at that second request, the one to a script named `browse`, we'll see that it returns all the information we need, in a convenient format called **JSON**. All we need to retrieve collection data is to make **GET** requests to <https://www.harvardartmuseums.org/browse> with the correct parameters.

### 9.3.2 Launch JupyterLab

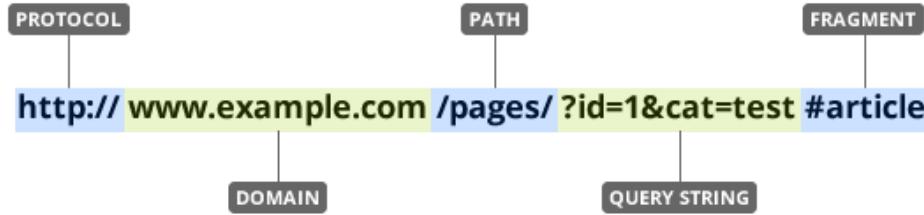
1. Start the **Anaconda Navigator** program
2. Click the **Launch** button under **Jupyter Lab**
3. A browser window will open with your computer's files listed on the left hand side of the page. Navigate to the folder called **PythonWebScrape** that you downloaded to your desktop and double-click on the folder
4. Within the **PythonWebScrape** folder, double-click on the file with the word "BLANK" in the name (**PythonWebScrape\_BLANK.ipynb**). A pop-up window will ask you to **Select Kernel** — you should select the Python 3 kernel. The Jupyter Notebook should now open on the right hand side of the page

A Jupyter Notebook contains one or more *cells* containing notes or code. To insert a new cell click the + button in the upper left. To execute a cell, select it and press **Control+Enter** or click the **Run** button at the top.

### 9.3.3 Making requests

To retrieve information from the website (i.e., make a request), we need to know the location of the information we want to collect. The Uniform Resource Locator (URL) — commonly known as a "web address", specifies the location of a resource (such as a web page) on the internet.

A URL is usually composed of 5 parts:



The 4th part, the “query string”, contains one or more **parameters**. The 5th part, the “fragment”, is an internal page reference and may not be present.

For example, the URL we want to retrieve data from has the following structure:

```
protocol           domain     path   parameters
https www.harvardartmuseums.org  browse  load_amount=10&offset=0
```

It is often convenient to create variables containing the domain(s) and path(s) you'll be working with, as this allows you to swap out paths and parameters as needed. Note that the path is separated from the domain with / and the parameters are separated from the path with ?. If there are multiple parameters they are separated from each other with a &.

For example, we can define the domain and path of the collections URL as follows:

```
museum_domain = 'https://www.harvardartmuseums.org'
collection_path = 'browse'

collection_url = (museum_domain
                  + "/"
                  + collection_path)

print(collection_url)

## 'https://www.harvardartmuseums.org/browse'
```

Note that we omit the parameters here because it is usually easier to pass them as a `dict` when using the `requests` library in Python. This will become clearer shortly.

Now that we've constructed the URL we wish to interact with, we're ready to make our first request in Python.

```
import requests

collections1 = requests.get(
    collection_url,
    params = {'load_amount': 10,
              'offset': 0}
)
```

Note that the parameters `load_amount` and `offset` are essentially another way of setting page numbers — they refer to the amount of information retrieved at one time and the starting position, respectively.

### 9.3.4 Parsing JSON data

We already know from inspecting network traffic in our web browser that this URL returns JSON, but we can use Python to verify this assumption.

```
collections1.headers['Content-Type']

## 'application/json'
```

Since JSON is a structured data format, parsing it into Python data structures is easy. In fact, there's a method for that!

```
collections1 = collections1.json()
# print(collections1)
```

That's it. Really, we are done here. Everyone go home!

OK not really, there is still more we can learn. But you have to admit that was pretty easy. If you can identify a service that returns the data you want in structured form, web scraping becomes a pretty trivial enterprise. We'll discuss several other scenarios and topics, but for some web scraping tasks this is really all you need to know.

### 9.3.5 Organizing & saving the data

The records we retrieved from <https://www.harvardartmuseums.org/browse> are arranged as a list of dictionaries. We can easily select the fields of arrange these data into a pandas `DataFrame` to facilitate subsequent analysis.

```
import pandas as pd

records1 = pd.DataFrame.from_records(collections1['records'])

print(records1)

##      accessionyear  technique  ...  classification  seeAlso
## 0            2004   Repoussé  ...        Vessels  [{"id": "https://iiif.harv...
## 1            1963       None  ...    Sculpture  [{"id": "https://iiif.harv...
## 2            2000   Etching  ...        Prints  [{"id": "https://iiif.harv...
## 3            1991   Celadon  ...        Vessels  [{"id": "https://iiif.harv...
## 4            2007       None  ...    Drawings  [{"id": "https://iiif.harv...
```

```

## 5      1996     None ...      Boxes [{"id": "https://iiif.harv...
## 6      1991   Celadon ...    Vessels [{"id": "https://iiif.harv...
## 7      1973     None ...  Paintings [{"id": "https://iiif.harv...
## 8      2009  Engraving ...    Prints [{"id": "https://iiif.harv...
## 9      1928    Carved ... Sculpture [{"id": "https://iiif.harv...
##
## [10 rows x 61 columns]

```

and write the data to a file.

```
records1.to_csv("records1.csv")
```

### 9.3.6 Iterating to retrieve all the data

Of course we don't want just the first page of collections. How can we retrieve all of them?

Now that we know the web service works, and how to make requests in Python, we can iterate in the usual way.

```

records = []
for offset in range(0, 50, 10):
    param_values = {'load_amount': 10, 'offset': offset}
    current_request = requests.get(collection_url, params = param_values)
    records.extend(current_request.json()['records'])

## convert list of dicts to a `DataFrame`
records_final = pd.DataFrame.from_records(records)

# write the data to a file.
records_final.to_csv("records_final.csv")

print(records_final)

##      accessionyear      technique      seeAlso
## 0      2004.0      Repoussé  [{"id": "https://iiif.harv...
## 1      1963.0        None  [{"id": "https://iiif.harv...
## 2      2000.0      Etching  [{"id": "https://iiif.harv...
## 3      1991.0     Celadon  [{"id": "https://iiif.harv...
## 4      2007.0        None  [{"id": "https://iiif.harv...
## 5      1996.0        None  [{"id": "https://iiif.harv...
## 6      1991.0     Celadon  [{"id": "https://iiif.harv...
## 7      1973.0        None  [{"id": "https://iiif.harv...
## 8      2009.0      Engraving  [{"id": "https://iiif.harv...
## 9      1928.0      Carved  [{"id": "https://iiif.harv...
## 10     1997.0  Gelatin silver print  ...

```

```

## 11      1951.0          Struck   ...  [{"id": "https://iiif.harv...": {"coins": {"dat...
## 12      NaN             Struck   ...  [{"id": "https://iiif.harv...": {"coins": {"dat...
## 13      1908.0          Carved    ...  [{"id": "https://iiif.harv...": {"coins": {"dat...
## 14      NaN             Lithograph ...  [{"id": "https://iiif.harv...": {"coins": {"dat...
## 15      1995.0          None     ...  [{"id": "https://iiif.harv...": {"coins": {"dat...
## 16      2007.0          Salted paper print ...  [{"id": "https://iiif.harv...": {"coins": {"dat...
## 17      2000.0          Engraving  ...  [{"id": "https://iiif.harv...": {"coins": {"dat...
## 18      2000.0          Monotype   ...  [{"id": "https://iiif.harv...": {"coins": {"dat...
## 19      1985.0          None     ...  [{"id": "https://iiif.harv...": {"coins": {"dat...
## 20      1943.0          Cast, lost-wax process ...  [{"id": "https://iiif.harv...": {"technical": ...
## 21      1951.0          None     ...  [{"id": "https://iiif.harv...": {"coins": {"dat...
## 22      1933.0          None     ...  [{"id": "https://iiif.harv...": {"coins": {"dat...
## 23      1991.0          None     ...  [{"id": "https://iiif.harv...": {"coins": {"dat...
## 24      2003.0          None     ...  [{"id": "https://iiif.harv...": {"coins": {"dat...
## 25      2007.0          Cast and hammered ...  [{"id": "https://iiif.harv...": {"technical": ...
## 26      1993.0          Photolithograph ...  [{"id": "https://iiif.harv...": {"coins": {"dat...
## 27      1943.0          None     ...  [{"id": "https://iiif.harv...": {"coins": {"dat...
## 28      1924.0          Cast, lost-wax process ...  [{"id": "https://iiif.harv...": {"technical": ...
## 29      2009.0          Photogravure  ...  [{"id": "https://iiif.harv...": {"coins": {"dat...
## 30      2008.0          Gelatin silver print ...  [{"id": "https://iiif.harv...": {"coins": {"dat...
## 31      2010.0          20 x 24 Polaroid print ...  [{"id": "https://iiif.harv...": {"coins": {"dat...
## 32      2009.0          None     ...  [{"id": "https://iiif.harv...": {"coins": {"dat...
## 33      1986.0          Cast, lost-wax process ...  [{"id": "https://iiif.harv...": {"technical": ...
## 34      1942.0          Jun      ...  [{"id": "https://iiif.harv...": {"coins": {"dat...
## 35      1943.0          None     ...  [{"id": "https://iiif.harv...": {"coins": {"dat...
## 36      1997.0          Gelatin silver print ...  [{"id": "https://iiif.harv...": {"coins": {"dat...
## 37      1997.0          Gelatin silver print ...  [{"id": "https://iiif.harv...": {"coins": {"dat...
## 38      2008.0          Dye transfer print ...  [{"id": "https://iiif.harv...": {"coins": {"dat...
## 39      2002.0          None     ...  [{"id": "https://iiif.harv...": {"coins": {"dat...
## 40      1994.0          Black-figure ...  [{"id": "https://iiif.harv...": {"coins": {"dat...
## 41      1927.0          Red-figure ...  [{"id": "https://iiif.harv...": {"coins": {"dat...
## 42      1945.0          None     ...  [{"id": "https://iiif.harv...": {"coins": {"dat...
## 43      2009.0          Photogravure ...  [{"id": "https://iiif.harv...": {"coins": {"dat...
## 44      1995.0          None     ...  [{"id": "https://iiif.harv...": {"coins": {"dat...
## 45      1942.0          Etching   ...  [{"id": "https://iiif.harv...": {"coins": {"dat...
## 46      2006.0          None     ...  [{"id": "https://iiif.harv...": {"coins": {"dat...
## 47      NaN             Etching and mezzotint ...  [{"id": "https://iiif.harv...": {"coins": {"dat...
## 48      1998.0          Cast, lost-wax process ...  [{"id": "https://iiif.harv...": {"technical": ...
## 49      1991.0          None     ...  [{"id": "https://iiif.harv...": {"coins": {"dat...
##
## [50 rows x 62 columns]

```

### 9.3.7 Exercise 0

#### Retrieve exhibits data

In this exercise you will retrieve information about the art exhibitions at Harvard Art Museums from <https://www.harvardartmuseums.org/exhibitions>

1. Using a web browser (Firefox or Chrome recommended) inspect the page at <https://www.harvardartmuseums.org/exhibitions>. Examine the network traffic as you interact with the page. Try to find where the data displayed on that page comes from.

```
##
```

2. Make a `get` request in Python to retrieve the data from the URL identified in step1.

```
##
```

3. Write a *loop* or *list comprehension* in Python to retrieve data for the first 5 pages of exhibitions data.

```
##
```

4. Bonus (optional): Convert the data you retrieved into a pandas `DataFrame` and save it to a `.csv` file.

```
##
```

Click for Exercise 0 Solution

Question #1:

```
museum_domain = "https://www.harvardartmuseums.org"
exhibit_path = "search/load_next"
exhibit_url = museum_domain + "/" + exhibit_path
print(exhibit_url)
```

```
## 'https://www.harvardartmuseums.org/search/load_next'
```

Question #2:

```
import requests
from pprint import pprint as print
exhibit1 = requests.get(exhibit_url, params = {'type': 'past-exhibition', 'page': 1})
print(exhibit1.headers["Content-Type"])

## 'application/json'

exhibit1 = exhibit1.json()
# print(exhibit1)
```

Questions #3+4 (loop solution):

```

firstFivePages = []
for page in range(1, 6):
    records_per_page = requests.get(exhibit_url, params = {'type': 'past-exhibition', 'page': page})
    firstFivePages.extend(records_per_page)
firstFivePages_records = pd.DataFrame.from_records(firstFivePages)
print(firstFivePages_records)

##                                     primaryimageurl          textiledescription ...      public...
## 0  https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur...  In 1638, a work of silver ...  ...  ...
## 1  https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... _Animal-Shaped Vessels fro...  ...  [{"title": "Animal-Shap...
## 2  https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... _Mutiny: Works by Géricaul...  ...  ...
## 3  https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... For most of history, human...  ...  ...
## 4  https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... _Nam June Paik: Screen Pla...  ...  ...
## 5  https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... This newly commissioned in...  ...  ...
## 6  https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... This exhibition takes an u...  ...  [{"title": "Analog Cul...
## 7  https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... The first exhibition of it...  ...  [{"title": "Inventur-...
Art i...                      NaN
## 8  https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... The Harvard Art Museums pr...  ...  ...
## 9  https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... The history of art is usua...  ...  ...
## 10 https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... The Harvard Art Museums pr...  ...  ...
## 11 https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... Rome, known as the "common...  ...  ...
## 12 https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... On Wednesday, July 21, 177...  ...  ...
## 13 https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... After declaring its de fac...  ...  ...
## 14 https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... Complementing undergraduat...  ...  ...
## 15 https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... Drawn from the Harvard Art...  ...  ...
## 16 https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... The 19th century was an er...  ...  [{"title": "A Collector...
## 17 https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... In 1978, sculptor Christop...  ...  ...
## 18 https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... The Harvard Art Museums ho...  ...  ...
## 19 https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... This focused exhibition fe...  ...  ...
## 20 https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... Between 1766 and 1820, Har...  ...  [{"title": "The Philoso...
## 21 https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... How do we visualize a coll...  ...  ...
## 22 https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... Drawing became modern in t...  ...  [{"title": "Drawing: Th...
## 23 https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... _Doris Salcedo: The Materi...  ...  [{"title": "Doris Salce...
## 24 https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... Throughout the 2016-17 aca...  ...  ...
## 25 https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... None  ...
## 26 https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... This University Teaching G...  ...  ...
## 27 https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... None  ...
## 28 https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... Until recently, many of th...  ...  ...
## 29 https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... None  ...
## 30 https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... None  ...
## 31 https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... The Harvard Art Museums ho...  ...  [{"title": "Drawings fi...
## 32 https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... _Everywhen: The Eternal Pr...  ...  [{"title": "Everywhen: ...
## 33 https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... None  ...
## 34 https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... None  ...
## 35 https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... None  ...
## 36 https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... None  ...
## 37 https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... Berlin-based artist Shahry...  ...

```

```

## 38 https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... American artist Corita Ken... ... [{"title": "Corita Kent"}]
## 39 https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... None ...
## 40 https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... None ...
## 41 https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... Jesse Aron Green's celebra... ...
## 42 https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... None ...
## 43 https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... This new presentation of M... ...
## 44 https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... Rebecca Horn (German, b. 1... ...
## 45 https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... None ...
## 46 https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... None ...
## 47 https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... None ...
## 48 https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... None ...
## 49 https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... None ...
##
## [50 rows x 19 columns]

```

Questions #3+4 (list comprehension solution):

```

first5Pages = [requests.get(exhibit_url, params = {'type': 'past-exhibition', 'page': page}).json()
from itertools import chain
first5Pages = list(chain.from_iterable(first5Pages))
import pandas as pd
first5Pages_records = pd.DataFrame.from_records(first5Pages)
print(first5Pages_records)

```

```

##                  primaryimageurl      textiledescription ... public
## 0  https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... In 1638, a work of silver ... ... [{"title": "Animal-Shap..."]
## 1  https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... _Animal-Shaped Vessels fro... ... [{"title": "Animal-Shap..."]
## 2  https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... _Mutiny: Works by Géricaul... ... [{"title": "Mutiny: Works by Géricaul..."]
## 3  https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... For most of history, human... ... [{"title": "For most of history, human..."]
## 4  https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... _Nam June Paik: Screen Pla... ... [{"title": "Nam June Paik: Screen Pla..."]
## 5  https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... This newly commissioned in... ... [{"title": "This newly commissioned in..."]
## 6  https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... This exhibition takes an u... ... [{"title": "This exhibition takes an u..."]
## 7  https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... The first exhibition of it... ... [{"title": "The first exhibition of it..."]
Art i...
NaN
## 8  https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... The Harvard Art Museums pr... ... [{"title": "The Harvard Art Museums pr..."]
## 9  https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... The history of art is usua... ... [{"title": "The history of art is usua..."]
## 10 https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... The Harvard Art Museums pr... ... [{"title": "The Harvard Art Museums pr..."]
## 11 https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... Rome, known as the "common... ... [{"title": "Rome, known as the \"common..."]
## 12 https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... On Wednesday, July 21, 177... ... [{"title": "On Wednesday, July 21, 177..."]
## 13 https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... After declaring its de fac... ... [{"title": "After declaring its de fac..."]
## 14 https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... Complementing undergraduat... ... [{"title": "Complementing undergraduat..."]
## 15 https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... Drawn from the Harvard Art... ... [{"title": "Drawn from the Harvard Art..."]
## 16 https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... The 19th century was an er... ... [{"title": "The 19th century was an er..."]
## 17 https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... In 1978, sculptor Christop... ... [{"title": "In 1978, sculptor Christop..."]
## 18 https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... The Harvard Art Museums ho... ... [{"title": "The Harvard Art Museums ho..."]
## 19 https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... This focused exhibition fe... ... [{"title": "This focused exhibition fe..."]
## 20 https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... Between 1766 and 1820, Har... ... [{"title": "Between 1766 and 1820, Har..."}]

```

```

## 21 https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... How do we visualize a coll... ...
## 22 https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... Drawing became modern in t... ... [{"title": "Drawing: Th...
## 23 https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... _Doris Salcedo: The Materi... ... [{"title": "Doris Salce...
## 24 https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... Throughout the 2016-17 aca... ...
## 25 https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... None ...
## 26 https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... This University Teaching G... ...
## 27 https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... None ...
## 28 https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... Until recently, many of th... ...
## 29 https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... None ...
## 30 https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... None ...
## 31 https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... The Harvard Art Museums ho... ...
## 32 https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... _Everywhen: The Eternal Pr... ...
## 33 https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... None ...
## 34 https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... None ...
## 35 https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... None ...
## 36 https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... None ...
## 37 https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... Berlin-based artist Shahry...
## 38 https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... American artist Corita Ken... ...
## 39 https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... None ...
## 40 https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... None ...
## 41 https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... Jesse Aron Green's celebra...
## 42 https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... None ...
## 43 https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... This new presentation of M...
## 44 https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... Rebecca Horn (German, b. 1...
## 45 https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... None ...
## 46 https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... None ...
## 47 https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... None ...
## 48 https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... None ...
## 49 https://nrs.harvard.edu/ur... None ...
##
## [50 rows x 19 columns]

```

## 9.4 Parsing HTML if you have to

**GOAL:** To retrieve information in HTML format and organize it into a spreadsheet.

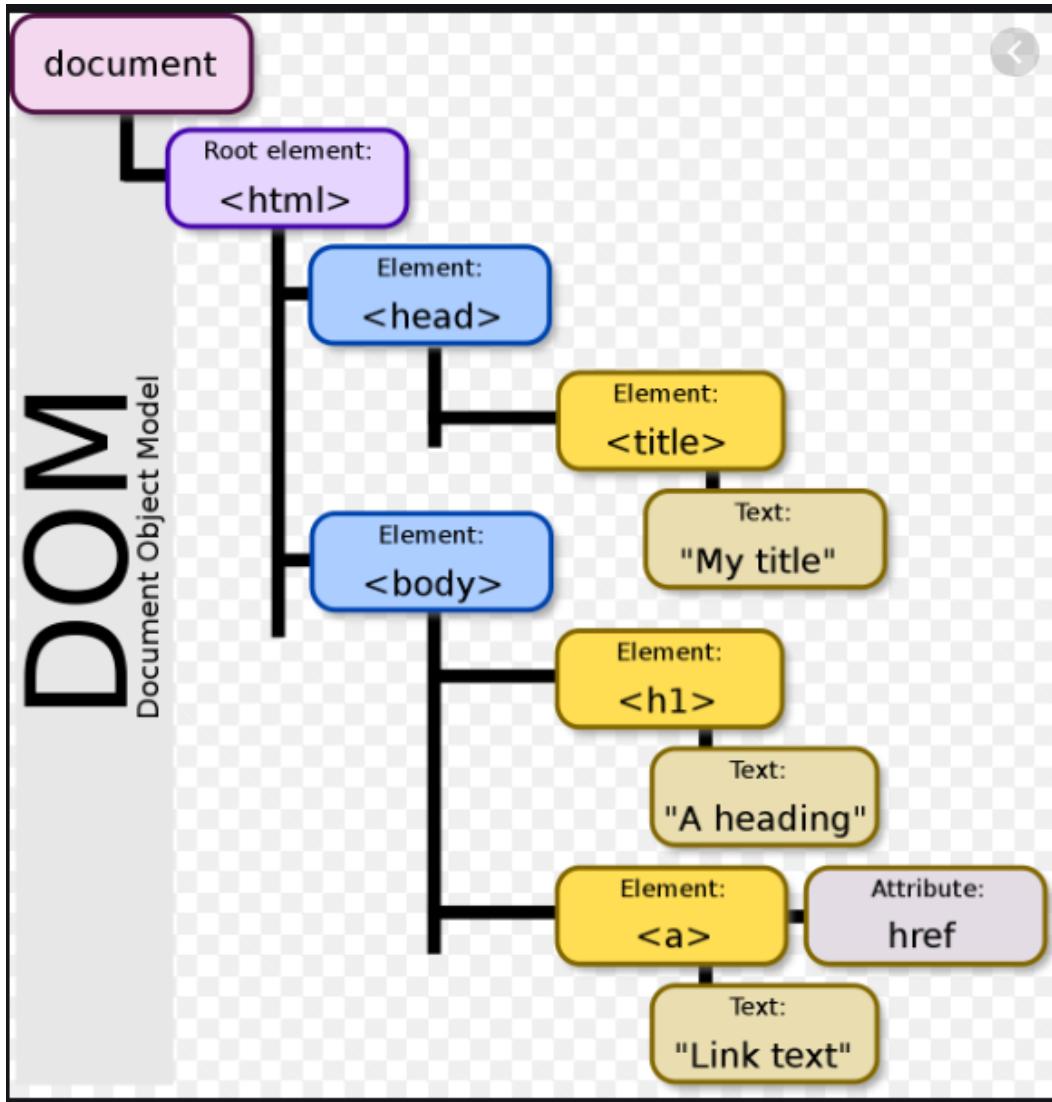
1. Make a request to the website server to retrieve the HTML
2. Inspect the HTML to determine the XPATHs that point to the data we want
3. Extract the information from the location the XPATHs point to and store in a dictionary
4. Convert from a dictionary to a .csv file

As we've seen, you can often inspect network traffic or other sources to locate the source of the data you are interested in and the API used to retrieve it. You should always start by looking for these shortcuts and using them where possible. If you are really lucky, you'll

find a shortcut that returns the data as JSON or XML. If you are not quite so lucky, you will have to parse HTML to retrieve the information you need.

#### 9.4.1 Document Object Model (DOM)

To parse HTML, we need to have a nice tree structure that contains the whole HTML file through which we can locate the information. This tree-like structure is the **Document Object Model (DOM)**. DOM is a cross-platform and language-independent interface that treats an XML or HTML document as a tree structure wherein each node is an object representing a part of the document. The DOM represents a document with a logical tree. *Each branch of the tree ends in a node, and each node contains objects.* DOM methods allow programmatic access to the tree; with them one can change the structure, style or content of a document. The following is an example of DOM hierarchy in an HTML document:



#### 9.4.2 Retrieving HTML

When I inspect the network traffic while interacting with <https://www.harvardartmuseums.org/calendar> I don't see any requests that return JSON data. The best we can do appears to be to return HTML.

To retrieve data on the events listed in the calendar, the first step is the same as before: we make a `get` request.

```
calendar_path = 'calendar'

calendar_url = (museum_domain # recall that we defined museum_domain earlier
```

```

+ "/"
+ calendar_path)

print(calendar_url)

## 'https://www.harvardartmuseums.org/calendar'

events = requests.get(calendar_url)

```

As before, we can check the headers to see what type of content we received in response to our request.

```

events.headers['Content-Type']

## 'text/html; charset=UTF-8'

```

### 9.4.3 Parsing HTML using the lxml library

Like JSON, HTML is structured; unlike JSON, it is designed to be rendered into a human-readable page rather than simply to store and exchange data in a computer-readable format. Consequently, parsing HTML and extracting information from it is somewhat more difficult than parsing JSON.

While JSON parsing is built into the Python `requests` library, parsing HTML requires a separate library. I recommend using the HTML parser from the `lxml` library; others prefer an alternative called `beautifulsoup4`.

```

from lxml import html

# convert a html text representation (`events.text`) into
# a tree-structure (DOM) html representation (`events_html`)
events_html = html.fromstring(events.text)

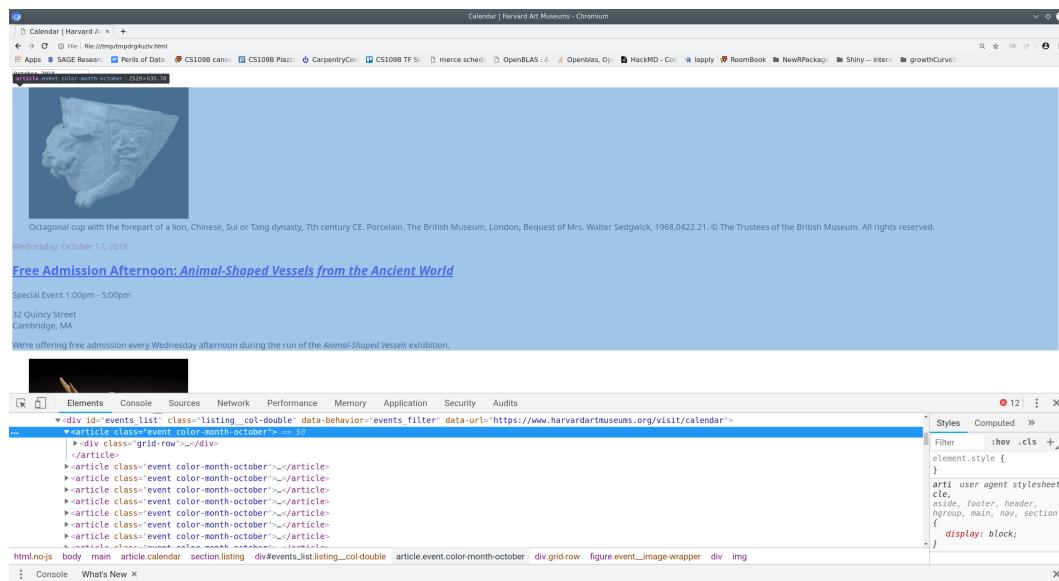
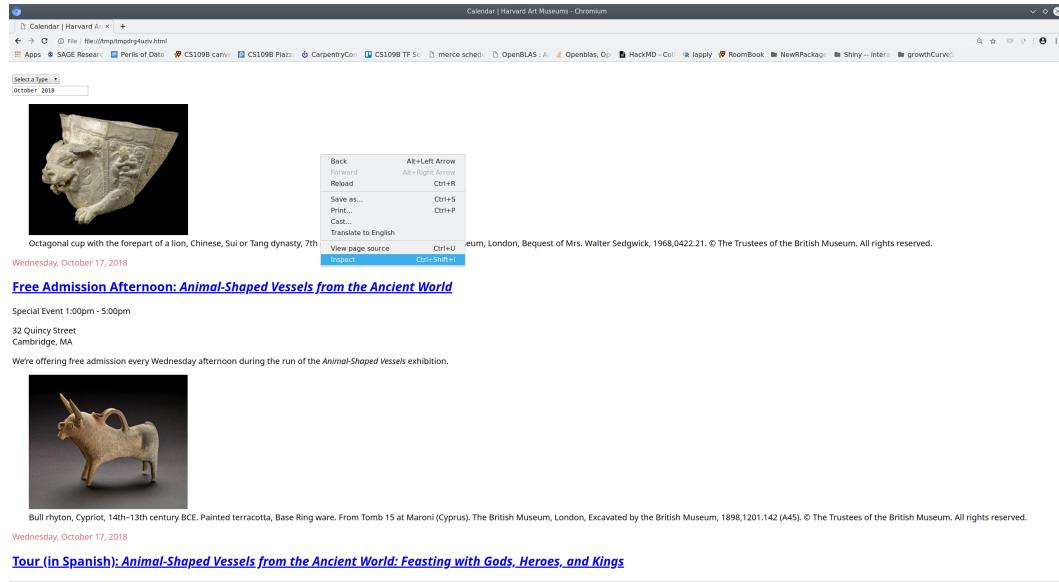
```

### 9.4.4 Using XPath to extract content from HTML

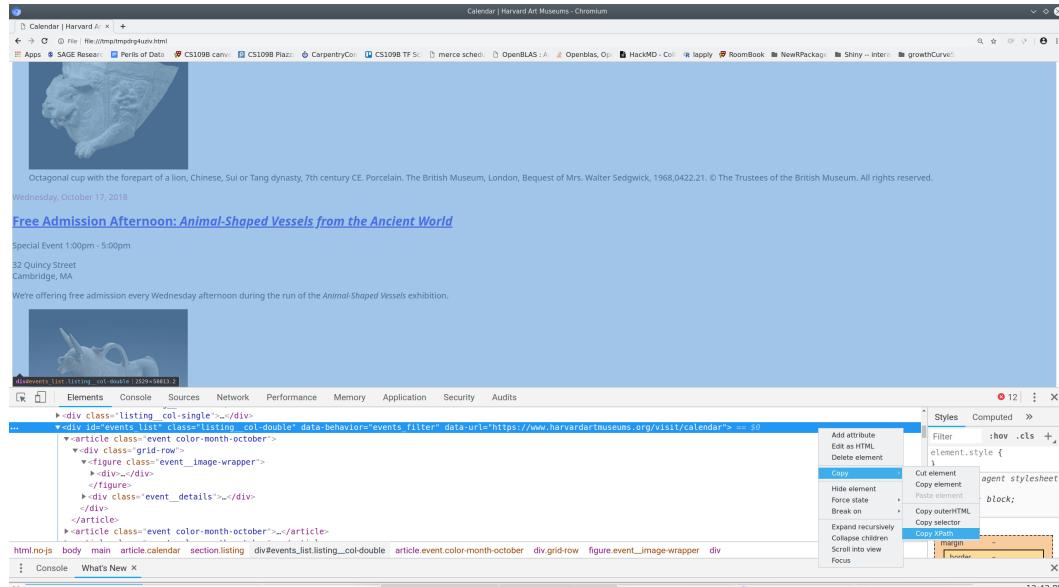
XPath is a tool for identifying particular elements within a HTML document. The developer tools built into modern web browsers make it easy to generate XPaths that can be used to identify the elements of a web page that we wish to extract.

We can open the html document we retrieved and inspect it using our web browser.

```
html.open_in_browser(events_html, encoding = 'UTF-8')
```



Once we identify the element containing the information of interest we can use our web browser to copy the XPath that uniquely identifies that element.



Next we can use Python to extract the element of interest:

```
events_list_html = events_html.xpath('//*[@id="events_list"]/article')
```

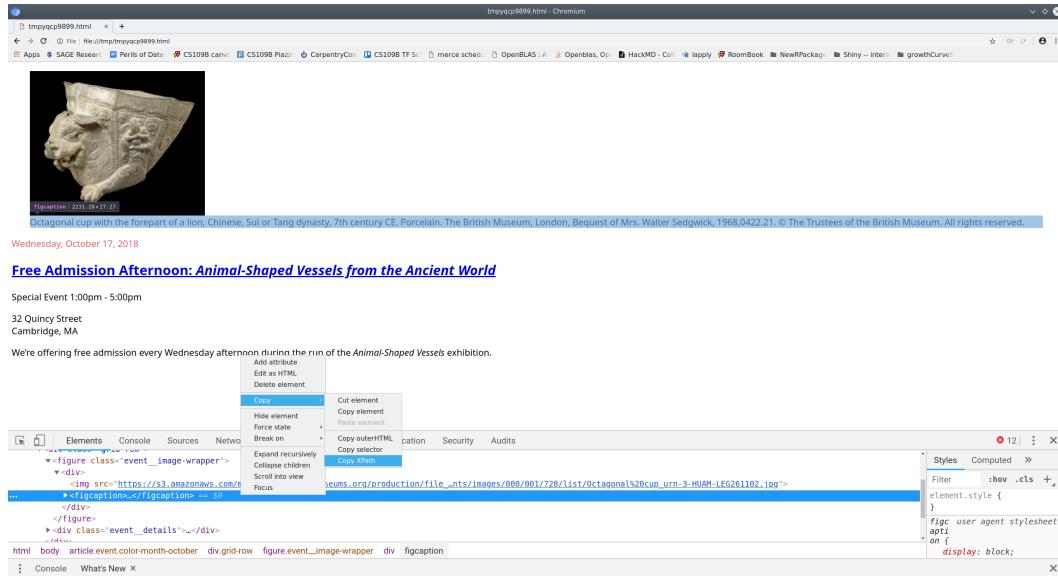
Let's just extract the first element in our events list.

```
first_event_html = events_list_html[0]
```

Once again, we can use a web browser to inspect the HTML we're currently working with - from the first event - and to figure out what we want to extract from it.

```
html.open_in_browser(first_event_html, encoding = 'UTF-8')
```

As before we can use our browser to find the xpath of the elements we want.



(Note that the `html.open_in_browser` function adds enclosing `html` and `body` tags in order to create a complete web page for viewing. This requires that we adjust the `xpath` accordingly.)

By repeating this process for each element we want, we can build a list of the xpaths to those elements.

```
elements_weWant = {'figcaption': 'div/figure/div/figcaption',
                   'date': 'div/div/header/time',
                   'title': 'div/div/header/h2/a',
                   'time': 'div/div/div/p[1]/time',
                   'location1': 'div/div/div/p[2]/span/span[1]',
                   'location2': 'div/div/div/p[2]/span/span[2]'}
}
```

Finally, we can iterate over the elements we want and extract them.

```
firstEventValues = {}
for key in elementsWeWant.keys():
    element = firstEventHtml.xpath(elementsWeWant[key])[0]
    firstEventValues[key] = element.text.strip()

print(firstEventValues)

## {'date': 'Thursday, April 9, 2020',
##  'figcaption': '1958 D. A. Flentrop organ, Adolphus Busch Hall, Harvard '
##               'University.',
##  'location1': '29 Kirkland Street',
##  'location2': 'Cambridge',
```

```
##  'time': '12:15pm - 12:45pm',
##  'title': 'Midday Organ Recital: Members of the Harvard Organ Society '
##            '[CANCELED'] }
```

#### 9.4.5 Iterating to retrieve content from a list of HTML elements

So far we've retrieved information only for the first event. To retrieve data for all the events listed on the page we need to iterate over the events. If we are very lucky, each event will have exactly the same information structured in exactly the same way and we can simply extend the code we wrote above to iterate over the events list.

Unfortunately, not all these elements are available for every event, so we need to take care to handle the case where one or more of these elements is not available. We can do that by **defining a function** that tries to retrieve a value and returns an empty string if it fails.

If you're not familiar with Python functions, here's the basic syntax:

```
# anatomy of a function

def name_of_function(arg1, arg2, ...argn): # define the function name and arguments
    <body of function> # specify calculations
    return <result>      # output result of calculations
```

Here's an example of a simple function:

```
def square_fun(x):
    y = x**2 # exponentiation
    return y

square_fun(4)
```

```
## 16
```

Here's a function to perform our actual task:

```
def get_event_info(event, path):
    try:
        info = event.xpath(path)[0].text.strip()
    except:
        info = ''
    return info
```

Armed with this function we can iterate over the list of events and extract the available information for each one.

```

all_event_values = {}
for key in elements_we_want.keys():
    key_values = []
    for event in events_list_html:
        key_values.append(get_event_info(event, elements_we_want[key]))
    all_event_values[key] = key_values

```

For convenience we can arrange these values in a pandas `DataFrame` and save them as `.csv` files, just as we did with our exhibitions data earlier.

```

all_event_values = pd.DataFrame.from_dict(all_event_values)

all_event_values.to_csv("all_event_values.csv")

print(all_event_values)

```

#### 9.4.6 Exercise 1

##### parsing HTML

In this exercise you will retrieve information about the physical layout of the Harvard Art Museums. The web page at <https://www.harvardartmuseums.org/visit/floor-plan> contains this information in HTML from.

1. Using a web browser (Firefox or Chrome recommended) inspect the page at <https://www.harvardartmuseums.org/visit/floor-plan>. Copy the XPath to the element containing the list of level information. (HINT: the element of interest is a `ul`, i.e., `unordered list`.)
2. Make a `get` request in Python to retrieve the web page at <https://www.harvardartmuseums.org/visit/floor-plan>. Extract the content from your request object and parse it using `html.fromstring` from the `lxml` library.

```
##
```

3. Use your web browser to find the XPaths to the facilities housed on level one. Use Python to extract the text from those Xpaths.

```
##
```

4. Bonus (optional): Write a *for loop* or *list comprehension* in Python to retrieve data for all the levels.

```
##
```

Click for Exercise 1 Solution

Question #2:

```
from lxml import html
floor_plan = requests.get('https://www.harvardartmuseums.org/visit/floor-plan')
floor_plan_html = html.fromstring(floor_plan.text)
```

Question #3:

```
level_one = floor_plan_html.xpath('/html/body/main/section/ul/li[5]/div[2]/ul')[0]
print(type(level_one))

## <class 'lxml.html.HtmlElement'>

print(len(level_one))

## 6

level_one_facilities = floor_plan_html.xpath('/html/body/main/section/ul/li[5]/div[2]/ul/li')
print(len(level_one_facilities))

## 6

print([facility.text_content() for facility in level_one_facilities])
## ['Admissions', 'Collection Galleries', 'Courtyard', 'Shop', 'Café', 'Coatroom']
```

Question #4:

```
all_levels = floor_plan_html.xpath('/html/body/main/section/ul/li')
print(len(all_levels))
```

```
## 6
```

```
all_levels_facilities = []
for level in all_levels:
    level_facilities = []
    level_facilities_collection = level.xpath('div[2]/ul/li')
    for level_facility in level_facilities_collection:
        level_facilities.append(level_facility.text_content())
    all_levels_facilities.append(level_facilities)
print(all_levels_facilities)
```

```
## [['Conservation Center / Lightbox Gallery'],
##  ['Art Study Center'],
##  ['Collection Galleries'],
##  ['Special Exhibitions Gallery'],
##  ['University Galleries'],
##  ['Collections Galleries'],
##  ['Admissions'],
##  ['Collection Galleries'],
##  ['Courtyard'],
##  ['Shop'],
##  ['Café'],
##  ['Coatroom'],
##  ['Lower Lobby'],
##  ['Lecture Halls'],
##  ['Seminar Room'],
##  ['Materials Lab'],
##  ['Coatroom'],
##  ['Offices']]
```

## 9.5 Scrapy: for large / complex projects

Scraping websites using the `requests` library to make GET and POST requests, and the `lxml` library to process HTML is a good way to learn basic web scraping techniques. It is a good choice for small to medium size projects. For very large or complicated scraping tasks the `scrapy` library offers a number of conveniences, including asynchronous retrieval, session management, convenient methods for extracting and storing values, and more. More information about `scrapy` can be found at <https://doc.scrapy.org>.

## 9.6 Browser drivers: a last resort

It is sometimes necessary (or sometimes just easier) to use a web browser as an intermediary rather than communicate directly with a web service. This method of using a “browser driver” has the advantage of being able to use the javascript engine and session management features of a web browser; the main disadvantage is that it is slower and tends to be more fragile than using `requests` or `scrapy` to make requests directly from Python. For small scraping projects involving complicated sites with CAPTHAs or lots of complicated javascript using a browser driver can be a good option. More information is available at [https://www.seleniumhq.org/docs/03\\_webdriver.jsp](https://www.seleniumhq.org/docs/03_webdriver.jsp).

## 9.7 Wrap-up

### 9.7.1 Feedback

These workshops are a work in progress, please provide any feedback to: [help@iq.harvard.edu](mailto:help@iq.harvard.edu)

### 9.7.2 Resources

- IQSS
  - Workshops: <https://dss.iq.harvard.edu/workshop-materials>
  - Data Science Services: <https://dss.iq.harvard.edu/>
  - Research Computing Environment: <https://iqss.github.io/dss-rce/>
- HBS
  - Research Computing Services workshops: <https://training.rcs.hbs.org/workshops>
  - Other HBS RCS resources: <https://training.rcs.hbs.org/workshop-materials>
  - RCS consulting email: <mailto:research@hbs.edu>



## **Part IV**

### **Stata**



# Chapter 10

## Stata Introduction

### Topics

- Stata interface and Do-files
- Finding help
- Reading and writing data
- Basic summary statistics
- Basic graphs
- Basic data management

### 10.1 Setup

#### 10.1.1 Software & Materials

Laptop users: you will need a copy of Stata installed on your machine. Harvard FAS affiliates can install a licensed version from <http://downloads.fas.harvard.edu/download>

- Download class materials at <https://github.com/IQSS/dss-workshops/raw/master/Stata/StataIntro.zip>
- Extract materials from the zipped directory `StataIntro.zip` (Right-click => Extract All on Windows, double-click on Mac) and move them to your desktop!

#### 10.1.2 Organization

- Please feel free to ask questions at any point if they are relevant to the current topic (or if you are lost!)
- Collaboration is encouraged - please introduce yourself to your neighbors!
- If you are using a laptop, you will need to adjust file paths accordingly
- Make comments in your Do-file - save on flash drive or email to yourself

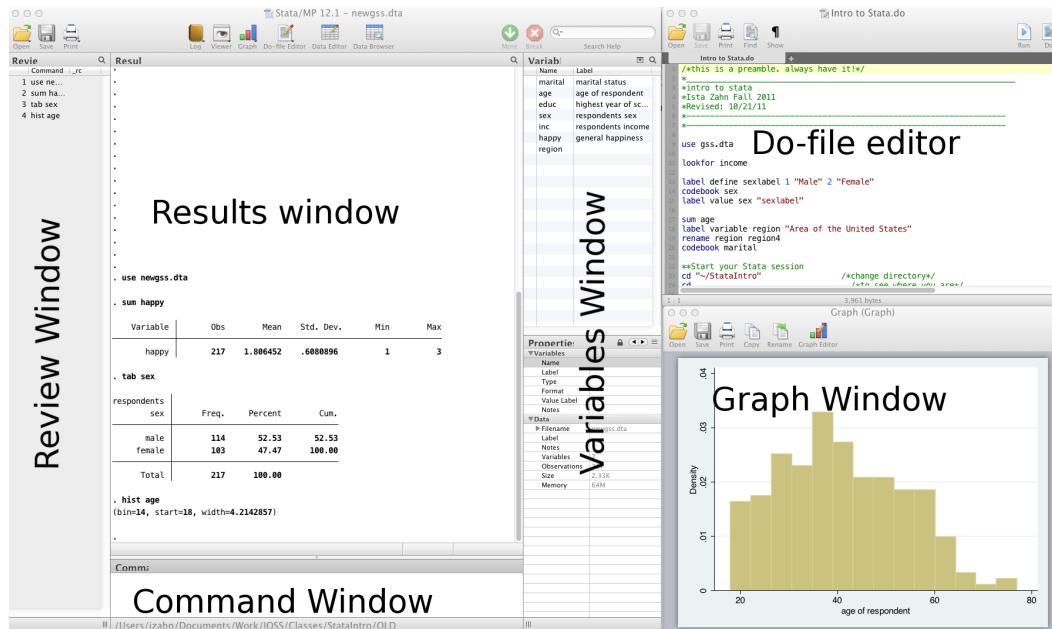
### 10.1.3 Goals

- This is an **introduction** to Stata
- Assumes no/very little knowledge of Stata
- Not appropriate for people already familiar with Stata
- Learning Objectives:
  - Familiarize yourself with the Stata interface
  - Get data in and out of Stata
  - Compute statistics and construct graphical displays
  - Compute new variables and transformations

## 10.2 Why stata?

- Used in a variety of disciplines
- User-friendly
- Great guides available on web
- Excellent modeling capabilities
- Student and other discount packages available at reasonable cost

### 10.2.1 Stata interface



- Review and Variable windows can be closed (user preference)
- Command window can be shortened (recommended)

### 10.2.2 Do-files

- You can type all the same commands into the Do-file that you would type into the command window
- BUT...the Do-file allows you to **save** your commands
- Your Do-file should contain ALL commands you executed – at least all the “correct” commands!
- I recommend never using the command window or menus to make CHANGES to data
- Saving commands in Do-file allows you to keep a written record of everything you have done to your data
  - Allows easy replication
  - Allows you to go back and re-run commands, analyses and make modifications

### 10.2.3 Stata help

To get help in Stata type **help** followed by topic or command, e.g., **help codebook**.

### 10.2.4 Syntax rules

Most Stata commands follow the same basic syntax: **Command varlist, options**.

Use comments liberally — start with a comment describing your Do-file and use comments throughout

```
* Use '*' to comment a line and '//' for in-line comments
```

```
* Make Stata say hello:  
disp "Hello" "World!" // 'disp' is short for 'display'
```

Use **///** to break varlists over multiple lines:

```
disp "Hello" ///  
    " World!"
```

### 10.2.5 Let's get started

- Launch the Stata program (MP or SE, does not matter unless doing computationally intensive work)
  - Open up a new Do-file
  - Run our first Stata code!

```
* change directory  
cd "C:/Users/yiw640/Desktop/StataIntro/"
```

## 10.3 Reading data

### 10.3.1 Data file commands

Next, we want to open our data file Open/save data sets with “use” and “save”:

```
cd dataSets

// open the gss.dta data set
use gss.dta, clear

// save data file:
save newgss.dta, replace // "replace" option means OK to overwrite existing file
```

### 10.3.2 A note about path names

- If your path has no spaces in the name (that means all directories, folders, file names, etc. can have no spaces), you can write the path as it is
- If there are spaces, you need to put your pathname in quotes
- Best to get in the habit of quoting paths

### 10.3.3 Where's my data?

- Data editor (**browse**)
- Data editor (**edit**)
  - Using the data editor is discouraged (why?)
- Always keep any changes to your data in your Do-file
- Avoid temptation of making manual changes by viewing data via the browser rather than editor

### 10.3.4 Reading non-Stata data

Import delimited text files:

```
* import data from a .csv file
import delimited gss.csv, clear

* save data to a .csv file
export delimited gss_new.csv, replace
```

Import data from SAS:

```
* import/export SAS xport files  
  
import sasxport gss.xpt, clear  
export sasxport gss_new, replace
```

Import data from Excel:

```
* import/export Excel files  
  
import excel gss.xlsx, clear  
export excel gss_new, replace
```

What if my data is from another statistical software program?

- SPSS/PASW will allow you to save your data as a Stata file
  - Go to: file -> save as -> Stata (use most recent version available)
  - Then you can just go into Stata and open it
- Another option is **StatTransfer**, a program that converts data from/to many common formats, including SAS, SPSS, Stata, and many more

### 10.3.5 Exercise 0

#### Importing data

1. Save any work you've done so far. Close down Stata and open a new session.
2. Start Stata and open your .do file.
3. Change directory (**cd**) to the **dataSets** folder.

\*\*

4. Try opening the following files:
  - A comma separated value file: **gss.csv**
  - An Excel file: **gss.xlsx**

\*\*

## 10.4 Statistics & graphs

### 10.4.1 Frequently used commands

- Commands for reviewing and inspecting data:
  - describe // labels, storage type etc.
  - sum // statistical summary (mean, sd, min/max etc.)
  - codebook // storage type, unique values, labels
  - list // print actual values
  - tab // (cross) tabulate variables
  - browse // view the data in a spreadsheet-like window

First, let's ask Stata for help about these commands:

```
help sum

use gss.dta, clear

sum educ // statistical summary of education

codebook region // information about how region is coded

tab sex // numbers of male and female participants
```

If you run these commands without specifying variables, Stata will produce output for every variable

### 10.4.2 Basic graphing commands

```
// open the gss.dta data set
use gss.dta, clear
```

Univariate distribution(s) using **hist**:

```
/* Histograms */
hist educ

// histogram with normal curve; see "help hist" for other options
hist age, normal
```

View bivariate distributions with scatterplots:

```
/* scatterplots */
twoway (scatter educ age)

graph matrix educ age inc
```

### 10.4.3 The by command

Sometimes, you'd like to generate output based on different categories of a grouping variable  
The `by` command does just this:

```
* By Processing
bysort sex: tab happy // tabulate happy separately for men and women

bysort marital: sum educ // summarize education by marital status
```

### 10.4.4 Exercise 1

#### Descriptive statistics

The Generations of Talent Study sought to examine quality of employment as experienced by today's multigenerational workforces. The primary goal was to explore how country-related factors and age-related factors affect employees' perceptions of quality of employment. Demographic variables included gender, birth year, race/ethnicity, education, marital \* status, number of children, hourly wage, salary, and household income.

1. Use the dataset, `talent.dta`, open a new do-file and write on the do-file, after the exercise save it to the folder

\*\*

2. Examine a few selected variables using the `describe`, `sum` and `codebook` commands

\*\*

3. Tabulate the variable, marital status (`marital`), with and without labels

\*\*

4. Summarize the total household income last year (`income`) by marital status

\*\*

5. Cross-tabulate marital status with respondents' type of main job (`job`)

\*\*

6. Summarize the total household income last year (`income`) for married individuals only

\*\*

## 10.5 Basic data management

### 10.5.1 Labels

- You never know why and when your data may be reviewed
- ALWAYS label every variable no matter how insignificant it may seem
- Stata uses two sets of labels: **variable labels** and **value labels**
- Variable labels are very easy to use – value labels are a little more complicated

### 10.5.2 Variable & value labels

```
// open the gss.dta data set again
use gss.dta, clear
```

Variable labels

```
/* Labelling and renaming */
// Label variable inc "household income"
label var inc "household income"

// change the name 'educ' to 'education'
rename educ education

// you can search names and labels with 'lookfor'
lookfor household
```

Value labels are a two step process: define a value label, then assign defined label to variable(s)

```
/*define a value label for sex */
label define mySexLabel 1 "Male" 2 "Female"

/* assign our label set to the sex variable*/
label values sex mySexLabel

// save the changes
save gss.dta, replace
```

### 10.5.3 Exercise 2

Variable labels & value labels

1. Open the data set gss.csv

\*\*

2. Rename and label variables using the following codebook:

\*\*

| Var | Rename to | Label with          |
|-----|-----------|---------------------|
| v1  | marital   | marital status      |
| v2  | age       | age of respondent   |
| v3  | educ      | education           |
| v4  | sex       | respondent's sex    |
| v5  | inc       | household income    |
| v6  | happy     | general happiness   |
| v7  | region    | region of interview |

3. Add value labels to your `marital` variable using this codebook:

\*\*

| Value | Label           |
|-------|-----------------|
| 1     | "married"       |
| 2     | "widowed"       |
| 3     | "divorced"      |
| 4     | "separated"     |
| 5     | "never married" |

## 10.6 Working on subsets

It is often useful to select just those rows of your data where some condition holds—for example select only rows where sex is 1 (male). The following operators allow you to do this:

| Operator           | Meaning                  |
|--------------------|--------------------------|
| <code>==</code>    | equal to                 |
| <code>!=</code>    | not equal to             |
| <code>&gt;</code>  | greater than             |
| <code>&gt;=</code> | greater than or equal to |
| <code>&lt;</code>  | less than                |
| <code>&lt;=</code> | less than or equal to    |
| <code>&amp;</code> | and                      |
| <code> </code>     | or                       |

Note the double equals sign == is for testing equality.

## 10.7 Generating & replacing variables

```
// open the gss.dta data set again
use gss.dta, clear
```

Create new variables using gen

```
// create a new variable named mc_inc
// equal to inc minus the mean of inc
gen mc_inc = inc - 15.37
```

Sometimes useful to start with blank values and fill them in based on values of existing variables

```
/* the 'generate and replace' strategy */
// generate a column of missings
gen age_wealth = .

// Next, start adding your qualifications
replace age_wealth=1 if age < 30 & inc < 10
replace age_wealth=2 if age < 30 & inc > 10
replace age_wealth=3 if age > 30 & inc < 10
replace age_wealth=4 if age > 30 & inc > 10
```

### 10.7.1 Exercise 3

#### Manipulating variables with gen and replace

1. Use the dataset, **talent.dta**, work on the previous do-file. Save any changes to the data to original data

\*\*

2. Generate a new “overwork” dummy variable from the original variable **workperweek** that will take on a value of 1 if a person works more than 40 hours per week, and 0 if a person works equal to or less than 40 hours per week

\*\*

3. Generate a new **marital\_dummy** dummy variable from the original variable **marital** that will take on a value of 1 if a person is either married or partnered and 0 otherwise

\*\*

4. Save the changes to the original dataset

\*\*

### 10.7.2 Use drop to delete variables and keep to keep them

```
use gss.dta, clear
drop inc

keep age region happy educ sex
```

You can drop cases selectively using the conditional `if`, for example:

```
drop if sex == 2 /*this will drop observations (rows) where gender = 2*/
drop if age > 40 /*this will drop observations where age > 40*/
```

### 10.7.3 Alternatively, you can keep options you want

```
keep if sex == 1
keep if age < 40
keep if region == "north" | region == "south"
```

For more details type `help keep` or `help drop`.

### 10.7.4 Exercise 4

Combine all what we have learned together!

1. Use the dataset, `talent.dta`

\*\*

2. Rename the `Sex` variable and give it a more intuitive name

\*\*

3. Use `codebook`, `describe`, `tab`, and `browse` commands to know more about how the three variables `A3`, `A5`, and `A7` are coded and stored, give them new names

\*\*

4. Plot a histogram distribution for `workperweek` and add a normal curve

\*\*

5. Give a variable label and value labels for the variable `overwork`

\*\*

6. Generate a new variable called `work_family` and code it as 2 if a respondent perceived work to be more important than family, 1 if a respondent perceived family to be more important than work, and 0 if the two are of equal importance

\*\*

7. Drop the `B3C` variable that is not used in our exercise

\*\*

8. Save the changes to a new dataset called `talent_new.dta` and save it to our folder

\*\*

## 10.8 Exercise solutions

### 10.8.1 Ex 0: prototype

```
clear
cd "C:\Users\yiw640\Desktop\StataIntro\dataSets"

import delimited gss.csv, clear
import excel gss.xlsx, clear
```

### 10.8.2 Ex 1: prototype

```
use talent.dta, clear
describe workperweek
tab I3
sum income
codebook job

tab marital
tab marital, nol

bysort marital: sum income
tabulate marital job
summarize income if marital == 1
```

### 10.8.3 Ex 2: prototype

```

import delimited gss.csv, clear

rename v2 age
rename v3 educ
rename v4 sex
rename v5 inc
rename v6 happy
rename v7 region

label var age "age of respondent"
label var educ "education"
label var sex "respondent's sex"
label var inc "household income"
label var happy "general happiness"
label var region "region of interview"

rename v1 marital
label var marital "marital status"
label define marital_label 1 "married" 2 "widowed" 3 "divorced" 4 "seperated" 5 "never married"
label val marital marital_label

```

### 10.8.4 Ex 3: prototype

```

use talent.dta, clear
gen overwork = .
replace overwork = 1 if workperweek > 40
replace overwork = 0 if workperweek <= 40
replace overwork = . if workperweek == .
tab overwork

gen marital_dummy = .
replace marital_dummy = 1 if marital == 1 | marital == 2
replace marital_dummy = 0 if marital != 1 & marital != 2
replace marital_dummy = . if marital == .
tab marital_dummy

```

### 10.8.5 Ex 4: prototype

```

use talent.dta, clear
rename I3 Sex

codebook A3
describe A5
tab A7

```

```

rename A3 otherjob
rename A5 workschedule
rename A7 parttime

hist workperweek, normal

label variable overwork "whether someone works more than 40 hours per week"
label define overworklabel 1 "Yes" 0 "No"
label values overwork overworklabel

gen work_family = .
replace work_family = 2 if B3A > B3B
replace work_family = 1 if B3A < B3B
replace work_family = 0 if B3A == B3B
replace work_family = . if B3A == .
replace work_family = . if B3B == .

drop B3C

save talent_new.dta, replace

```

## 10.9 Wrap-up

### 10.9.1 Feedback

These workshops are a work in progress, please provide any feedback to: [help@iq.harvard.edu](mailto:help@iq.harvard.edu)

### 10.9.2 Resources

- IQSS
  - Workshops: <https://dss.iq.harvard.edu/workshop-materials>
  - Data Science Services: <https://dss.iq.harvard.edu/>
  - Research Computing Environment: <https://iqss.github.io/dss-rce/>
- HBS
  - Research Computing Services workshops: <https://training.rcs.hbs.org/workshops>
  - Other HBS RCS resources: <https://training.rcs.hbs.org/workshop-materials>
  - RCS consulting email: <mailto:research@hbs.edu>
- Stata
  - UCLA website: <http://www.ats.ucla.edu/stat/Stata/>

- Stata website: <http://www.stata.com/help.cgi?contents>
- Email list: <http://www.stata.com/statalist/>



# Chapter 11

# Stata Data Management

## Topics

- Generating and replacing variables
- Processing with `by` statements
- Missing values
- Variable types and conversion
- Merging, appending, and joining
- Creating summarized data sets

## 11.1 Setup

### 11.1.1 Software & Materials

Laptop users: you will need a copy of Stata installed on your machine. Harvard FAS affiliates can install a licensed version from <http://downloads.fas.harvard.edu/download>

- Download class materials at <https://github.com/IQSS/dss-workshops/raw/master/Stata/StataDatMan.zip>
- Extract materials from the zipped directory `StataDatMan.zip` (Right-click => Extract All on Windows, double-click on Mac) and move them to your desktop!

### 11.1.2 Organization

- Please feel free to ask questions at any point if they are relevant to the current topic (or if you are lost!)
- Collaboration is encouraged - please introduce yourself to your neighbors!
- If you are using a laptop, you will need to adjust file paths accordingly
- Make comments in your Do-file - save on flash drive or email to yourself

### 11.1.3 Goals

- This is an introduction to data management in Stata
- Assumes basic knowledge of Stata
- Not appropriate for people already familiar with Stata
- If you are catching on before the rest of the class, experiment with command features described in help files
- Learning Objectives:
  - Basic data manipulation commands
  - Processing with by statements
  - Dealing with missing values
  - Variable types and conversion
  - Merging and appending datasets

## 11.2 Opening Files

- Look at bottom left hand corner of Stata screen
  - This is the directory Stata is currently reading from
- Files are located in the StataDatMan folder in your home directory
- Start by telling Stata where to look for these

```
// change directory
cd("~/Desktop/Stata/StataDatMan")

// Use dir to see what is in the directory:
dir
dir dataSets

// use the gss data set
use dataSets/gss.dta

set more off

cd("~/Desktop/Stata/StataDatMan"
/nfs/www/edu-harvard-iq-tutorials/Stata/StataDatMan

dir

total 100
drwxrwsr-x. 2 apache tutorwww 4096 Oct  9 08:44 dataSets/
-rwxrwxr-x. 1 izahn  tutorwww 1302 Oct  9 08:44 Exercises.do*
drwxrwsr-x. 2 apache tutorwww 4096 Oct  9 08:44 images/
drwxrwsr-x. 4 apache tutorwww 4096 Oct  9 08:44 StataDatMan/
-rwxrwxr-x. 1 izahn  tutorwww 17446 Oct  9 08:44 StataDatMan.do*
```

```
-rwxrwxr-x. 1 izahn tutorwww 38153 Oct  9 08:44 StataDatMan.html*
-rwxrwxr-x. 1 izahn tutorwww 20463 Oct  9 08:44 StataDatMan.org*
dir dataSets

total 2644
-rwxrwxr-x. 1 izahn tutorwww 275705 Oct  9 08:44 gss1.dta*
-rwxrwxr-x. 1 izahn tutorwww 263324 Oct  9 08:44 gss2.dta*
-rwxrwxr-x. 1 izahn tutorwww 532880 Oct  9 08:44 gssAddObserve.dta*
-rwxrwxr-x. 1 izahn tutorwww 527005 Oct  9 08:44 gssAppend.dta*
-rwxrwxr-x. 1 izahn tutorwww 527005 Oct  9 08:44 gsscompare1.dta*
-rwxrwxr-x. 1 izahn tutorwww 538755 Oct  9 08:44 gss.dta*
-rwxrwxr-x. 1 izahn tutorwww    1139 Oct  9 08:44 marital.dta*

use dataSets/gss.dta
```

## 11.3 Generating & replacing variables

### 11.3.1 Data Manipulation Commands

Basic commands you'll use for generating new variables or recoding existing variables:

- gen
- egen
- replace
- recode

Many different means of accomplishing the same thing in Stata – find what is comfortable (and easy) for you!

### 11.3.2 Generate & Replace

The `replace` command is often used with logic statements. Available logical operators include the following:

| Operator           | Meaning                  |
|--------------------|--------------------------|
| <code>==</code>    | equal to                 |
| <code>!=</code>    | not equal to             |
| <code>&gt;</code>  | greater than             |
| <code>&gt;=</code> | greater than or equal to |
| <code>&lt;</code>  | less than                |
| <code>&lt;=</code> | less than or equal to    |
| <code>&amp;</code> | and                      |

For example:

```
//create "hapnew" variable
gen hapnew = .
//set to 0 if happy equals 1
replace hapnew=0 if happy==1
//set to 1 if happy both and hapmar are greater than 3
replace hapnew=1 if happy>3 & hapmar>3
// tabulate the new
tab hapnew

gen hapnew = .
(1,419 missing values generated)

replace hapnew=0 if happy==1
(435 real changes made)

replace hapnew=1 if happy>3 & hapmar>3
(4 real changes made)

tab hapnew

  hapnew |      Freq.     Percent       Cum.
-----+
    0 |      435     99.09     99.09
    1 |        4      0.91    100.00
-----+
  Total |      439     100.00
```

### 11.3.3 Recode

The `recode` command is basically generate and replace combined. You can recode an existing variable OR use `recode` to create a new variable (via the `gen` option).

```
// recode the wrkstat variable
recode wrkstat (1=8) (2=7) (3=6) (4=5) (5=4) (6=3) (7=2) (8=1)
// recode wrkstat into a new variable named wrkstat2
recode wrkstat (1=8), gen(wrkstat2)
// tabulate workstat
tab wrkstat

recode wrkstat (1=8) (2=7) (3=6) (4=5) (5=4) (6=3) (7=2) (8=1)
(wrkstat: 1419 changes made)

recode wrkstat (1=8), gen(wrkstat2)
(32 differences between wrkstat and wrkstat2)
```

```
tab wrkstat
```

| LABOR FRCE       |       | Freq.  | Percent | Cum. |
|------------------|-------|--------|---------|------|
| STATUS           |       |        |         |      |
| WORKING FULLTIME | 32    | 2.26   | 2.26    |      |
| WORKING PARTTIME | 155   | 10.92  | 13.18   |      |
| TEMP NOT WORKING | 34    | 2.40   | 15.57   |      |
| UNEMPL, LAID OFF | 214   | 15.08  | 30.66   |      |
| RETIRED          | 29    | 2.04   | 32.70   |      |
| SCHOOL           | 35    | 2.47   | 35.17   |      |
| KEEPING HOUSE    | 146   | 10.29  | 45.45   |      |
| OTHER            | 774   | 54.55  | 100.00  |      |
| Total            | 1,419 | 100.00 |         |      |

The table below illustrates common forms of recoding

| Rule         | Example  | Meaning                 |
|--------------|--|-------------------------|
| #=#          | 3=1  | 3 recoded to 1          |
| ##=#         | 2. 9             2<br>and . recoded to 9<br> <br>  #/# # | 1/5=4                   |
| nonmissing=# | nonmiss=8  | nonmissing recoded to 8 |
| missing=#    | miss=9   | missing recoded to 9    |

### 11.3.4 egen

The `egen` command (“extensions” to the `gen` command) provides convenient methods for performing many common data manipulation tasks.

For example, we can use `egen` to create a new variable that counts the number of “yes” responses on computer, email and internet use:

```
// count number of yes on use comp email and net
egen compuser= anycount(usecomp usemail usenet), values(1)
tab compuser

egen compuser= anycount(usecomp usemail usenet), values(1)
tab compuser

usecomp |
usemail |
usenet == 1 |      Freq.      Percent      Cum.
```

| 0     |        | 623   | 43.90  |
|-------|--------|-------|--------|
| 1     |        | 142   | 10.01  |
| 2     |        | 78    | 5.50   |
| 3     |        | 576   | 40.59  |
|       | +----- |       | 100.00 |
| Total |        | 1,419 |        |

Here are some additional examples of `egen` in action:

```
// assess how much missing data each participant has:  
egen countmiss = rowmiss(age-wifeft)  
codebook countmiss  
// compare values on multiple variables  
egen ftdiff=diff(wkftwife wkfthusb)  
codebook ftdiff
```

```
egen countmiss = rowmiss(age-wifeft)  
codebook countmiss
```

---

|           |             |
|-----------|-------------|
| countmiss | (unlabeled) |
|-----------|-------------|

---

type: numeric (float)

|                  |                    |
|------------------|--------------------|
| range: [0,7]     | units: 1           |
| unique values: 6 | missing .: 0/1,419 |

|             |       |       |
|-------------|-------|-------|
| tabulation: | Freq. | Value |
|             | 296   | 0     |
|             | 215   | 1     |
|             | 113   | 2     |
|             | 7     | 3     |
|             | 782   | 6     |
|             | 6     | 7     |

```
egen ftdiff=diff(wkftwife wkfthusb)  
codebook ftdiff
```

---

|        |                        |
|--------|------------------------|
| ftdiff | diff wkftwife wkfthusb |
|--------|------------------------|

---

type: numeric (float)

|              |          |
|--------------|----------|
| range: [0,1] | units: 1 |
|--------------|----------|

```

unique values: 2                         missing .: 0/1,419

tabulation: Freq. Value
             1,169 0
                 250 1

```

You will need to refer to the documentation to discover what else `egen` can do: type “`help egen`” in Stata to get a complete list of functions.

### 11.3.5 Exercise 0

#### Generate, Replace, Recode & Egen

Open the `gss.dta` data.

1. Generate a new variable that represents the squared value of age.
2. Generate a new variable equal to “1” if income is greater than “19”.
3. Create a new variable that counts the number of missing responses for each respondent.  
What is the maximum number of missing variables?

## 11.4 By processing

### 11.4.1 The `bysort` Command

Sometimes, you’d like to create variables based on different categories of a single variable. For example, say you want to look at happiness based on whether an individual is male or female. The “`bysort`” prefix does just this:

```

// tabulate happy separately for male and female
bysort sex: tab happy
// generate summary statistics using bysort
bysort state: egen stateincome = mean(income)
bysort degree: egen degreeincome = mean(income)
bysort marital: egen marincomesd = sd(income)

bysort sex: tab happy

```

---

-> sex = Male

|              | GENERAL |       |         |       |
|--------------|---------|-------|---------|-------|
| HAPPINESS    |         | Freq. | Percent | Cum.  |
| VERY HAPPY   |         | 189   | 30.39   | 30.39 |
| PRETTY HAPPY |         | 350   | 56.27   | 86.66 |

```

NOT TOO HAPPY |      73      11.74      98.39
    NA |      10      1.61      100.00
-----
Total |      622      100.00

-----
-> sex = Female

      GENERAL |
      HAPPINESS |   Freq.    Percent     Cum.
-----
      VERY HAPPY |      246      30.87      30.87
      PRETTY HAPPY |      447      56.09      86.95
      NOT TOO HAPPY |      84      10.54      97.49
          DK |      1      0.13      97.62
          NA |      19      2.38      100.00
-----
Total |      797      100.00

bysort state: egen stateincome = mean(income)
variable state not found
r(111);
bysort degree: egen degreeincome = mean(income)
bysort marital: egen marincomesd = sd(income)

```

### 11.4.2 by prefix vs. by options

Some commands won't work with by prefix, but instead have a by option:

```
// generate separate histograms for female and male
hist nethrs, by(sex)
```

## 11.5 Missing values

You always need to consider how missing values are coded when recoding variables.

- Stata's symbol for a missing value is .
- Stata interprets . as a large value
- Easy to make mistakes!

To identify highly educated women, we might use the command:

```
// generate and replace without considering missing values
gen hi_ed=0
replace hi_ed=1 if wifeduc>15
```

```
// What happens to our missing values?
tab hi_ed, mi nola

gen hi_ed=0
replace hi_ed=1 if wifeduc>15
(944 real changes made)

tab hi_ed, mi nola

hi_ed |      Freq.    Percent     Cum.
-----+
  0 |      475     33.47    33.47
  1 |      944     66.53   100.00
-----+
Total |    1,419    100.00
```

It looks like around 66% have higher education, but look closer:

```
// gen hi_ed2, but don't set a value if wifeduc is missing
gen hi_ed2 = 0 if wifeduc != .
// only replace non-missing
replace hi_ed2=1 if wifeduc >15 & wifeduc != .
//check to see that missingness is preserved
tab hi_ed2, mi

gen hi_ed2 = 0 if wifeduc != .
(797 missing values generated)

replace hi_ed2=1 if wifeduc >15 & wifeduc != .
(147 real changes made)

|      797     56.17    100.00
-----+
Total |    1,419    100.00
```

The correct value is 10%. Moral of the story? Be careful with missing values and remember that Stata considers missing values to be large!

### 11.5.1 Bulk Conversion to Missing Values

Often the data collection/generating procedure will have used some other value besides . to represent missing values. The `mvdecode` command will convert all these values to missing. For example:

```
mvdecode _all, mv(999)
```

```
mvdecode _all, mv(999)
```

- The “`_all`” command tells Stata to do this to all variables
- Use this command carefully!
  - If you have any variables where “999” is a legitimate value, Stata is going to recode it to missing
  - As an alternative, you could list var names separately rather than using “`_all`”

## 11.6 Variable types

Stata uses two main types of variables: String and Numeric. To be able to perform any mathematical operations, your variables need to be in a numeric format. Stata can store numbers with differing levels of precision, as described in the table below.

| type   | Minimum             | Maximum            | being 0   | bytes |
|--------|---------------------|--------------------|-----------|-------|
| byte   | -127                | 100                | +/-1      | 1     |
| int    | -32,767             | 32,740             | +/-1      | 2     |
| long   | -2,147,483,647      | 2,147,483,620      | +/-1      | 4     |
| float  | -1.70141173319*1038 | 1.70141173319*1038 | +/-10-38  | 4     |
| double | -8.9884656743*10307 | 8.9884656743*10307 | +/-10-323 | 8     |

- Precision for float is  $3.795 \times 10^{-8}$ .
- Precision for double is  $1.414 \times 10^{-16}$ .

### 11.6.1 Converting to & from Strings

Stata provides several ways to convert to and from strings. You can use `tostring` and `destring` to convert from one type to the other:

```
// convert degree to a string
tostring degree, gen(degree_s)
// and back to a number
destring degree_s, gen(degree_n)

tostring degree, gen(degree_s)
degree_s generated as str1

destring degree_s, gen(degree_n)
degree_s has all characters numeric; degree_n generated as byte
```

Use `decode` and `encode` to convert to/from variable labels:

```
// convert degree to a descriptive string
decode degree, gen(degree_s2)
// and back to a number with labels
encode degree_s2, gen(degree_n2)

decode degree, gen(degree_s2)
encode degree_s2, gen(degree_n2)
```

### 11.6.2 Converting Strings to Date/Time

Often date/time variables start out as strings – You’ll need to convert them to numbers using one of the conversion functions listed below.

| Format | Meaning      | String-to-numeric conversion function |
|--------|--------------|---------------------------------------|
| %tc    | milliseconds | clock(string, mask)                   |
| %td    | days         | date(string, mask)                    |
| %tw    | weeks        | weekly(string, mask)                  |
| %tm    | months       | monthly(string, mask)                 |
| %tq    | quarters     | quarterly(string, mask)               |
| %ty    | years        | yearly(string, mask)                  |

Date/time variables are stored as the number of units elapsed since 01jan1960 00:00:00.000. For example, the `date` function returns the number of days since that time, and the `clock` function returns the number of milliseconds since that time.

```
// create string variable and convert to date
gen date = "November 9 2020"
gen date1 = date(date, "MDY")
list date1 in 1/5

gen date = "November 9 2020"
gen date1 = date(date, "MDY")
list date1 in 1/5

+-----+
date1
1. | 22228 |
2. | 22228 |
3. | 22228 |
4. | 22228 |
5. | 22228 |
+-----+
```

### 11.6.3 Formatting Numbers as Dates

Once you have converted the string to a number you can format it for display. You can simply accept the defaults used by your formatting string or provide details to customize it.

```
// format so humans can read the date
format date1 %d
list date1 in 1/5
// format with detail
format date1 %tdMonth_dd,_CCYY
list date1 in 1/5

format date1 %d
list date1 in 1/5

+-----+
date1
1. | 09nov2020 |
2. | 09nov2020 |
3. | 09nov2020 |
4. | 09nov2020 |
5. | 09nov2020 |
+-----+

format date1 %tdMonth_dd,_CCYY
list date1 in 1/5

+-----+
date1
1. | November 9, 2020 |
2. | November 9, 2020 |
3. | November 9, 2020 |
4. | November 9, 2020 |
5. | November 9, 2020 |
+-----+
```

### 11.6.4 Exercise 1

#### Missing Values, String Conversion, & by Processing

1. Recode values “99” and “98” on the variable, “hrs1” as “missing.”
2. Recode the marital variable into a “string” variable and then back into a numeric variable.
3. Create a new variable that associates each individual with the average number of hours worked among individuals with matching educational degrees (see the last “by” example for inspiration).

## 11.7 Merging, appending, & joining

### 11.7.1 Appending Datasets

Sometimes you have observations in two different datasets, or you'd like to add observations to an existing dataset. In this case you can use the `append` command to add observations to the end of the observations in the master dataset. For example:

```

clear
// from the append help file
webuse even
list
webuse odd
list
// Append even data to the end of the odd data
append using "http://www.stata-press.com/data/r14/even"
list
clear

clear

webuse even
(6th through 8th even numbers)
list

+-----+
number   even
1. |       6     12 |
2. |       7     14 |
3. |       8     16 |
+-----+
webuse odd
(First five odd numbers)
list

+-----+
number   odd
1. |       1     1 |
2. |       2     3 |
3. |       3     5 |
4. |       4     7 |
5. |       5     9 |
+-----+
append using "http://www.stata-press.com/data/r14/even"
```

```
list
```

|    | number | odd | even |
|----|--------|-----|------|
| 1. | 1      | 1   | .    |
| 2. | 2      | 3   | .    |
| 3. | 3      | 5   | .    |
| 4. | 4      | 7   | .    |
| 5. | 5      | 9   | .    |
|    |        |     |      |
| 6. | 6      | .   | 12   |
| 7. | 7      | .   | 14   |
| 8. | 8      | .   | 16   |

```
clear
```

To keep track of where observations came from, use the `generate` option as shown below:

```
webuse odd
append using "http://www.stata-press.com/data/r14/even", generate(observesource)
list
clear

webuse odd
(First five odd numbers)
ce)
list

+-----+
number  odd  observesource  even
1. | 1  1  0  . |
2. | 2  3  0  . |
3. | 3  5  0  . |
4. | 4  7  0  . |
5. | 5  9  0  . |
|-----|
6. | 6  .  1  12 |
7. | 7  .  1  14 |
8. | 8  .  1  16 |
+-----+
clear
```

There is a “force” option will allow for data type mismatches, but again this is not recommended.

Remember, `append` is for adding observations (i.e., rows) from a second data set.

### 11.7.2 Merging Datasets

You can `merge` variables from a second dataset to the dataset you're currently working with.

- Current active dataset = master dataset
- Dataset you'd like to merge with master = using dataset

There are different ways that you might be interested in merging data:

- Two datasets with same participant pool, one row per participant (1:1)
- A dataset with one participant per row with a dataset with multiple rows per participant (1:many or many:1)

Before you begin:

- Identify the “ID” that you will use to merge your two datasets
- Determine which variables you’d like to merge
- In Stata  $\geq 11$ , data does NOT have to be sorted
- Variable types must match across datasets (there is a “force” option to get around this, but not recommended)

```
// Adapted from the merge help page
webuse autosize
list
webuse autoexpense
list

webuse autosize
merge 1:1 make using "http://www.stata-press.com/data/r14/autoexpense"
list
clear

// keep only the matches (AKA "inner join")
webuse autosize, clear
merge 1:1 make using "http://www.stata-press.com/data/r14/autoexpense", keep(match) nogen
list
clear

webuse autosize
(1978 Automobile Data)
list

+-----+
| make          weight    length |
+-----|
1. | Toyota Celica      2,410       174 |

```

```

2. | BMW 320i           2,650      177 |
3. | Cad. Seville     4,290      204 |
4. | Pont. Grand Prix 3,210      201 |
5. | Datsun 210        2,020      165 |
|-----|
6. | Plym. Arrow       3,260      170 |
+-----+
webuse autoexpense
(1978 Automobile Data)
list

+-----+
make          price   mpg
1. | Toyota Celica 5,899    18 |
2. | BMW 320i      9,735    25 |
3. | Cad. Seville 15,906   21 |
4. | Pont. Grand Prix 5,222   19 |
5. | Datsun 210    4,589    35 |
+-----+

webuse autosize
(1978 Automobile Data)
merge 1:1 make using "http://www.stata-press.com/data/r14/autoexpense"

      Result          # of obs.
-----
not matched
      from master      1
      from using        0 (_merge==2)

matched
      5 (_merge==3)
-----

list

+-----+
make          weight  length   price   mpg      _merge
1. | BMW 320i      2,650    177    9,735   25      matched (3) |
2. | Cad. Seville 4,290    204   15,906   21      matched (3) |
3. | Datsun 210    2,020    165    4,589   35      matched (3) |
4. | Plym. Arrow    3,260    170      .      .      master only (1) |
5. | Pont. Grand Prix 3,210    201    5,222   19      matched (3) |
|-----|
6. | Toyota Celica 2,410    174    5,899   18      matched (3) |
+-----+
clear

```

```

webuse autosize, clear
(1978 Automobile Data)
match) nogen

Result                      # of obs.
-----
not matched                  0
matched                      5
-----
list

+-----+
make          weight   length   price   mpg
1. | BMW 320i      2,650     177    9,735    25 |
2. | Cad. Seville  4,290     204   15,906    21 |
3. | Datsun 210     2,020     165    4,589    35 |
4. | Pont. Grand Prix 3,210     201    5,222    19 |
5. | Toyota Celica  2,410     174    5,899    18 |
+-----+
clear

```

Remember, `merge` is for adding variables (i.e., columns) from a second data set.

### 11.7.3 Merge Options

There are several options that provide more fine-grain control over what happens to non-id columns contained in both data sets. If you've carefully cleaned and prepared the data prior to merging this shouldn't be an issue, but here are some details about how Stata handles this situation.

- In standard merge, the master dataset is the authority and WON'T CHANGE
- If your master dataset has missing data and some of those values are not missing in your using dataset, specify “update” – this will fill in missing data in master
- If you want data from your using dataset to overwrite that in your master, specify “replace update” – this will replace master data with using data UNLESS the value is missing in the using dataset

### 11.7.4 Many-to-many merges

Stata allows you to specify merges like `merge m:m id using newdata.dta`, but I have never seen this do anything useful. To quote the official Stata manual:

`m:m` specifies a many-to-many merge and is a **bad idea**. In an `m:m` merge, observations are matched within equal values of the key variable(s), with the

first observation being matched to the first; the second, to the second; and so on. If the master and using have an unequal number of observations within the group, then the last observation of the shorter group is used repeatedly to match with subsequent observations of the longer group. Thus **m:m merges are dependent on the current sort order—something which should never happen. Because m:m merges are such a bad idea, we are not going to show you an example.** If you think that you need an m:m merge, then you probably need to work with your data so that you can use a 1:m or m:1 merge. Tips for this are given in Troubleshooting m:m merges below

(emphasis added).

If you are thinking about using `merge m:m` chances are good that you actually need `joinby`. Here is a quick example, modified from the `joinby` help page.

```
clear
webuse parent
list
webuse children
list
// Complete and utter nonsense!
merge m:m family_id using http://www.stata-press.com/data/r14/parent
// You want joinby instead
clear
webuse children
joinby family_id using http://www.stata-press.com/data/r14/parent
```

Remember, `merge m:m` is old and broken; **do not use**. Anytime you think you might want `m:m` you should use `joinby` instead.

## 11.8 Creating summarized data sets

### 11.8.1 Collapse

`Collapse` will take master data and create a new dataset of summary statistics

- Useful in hierarchical linear modeling if you'd like to create aggregate, summary statistics
- Can generate group summary data for many descriptive stats
- Can also attach weights

Before you collapse:

- Save your master dataset and then save it again under a new name (this will prevent collapse from writing over your original data—)

- Consider issues of missing data. Do you want Stata to use all possible observations? If not, the cw (casewise) option will make casewise deletions

```
// Adapted from the collapse help page
clear
webuse college
list
// mean and sd by hospital
collapse (mean) mean_gpa = gpa mean_hour = hour (sd) sd_gpa = gpa sd_hour = hour, by(year)
list
clear

clear
webuse college
list

+-----+
| gpa    hour   year   number |
+-----+
1. | 3.2     30     1       3 |
2. | 3.5     34     1       2 |
3. | 2.8     28     1       9 |
4. | 2.1     30     1       4 |
5. | 3.8     29     2       3 |
+-----+
6. | 2.5     30     2       4 |
7. | 2.9     35     2       5 |
8. | 3.7     30     3       4 |
9. | 2.2     35     3       2 |
10. | 3.3    33     3       3 |
+-----+
11. | 3.4    32     4       5 |
12. | 2.9    31     4       2 |
+-----+

our, by(year)
list

+-----+
| year   mean_gpa   mean_h~r   sd_gpa   sd_hour |
+-----+
1. | 1       2.9      30.5    .6055301  2.516612 |
2. | 2      3.066667  31.33333  .6658328  3.21455  |
3. | 3      3.066667  32.66667  .7767453  2.516612  |
4. | 4       3.15     31.5    .3535534  .7071068  |
+-----+
clear
```

You could also generate different statistics for multiple variables

### 11.8.2 Exercise 2

#### Merge, Append, & Collapse

Open the gss2.dta dataset. This dataset contains only half of the variables that are in the complete gss dataset.

1. Merge dataset gss1.dta with dataset gss2.dta. The identification variable is “id.”
2. Open the gss.dta dataset and merge in data from the “marital.dta” dataset, which includes income information grouped by individuals’ marital status. The marital dataset contains collapsed data regarding average statistics of individuals based on their marital status.
3. Open the gssAppend.dta dataset and Create a new dataset that combines the observations in gssAppend.dta with those in gssAddObserve.dta.
4. Open the gss.dta dataset. Create a new dataset that summarizes mean and standard deviation of income based on individuals’ degree status (“degree”). In the process of creating this new dataset, rename your three new variables.

## 11.9 Exercise Solutions

### 11.9.1 Ex 0: prototype

Open the gss.dta data.

1. Generate a new variable that represents the squared value of age.

```
use dataSets/gss.dta, clear
gen age2 = age^2
```

2. Generate a new variable equal to “1” if income is greater than “19”.

```
describe income
label list income
recode income (99=.) (98=.)
gen highincome =0 if income != .
replace highincome=1 if income>19
sum highincome
```

3. Create a new variable that counts the number of missing responses for each respondent. What is the maximum number of missing variables?

```
egen nmissing = rowmiss(_all)
sum nmissing
```

### 11.9.2 Ex 1: prototype

1. Recode values “99” and “98” on the variable, “hrs1” as “missing.”

```
use dataSets/gss.dta, clear
sum hrs1
recode hrs1 (99=.) (98=.)
sum hrs1
```

2. Recode the marital variable into a “string” variable and then back into a numeric variable.

```
tostring marital, gen(marstring)
destring marstring, gen(mardstring)
//compare with
decode marital, gen(marital_s)
encode marital_s, gen(marital_n)

describe marital marstring mardstring marital_s marital_n
sum marital marstring mardstring marital_s marital_n
```

3. Create a new variable that associates each individual with the average number of hours worked among individuals with matching educational degrees (see the last “by” example for inspiration).

```
bysort degree: egen hrsdegree = mean(hrs1)
tab hrsdegree
tab hrsdegree degree
```

### 11.9.3 Ex 2: prototype

Open the gss2.dta dataset. This dataset contains only half of the variables that are in the complete gss dataset.

1. Merge dataset gss1.dta with dataset gss2.dta. The identification variable is “id.”

```
use dataSets/gss2.dta, clear
merge 1:1 id using dataSets/gss1.dta
save gss3.dta, replace
```

2. Open the gss.dta dataset and merge in data from the “marital.dta” dataset, which includes income information grouped by individuals’ marital status. The marital dataset contains collapsed data regarding average statistics of individuals based on their marital status.

```
use dataSets/gss.dta, clear
merge m:1 marital using dataSets/marital.dta, nogenerate replace update
save gss4.dta, replace
```

3. Open the gssAppend.dta dataset and Create a new dataset that combines the observations in gssAppend.dta with those in gssAddObserve.dta.

```
use dataSets/gssAppend.dta, clear
append using dataSets/gssAddObserve, generate(observe)
```

4. Open the gss.dta dataset. Create a new dataset that summarizes mean and standard deviation of income based on individuals' degree status ("degree"). In the process of creating this new dataset, rename your three new variables.

```
use dataSets/gss.dta, clear
save collapse2.dta, replace
use collapse2.dta, clear
collapse (mean) meaninc=income (sd) sdinc=income, by(marital)
```

## 11.10 Wrap-up

### 11.10.1 Feedback

These workshops are a work-in-progress, please provide any feedback to: [help@iq.harvard.edu](mailto:help@iq.harvard.edu)

### 11.10.2 Resources

- IQSS
  - Workshops: <https://dss.iq.harvard.edu/workshop-materials>
  - Data Science Services: <https://dss.iq.harvard.edu/>
  - Research Computing Environment: <https://iqss.github.io/dss-rce/>
- HBS
  - Research Computing Services workshops: <https://training.rcs.hbs.org/workshops>
  - Other HBS RCS resources: <https://training.rcs.hbs.org/workshop-materials>
  - RCS consulting email: <mailto:research@hbs.edu>
- Stata
  - UCLA website: <http://www.ats.ucla.edu/stat/Stata/>
  - Stata website: <http://www.stata.com/help.cgi?contents>
  - Email list: <http://www.stata.com/statalist/>

## Chapter 12

# Stata Modeling & Graphing

### Topics

- Stata modeling
  - Simple regression
  - Multiple regression
  - Interactions
  - Exporting regression tables
  - Testing model assumptions
- Stata graphing
  - Univariate graphs
  - Bivariate graphs

### 12.1 Setup

#### 12.1.1 Software & Materials

Laptop users: you will need a copy of Stata installed on your machine. Harvard FAS affiliates can install a licensed version from <http://downloads.fas.harvard.edu/download>

- Download class materials at <https://github.com/IQSS/dss-workshops/raw/master/Stata/StataModGraph.zip>
- Extract materials from the zipped directory **StataModGraph.zip** (Right-click => Extract All on Windows, double-click on Mac) and move them to your desktop!

#### 12.1.2 Organization

- Please feel free to ask questions at any point if they are relevant to the current topic (or if you are lost!)

- Collaboration is encouraged - please introduce yourself to your neighbors!
- If you are using a laptop, you will need to adjust file paths accordingly
- Make comments in your Do-file - save on flash drive or email to yourself

### 12.1.3 Goals

- This is an introduction to modeling and visualization in Stata
- Assumes basic knowledge of Stata
- Not appropriate for people already familiar with Stata
- If you are catching on before the rest of the class, experiment with command features described in help files
- Learning Objectives:
  - Fit models in Stata
  - Test modeling assumptions
  - Plot basic graphs in Stata
  - Plot two-way graphs

## 12.2 Fitting models

### 12.2.1 Today's Dataset

- We have data on a variety of variables for all 50 states
- Population, density, energy use, voting tendencies, graduation rates, income, etc.
- We're going to be predicting SAT scores
- Univariate Regression: SAT scores and Education Expenditures
- Does the amount of money spent on education affect the mean SAT score in a state?
- Dependent variable: csat
- Independent variable: expense

### 12.2.2 Opening Files

- Look at bottom left hand corner of Stata screen
  - This is the directory Stata is currently reading from
- Files are located in the StataStatistics folder on the Desktop
- Start by telling Stata where to look for these

```
// change directory
cd "~/Desktop/Stata/StataStatGraph"

set more off

cd "~/Desktop/Stata/StataStatGraph"
/nfs/www/edu-harvard-iq-tutorials/Stata/StataStatGraph
```

- Use dir to see what is in the directory:

```

dir
cd dataSets
dir
cd ..

dir

total 8
drwxr-sr-x. 2 izahn tutorwww 4096 Oct 22 21:59 dataSets/
drwxr-sr-x. 3 izahn tutorwww 4096 Oct 22 21:59 images/
cd dataSets
/nfs/www/edu-harvard-iq-tutorials/Stata/StataStatGraph/dataSets
dir

total 21008
-rwxr-xr-x. 1 izahn tutorwww 21103444 Oct 22 21:59 NatNeighCrimeStudy.dta*
-rwxr-xr-x. 1 izahn tutorwww      8977 Oct 22 21:59 states.dta*
-rwxr-xr-x. 1 izahn tutorwww    298191 Oct 22 21:59 TimePollPubSchools.dta*
cd ..
/nfs/www/edu-harvard-iq-tutorials/Stata/StataStatGraph

```

- Load the data

```

// use the states data set
use dataSets/states.dta

use dataSets/states.dta
(U.S. states data 1990-91)

```

## 12.3 Simple regression

### 12.3.1 Steps for running regression

1. Examine descriptive statistics
2. Look at relationship graphically and test correlation(s)
3. Run and interpret regression
4. Test regression assumptions

### 12.3.2 Preliminaries

- We want to predict csat scores from expense
- First, let's look at some descriptives

```
// generate summary statistics for csat and expense
sum csat expense

sum csat expense
```

| Variable | Obs | Mean     | Std. Dev. | Min  | Max  |
|----------|-----|----------|-----------|------|------|
| csat     | 51  | 944.098  | 66.93497  | 832  | 1093 |
| expense  | 51  | 5235.961 | 1401.155  | 2960 | 9259 |

- We want to predict csat scores from expense
- First, let's look at some descriptives

```
// look at codebook
codebook csat expense

codebook csat expense
```

---

| csat           | Mean composite SAT score |            |      |     |      |
|----------------|--------------------------|------------|------|-----|------|
| type:          | numeric (int)            |            |      |     |      |
| range:         | [832,1093]               | units:     | 1    |     |      |
| unique values: | 45                       | missing .: | 0/51 |     |      |
| mean:          | 944.098                  |            |      |     |      |
| std. dev:      | 66.935                   |            |      |     |      |
| percentiles:   | 10%                      | 25%        | 50%  | 75% | 90%  |
|                | 874                      | 886        | 926  | 997 | 1024 |

---

| expense        | Per pupil expenditures prim&sec |            |      |      |      |
|----------------|---------------------------------|------------|------|------|------|
| type:          | numeric (int)                   |            |      |      |      |
| range:         | [2960,9259]                     | units:     | 1    |      |      |
| unique values: | 51                              | missing .: | 0/51 |      |      |
| mean:          | 5235.96                         |            |      |      |      |
| std. dev:      | 1401.16                         |            |      |      |      |
| percentiles:   | 10%                             | 25%        | 50%  | 75%  | 90%  |
|                | 3782                            | 4351       | 5000 | 5865 | 6738 |

- Next, view relationship graphically
- Scatterplots work well for univariate relationships

```
// graph expense by csat
twoway scatter expense csat
```

- Next look at the correlation matrix

```
// correlate csat and expense
pwcorr csat expense, star(.05)
```

```
pwcorr csat expense, star(.05)
```

|         | csat     | expense |
|---------|----------|---------|
| csat    | 1.0000   |         |
| expense | -0.4663* | 1.0000  |

- Not very interesting with only one predictor

### 12.3.3 SAT scores & Education Expenditures

```
regress csat expense
```

```
regress csat expense
```

| Source   | SS         | df | MS         | Number of obs | = | 51     |
|----------|------------|----|------------|---------------|---|--------|
| Model    | 48708.3001 | 1  | 48708.3001 | Prob > F      | = | 0.0006 |
| Residual | 175306.21  | 49 | 3577.67775 | R-squared     | = | 0.2174 |
|          |            |    |            | Adj R-squared | = | 0.2015 |
| Total    | 224014.51  | 50 | 4480.2902  | Root MSE      | = | 59.814 |

| csat    | Coef.     | Std. Err. | t     | P> t  | [95% Conf. Interval] |
|---------|-----------|-----------|-------|-------|----------------------|
| expense | -.0222756 | .0060371  | -3.69 | 0.001 | -.0344077 - .0101436 |
| _cons   | 1060.732  | 32.7009   | 32.44 | 0.000 | 995.0175 1126.447    |

### 12.3.4 OLS assumptions

- Assumption 1: Specification is appropriate (i.e., no relevant omitted variables)
- Assumption 2: Homoscedasticity (The variance around the regression model is the same for all values of the predictor variable)
- Assumption 3: Errors are independent
- Assumption 4: Relationships are linear
- Assumption 5: Normal Distribution of errors (only needed for inference)

#### 12.3.4.1 Specification

The model specification should be informed by theory - i.e., our substantive knowledge of the subject matter. It's important to include all relevant predictors in the model, otherwise our estimates will be biased.

- Goodness of fit

#### 12.3.4.2 Homoscedasticity

```
rvfplot
```

```
rvfplot
```

#### 12.3.4.3 Normality

- A simple histogram of the residuals can be informative

```
// graph the residual values of csat
predict resid, residual
histogram resid, normal

predict resid, residual
histogram resid, normal
(bin=7, start=-131.81111, width=38.329487)
```

## 12.4 Multiple Regression

- Just keep adding predictors
- Let's try adding some predictors to the model of SAT scores
- income :: % students taking SATs
- percent :: % adults with HS diploma (high)

#### 12.4.1 Preliminaries

- As before, start with descriptive statistics and correlations

```
// descriptive statistics and correlations
sum income percent high
pwcorr csat expense income percent high
```

```
sum income percent high
```

| Variable | Obs | Mean     | Std. Dev. | Min    | Max    |
|----------|-----|----------|-----------|--------|--------|
| income   | 51  | 33.95657 | 6.423134  | 23.465 | 48.618 |
| percent  | 51  | 35.76471 | 26.19281  | 4      | 81     |
| high     | 51  | 76.26078 | 5.588741  | 64.3   | 86.6   |

```
pwcorr csat expense income percent high
```

|         | csat    | expense | income | percent | high   |
|---------|---------|---------|--------|---------|--------|
| csat    | 1.0000  |         |        |         |        |
| expense | -0.4663 | 1.0000  |        |         |        |
| income  | -0.4713 | 0.6784  | 1.0000 |         |        |
| percent | -0.8758 | 0.6509  | 0.6733 | 1.0000  |        |
| high    | 0.0858  | 0.3133  | 0.5099 | 0.1413  | 1.0000 |

- regress csat on expense, income, percent, and high

```
regress csat expense income percent high
```

```
regress csat expense income percent high
```

| Source   | SS         | df | MS         | Number of obs | = | 51     |
|----------|------------|----|------------|---------------|---|--------|
| Model    | 183354.603 | 4  | 45838.6508 | F(4, 46)      | = | 51.86  |
| Residual | 40659.9067 | 46 | 883.911016 | Prob > F      | = | 0.0000 |
|          |            |    |            | R-squared     | = | 0.8185 |
|          |            |    |            | Adj R-squared | = | 0.8027 |
| Total    | 224014.51  | 50 | 4480.2902  | Root MSE      | = | 29.731 |

| csat    | Coef.     | Std. Err. | t      | P> t  | [95% Conf. Interval] |
|---------|-----------|-----------|--------|-------|----------------------|
| expense | .0045604  | .004384   | 1.04   | 0.304 | -.0042641 .013385    |
| income  | .4437858  | 1.138947  | 0.39   | 0.699 | -1.848795 2.736367   |
| percent | -2.533084 | .2454477  | -10.32 | 0.000 | -3.027145 -2.039024  |
| high    | 2.086599  | .9246023  | 2.26   | 0.029 | .2254712 3.947727    |
| _cons   | 836.6197  | 58.33238  | 14.34  | 0.000 | 719.2027 954.0366    |

## 12.4.2 Exercise 0

### Multiple Regression

Open the datafile, states.dta.

- Select a few variables to use in a multiple regression of your own. Before running the regression, examine descriptive of the variables and generate a few scatterplots.

2. Run your regression
3. Examine the plausibility of the assumptions of normality and homogeneity

## 12.5 Interactions

- What if we wanted to test an interaction between percent & high?
- Option 1: generate product terms by hand

```
// generate product of percent and high
gen percenthigh = percent*high
regress csat expense income percent high percenthigh
```

```
gen percenthigh = percent*high
regress csat expense income percent high percenthigh
```

| Source   | SS         | df | MS         | Number of obs | = | 51     |
|----------|------------|----|------------|---------------|---|--------|
|          |            |    |            | F(5, 45)      | = | 46.11  |
| Model    | 187430.401 | 5  | 37486.0801 | Prob > F      | = | 0.0000 |
| Residual | 36584.1091 | 45 | 812.980201 | R-squared     | = | 0.8367 |
|          |            |    |            | Adj R-squared | = | 0.8185 |
| Total    | 224014.51  | 50 | 4480.2902  | Root MSE      | = | 28.513 |

| csat        | Coef.     | Std. Err. | t     | P> t  | [95% Conf. Interval] |
|-------------|-----------|-----------|-------|-------|----------------------|
| expense     | .0045575  | .0042044  | 1.08  | 0.284 | -.0039107 .0130256   |
| income      | .0887856  | 1.10374   | 0.08  | 0.936 | -2.134261 2.311832   |
| percent     | -8.143002 | 2.516509  | -3.24 | 0.002 | -13.21151 -3.074493  |
| high        | .4240906  | 1.156545  | 0.37  | 0.716 | -1.905311 2.753492   |
| percenthigh | .0740926  | .0330909  | 2.24  | 0.030 | .0074441 .1407411    |
| _cons       | 972.525   | 82.5457   | 11.78 | 0.000 | 806.2695 1138.781    |

- What if we wanted to test an interaction between percent & high?
- Option 2: Let Stata do your dirty work

```
// use the # sign to represent interactions
regress csat percent high c.percent#c.high
// same as . regress csat c.percent##high
```

```
regress csat percent high c.percent#c.high
```

| Source | SS         | df | MS         | Number of obs | = | 51     |
|--------|------------|----|------------|---------------|---|--------|
|        |            |    |            | F(3, 47)      | = | 77.39  |
| Model  | 186302.091 | 3  | 62100.6971 | Prob > F      | = | 0.0000 |

|            |            |           |            |               |                      |           |
|------------|------------|-----------|------------|---------------|----------------------|-----------|
| Residual   | 37712.4186 | 47        | 802.391885 | R-squared     | =                    | 0.8317    |
|            |            |           |            | Adj R-squared | =                    | 0.8209    |
| Total      | 224014.51  | 50        | 4480.2902  | Root MSE      | =                    | 28.327    |
| <hr/>      |            |           |            |               |                      |           |
| csat       | Coef.      | Std. Err. | t          | P> t          | [95% Conf. Interval] |           |
|            |            |           |            |               |                      |           |
| percent    | -8.15717   | 2.488388  | -3.28      | 0.002         | -13.16316            | -3.151179 |
| high       | .6674578   | 1.082615  | 0.62       | 0.541         | -1.510482            | 2.845398  |
|            |            |           |            |               |                      |           |
| c.percent# |            |           |            |               |                      |           |
| c.high     | .0764271   | .0324919  | 2.35       | 0.023         | .0110619             | .1417924  |
|            |            |           |            |               |                      |           |
| _cons      | 974.9354   | 81.98078  | 11.89      | 0.000         | 810.0113             | 1139.859  |

---

### 12.5.1 Categorical Predictors

- For categorical variables, we first need to dummy code
- Use region as example
  - Option 1: create dummy codes before fitting regression model

```
// create region dummy codes using tab
tab region, gen(region)
```

```
//regress csat on region
regress csat region1 region2 region3
```

```
tab region, gen(region)
```

| Geographica |    | Freq.  | Percent | Cum. |
|-------------|----|--------|---------|------|
| 1 region    |    |        |         |      |
| West        | 13 | 26.00  | 26.00   |      |
| N. East     | 9  | 18.00  | 44.00   |      |
| South       | 16 | 32.00  | 76.00   |      |
| Midwest     | 12 | 24.00  | 100.00  |      |
|             |    |        |         |      |
| Total       | 50 | 100.00 |         |      |

```
regress csat region1 region2 region3
```

|        |            |    |           |               |   |        |
|--------|------------|----|-----------|---------------|---|--------|
| Source | SS         | df | MS        | Number of obs | = | 50     |
|        |            |    |           | F(3, 46)      | = | 9.61   |
| Model  | 82049.4719 | 3  | 27349.824 | Prob > F      | = | 0.0000 |

|          |            |           |            |               |                      |           |
|----------|------------|-----------|------------|---------------|----------------------|-----------|
| Residual | 130911.908 | 46        | 2845.91105 | R-squared     | =                    | 0.3853    |
|          |            |           |            | Adj R-squared | =                    | 0.3452    |
| Total    | 212961.38  | 49        | 4346.15061 | Root MSE      | =                    | 53.347    |
| <hr/>    |            |           |            |               |                      |           |
| csat     | Coef.      | Std. Err. | t          | P> t          | [95% Conf. Interval] |           |
|          |            |           |            |               |                      |           |
| region1  | -63.77564  | 21.35592  | -2.99      | 0.005         | -106.7629            | -20.7884  |
| region2  | -120.5278  | 23.52385  | -5.12      | 0.000         | -167.8788            | -73.17672 |
| region3  | -80.08333  | 20.37225  | -3.93      | 0.000         | -121.0906            | -39.07611 |
| _cons    | 1010.083   | 15.39998  | 65.59      | 0.000         | 979.0848             | 1041.082  |

---

- For categorical variables, we first need to dummy code
- Use region as example
  - Option 2: Let Stata do it for you

```
// regress csat on region using fvvarlist syntax
// see help fvvarlist for details
regress csat i.region
```

```
regress csat i.region
```

|          |            |           |            |               |                      |           |
|----------|------------|-----------|------------|---------------|----------------------|-----------|
| Source   | SS         | df        | MS         | Number of obs | =                    | 50        |
|          |            |           |            | F(3, 46)      | =                    | 9.61      |
| Model    | 82049.4719 | 3         | 27349.824  | Prob > F      | =                    | 0.0000    |
| Residual | 130911.908 | 46        | 2845.91105 | R-squared     | =                    | 0.3853    |
|          |            |           |            | Adj R-squared | =                    | 0.3452    |
| Total    | 212961.38  | 49        | 4346.15061 | Root MSE      | =                    | 53.347    |
| <hr/>    |            |           |            |               |                      |           |
| csat     | Coef.      | Std. Err. | t          | P> t          | [95% Conf. Interval] |           |
|          |            |           |            |               |                      |           |
| region   |            |           |            |               |                      |           |
| N. East  | -56.75214  | 23.13285  | -2.45      | 0.018         | -103.3161            | -10.18813 |
| South    | -16.30769  | 19.91948  | -0.82      | 0.417         | -56.40353            | 23.78814  |
| Midwest  | 63.77564   | 21.35592  | 2.99       | 0.005         | 20.7884              | 106.7629  |
|          |            |           |            |               |                      |           |
| _cons    | 946.3077   | 14.79582  | 63.96      | 0.000         | 916.5253             | 976.0901  |

---

### 12.5.2 Exercise 1

#### Regression, Categorical Predictors, & Interactions

Open the datafile, states.dta.

1. Add on to the regression equation that you created in exercise 1 by generating an interaction term and testing the interaction.
2. Try adding a categorical variable to your regression (remember, it will need to be dummy coded). You could use region or generate a new categorical variable from one of the continuous variables in the dataset.

## 12.6 Exporting & saving results

### 12.6.1 Regression tables

- Usually when we're running regression, we'll be testing multiple models at a time
- Can be difficult to compare results
- Stata offers several user-friendly options for storing and viewing regression output from multiple models
- First, download the necessary packages:

```
// install outreg2 package
findit outreg2
```

### 12.6.2 Saving & replaying

- You can store regression model results in Stata

```
// fit two regression models and store the results
regress csat expense income percent high
estimates store Model1
regress csat expense income percent high i.region
estimates store Model2

regress csat expense income percent high
```

| Source   | SS         | df | MS         | Number of obs | = | 51     |
|----------|------------|----|------------|---------------|---|--------|
| Model    | 183354.603 | 4  | 45838.6508 | F(4, 46)      | = | 51.86  |
| Residual | 40659.9067 | 46 | 883.911016 | Prob > F      | = | 0.0000 |
|          |            |    |            | R-squared     | = | 0.8185 |
| Total    | 224014.51  | 50 | 4480.2902  | Adj R-squared | = | 0.8027 |
|          |            |    |            | Root MSE      | = | 29.731 |

| csat    | Coef.     | Std. Err. | t      | P> t  | [95% Conf. Interval] |
|---------|-----------|-----------|--------|-------|----------------------|
| expense | .0045604  | .004384   | 1.04   | 0.304 | -.0042641 .013385    |
| income  | .4437858  | 1.138947  | 0.39   | 0.699 | -1.848795 2.736367   |
| percent | -2.533084 | .2454477  | -10.32 | 0.000 | -3.027145 -2.039024  |
| high    | 2.086599  | .9246023  | 2.26   | 0.029 | .2254712 3.947727    |

```

_cons | 836.6197 58.33238 14.34 0.000 719.2027 954.0366
-----+
estimates store Model1
regress csat expense income percent high i.region

Source | SS df MS Number of obs = 50
-----+----- F(7, 42) = 51.07
Model | 190570.293 7 27224.3275 Prob > F = 0.0000
Residual | 22391.0874 42 533.121128 R-squared = 0.8949
-----+----- Adj R-squared = 0.8773
Total | 212961.38 49 4346.15061 Root MSE = 23.089
-----+
csat | Coef. Std. Err. t P>|t| [95% Conf. Interval]
-----+----- expense | -.004375 .0044603 -0.98 0.332 -.0133763 .0046263
income | 1.306164 .950279 1.37 0.177 -.6115765 3.223905
percent | -2.965514 .2496481 -11.88 0.000 -3.469325 -2.461704
high | 3.544804 1.075863 3.29 0.002 1.373625 5.715983
|
region |
N. East | 80.81334 15.4341 5.24 0.000 49.66607 111.9606
South | 33.61225 13.94521 2.41 0.020 5.469676 61.75483
Midwest | 32.15421 10.20145 3.15 0.003 11.56686 52.74157
|
_cons | 724.8289 79.25065 9.15 0.000 564.8946 884.7631
-----+
estimates store Model2

```

- Stored models can be recalled

```

// Display Model1
estimates replay Model1

```

```
estimates replay Model1
```

```
-----+
Model Model1
-----+
```

```

Source | SS df MS Number of obs = 51
-----+----- F(4, 46) = 51.86
Model | 183354.603 4 45838.6508 Prob > F = 0.0000
Residual | 40659.9067 46 883.911016 R-squared = 0.8185
-----+----- Adj R-squared = 0.8027
Total | 224014.51 50 4480.2902 Root MSE = 29.731
-----+

```

|  | csat    | Coef.     | Std. Err. | t      | P> t  | [95% Conf. Interval] |
|--|---------|-----------|-----------|--------|-------|----------------------|
|  | expense | .0045604  | .004384   | 1.04   | 0.304 | -.0042641 .013385    |
|  | income  | .4437858  | 1.138947  | 0.39   | 0.699 | -1.848795 2.736367   |
|  | percent | -2.533084 | .2454477  | -10.32 | 0.000 | -3.027145 -2.039024  |
|  | high    | 2.086599  | .9246023  | 2.26   | 0.029 | .2254712 3.947727    |
|  | _cons   | 836.6197  | 58.33238  | 14.34  | 0.000 | 719.2027 954.0366    |

- Stored models can be compared

```
// Compare Model1 and Model2 coefficients
estimates table Model1 Model2

estimates table Model1 Model2

-----
```

| Variable | Model1     | Model2     |
|----------|------------|------------|
| expense  | .00456044  | -.00437502 |
| income   | .44378583  | 1.3061642  |
| percent  | -2.5330843 | -2.9655142 |
| high     | 2.0865991  | 3.5448038  |
| region   |            |            |
| N. East  |            | 80.813342  |
| South    |            | 33.612251  |
| Midwest  |            | 32.154215  |
| _cons    | 836.61966  | 724.82886  |

### 12.6.3 Exporting to Excel

- Avoid human error when transferring coefficients into tables
- Excel can be used to format publication-ready tables

```
outreg2 [Model1 Model2] using csatprediction.xls, replace
```

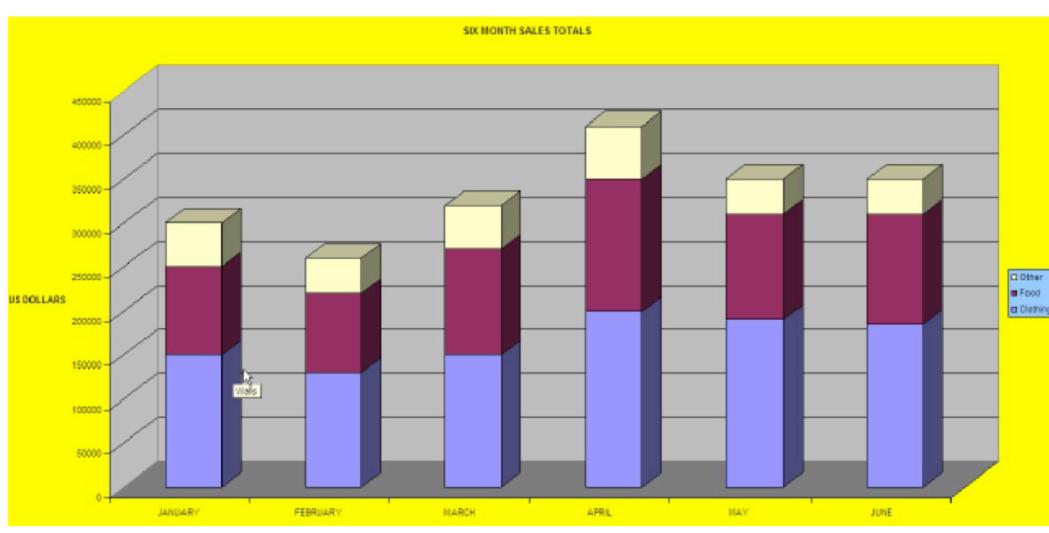
```
outreg2 [Model1 Model2] using csatprediction.xls, replace
~/ado/plus/o/outreg2.ado
csatprediction.xls
dir : seeout
```

## 12.7 Graphing in Stata

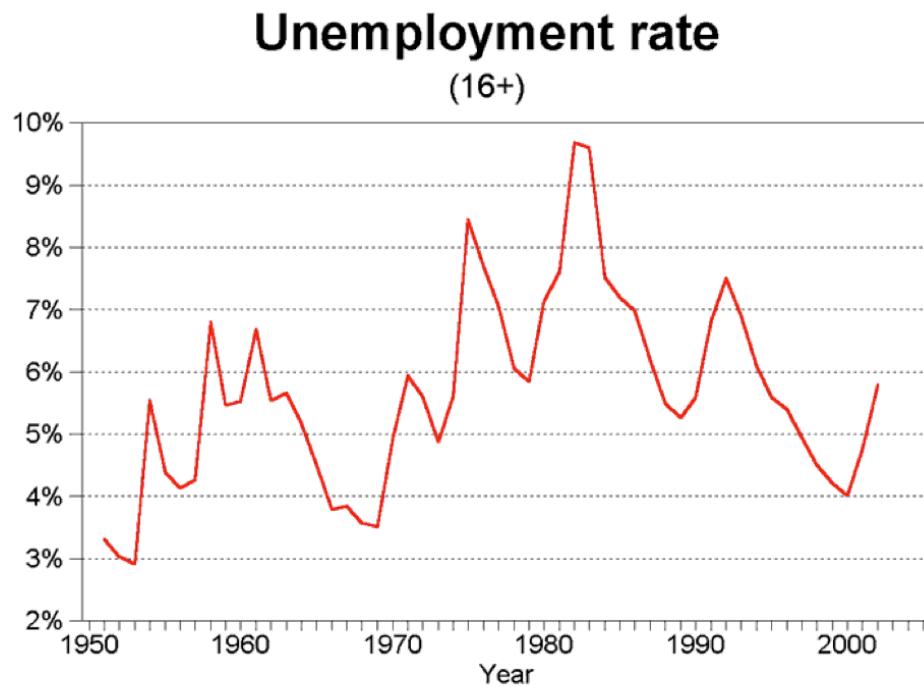
### 12.7.1 Graphing Strategies

- Keep it simple
- Labels, labels, labels!!
- Avoid cluttered graphs
- Every part of the graph should be meaningful
- Avoid:
  - Shading
  - Distracting colors
  - Decoration
- Always know what you're working with before you get started
  - Recognize scale of data
  - If you're using multiple variables – how do their scales align?
- Before any graphing procedure review variables with `codebook`, `sum`, `tab`, etc.
- HELPFUL STATA HINT: If you want your command to go on multiple lines use `///` at end of each line

### 12.7.2 Terrible Graph



### 12.7.3 Much Better Graph



## 12.8 Univariate Graphics

### 12.8.1 Our First Dataset

- Time Magazine Public School Poll
  - Based on survey of 1,000 adults in U.S.
  - Conducted in August 2010
  - Questions regarding feelings about parental involvement, teachers union, current potential for reform
- Open Stata and call up the datafile for today

```
// Step 1: tell Stata where to find data:  
cd "~/StataGraphics/dataSets"  
// Step 2: call up our dataset:  
use TimePollPubSchools.dta
```

### 12.8.2 Single Continuous Variables

#### Example: Histograms

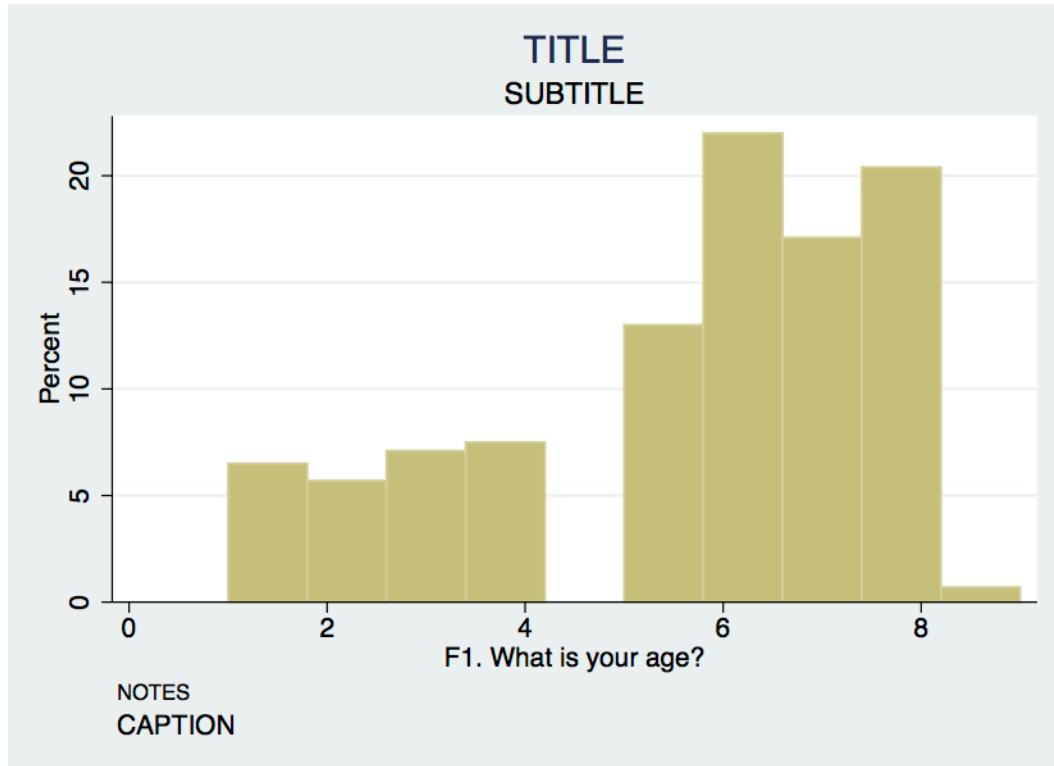
- Stata assumes you're working with continuous data
- Very simple syntax:
  - `hist varname`
  - Put a comma after your varname and start adding options
    - `bin(#)` : change the number of bars that the graph displays
    - `normal` : overlay normal curve
    - `addlabels` : add actual values to bars

#### Histogram Options

- To change the numeric depiction of your data add these options after the comma
  - Choose one: density fraction frequency percent
- Be sure to properly describe your histogram:
  - `title(insert name of graph)`
  - `subtitle(insert subtitle of graph)`
  - `note(insert note to appear at bottom of graph)`
  - `caption(insert caption to appear below notes)`

#### Histogram Example

```
hist F1, bin(10) percent title(TITLE) ///
subtitle(SUBTITLE) caption(CAPTION) note(NOTES)
```

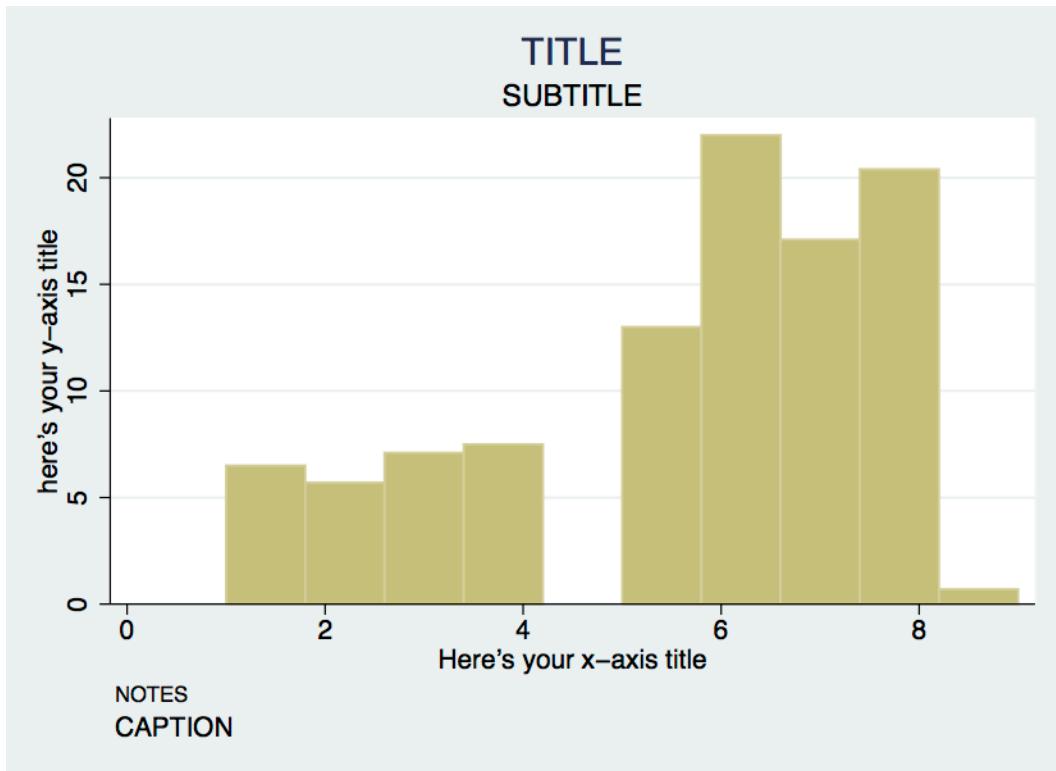


### Axis Titles & Labels

- Axis title options (default is variable label):
  - `xtitle(insert x axis name)`
  - `ytitle(insert y axis name)`
- Don't want axis titles?
  - `xtitle("")`
  - `ytitle("")`
- Add labels to X or Y axis:
  - `xlabel(insert x axis label)`
  - `ylabel(insert y axis label)`
- Tell Stata how to scale each axis
  - `xlabel(start#(increment)end#)`
  - `xlabel(0(5)100)`
- This would label x-axis from 0-100 in increments of 5

### Axis Labels Example

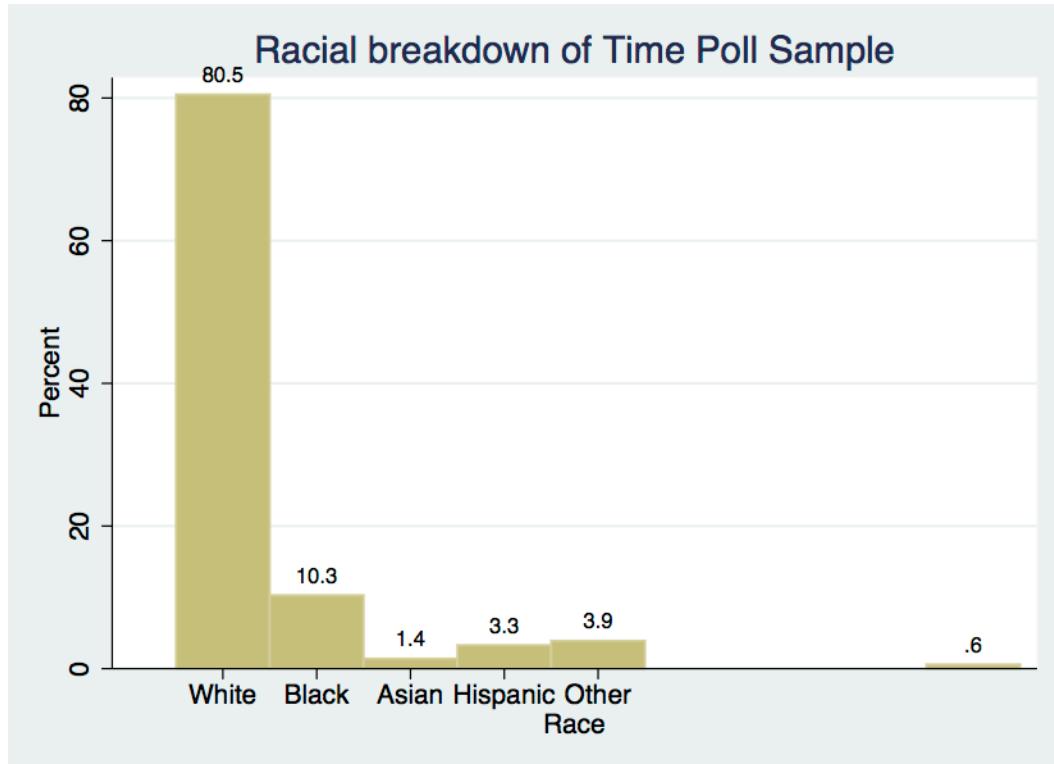
```
hist F1, bin(10) percent title(TITLE) subtitle(SUBTITLE) ///
    caption(CAPTION) note(NOTES) ///
    xtitle(Here's your x-axis title) ///
    ytitle(here's your y-axis title)
```



### 12.8.3 Single Categorical Variables

- We can also use the `hist` command for bar graphs
  - Simply specify “discrete” with options
- Stata will produce one bar for each level (i.e. category) of variable
- Use `xlabel` command to insert names of individual categories

```
hist F4, title(Racial breakdown of Time Poll Sample) xtitle(Race) ///
    ytitle(Percent) xlabel(1 "White" 2 "Black" 3 "Asian" 4 "Hispanic" ///
    5 "Other") discrete percent addlabels
```



#### 12.8.4 Exercise 2

##### Histograms Bar Graphs

1. Open the datafile, NatNeighCrimeStudy.dta.
2. Create a histogram of the tract-level poverty rate (variable name: T\_POVRTY).
3. Insert the normal curve over the histogram
4. Change the numeric representation on the Y-axis to “percent”
5. Add appropriate titles to the overall graph and the x axis and y axis. Also, add a note that states the source of this data.
6. Open the datafile, TimePollPubSchools.dta
7. Create a histogram of the question, “What grade would you give your child’s school” (variable name: Q11). Be sure to tell Stata that this is a categorical variable.
8. Format this graph so that the axes have proper titles and labels. Also, add an appropriate title to the overall graph that goes onto two lines. Add a note stating the source of the data.

## 12.9 Bivariate Graphics

### 12.9.1 Next Dataset:

- National Neighborhood Crime Study (NNCS)
  - N=9,593 census tracts in 2000
  - Explore sources of variation in crime for communities in the United States
  - Tract-level data: crime, social disorganization, disadvantage, socioeconomic inequality
  - City-level data: labor market, socioeconomic inequality, population change

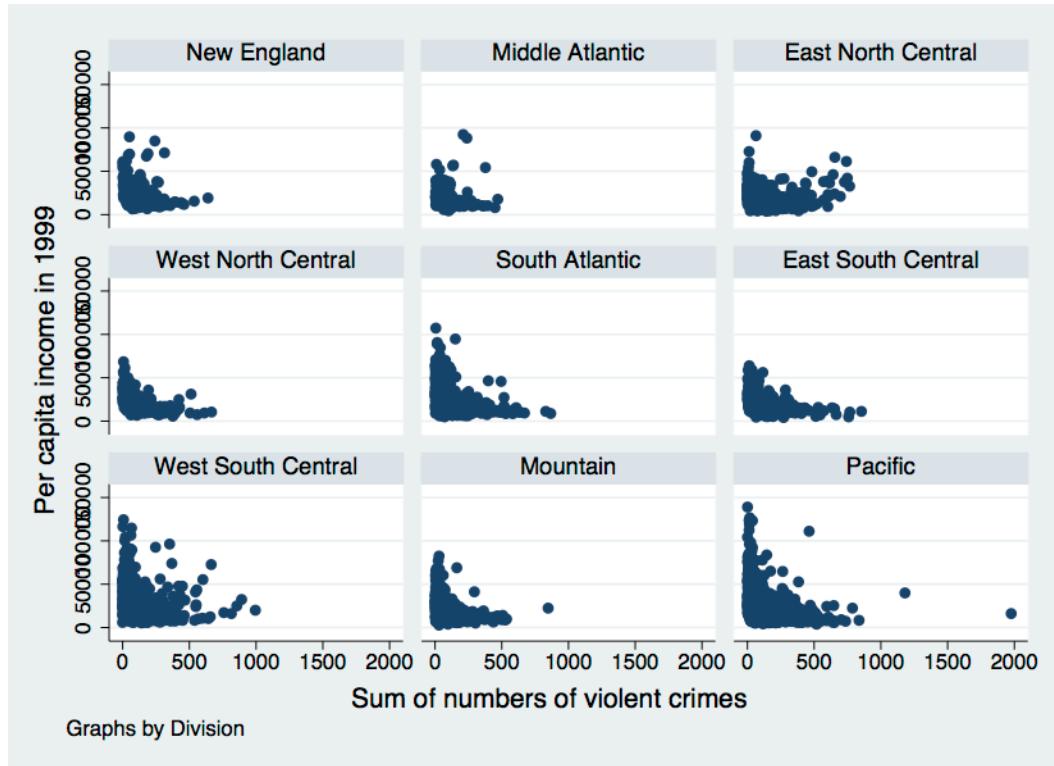
### 12.9.2 The Twoway Family

- `twoway` is basic Stata command for all twoway graphs
- Use `twoway` anytime you want to make comparisons among variables
- Can be used to combine graphs (i.e., overlay one graph with another)
  - e.g., insert line of best fit over a scatter plot
- Some basic examples:

```
use NatNeighCrimeStudy.dta
twoway scatter T_PERCAP T_VIOLNT
twoway dropline T_PERCAP T_VIOLNT
twoway lfitci T_PERCAP T_VIOLNT
```

#### Twoway & the by Statement

```
twoway scatter T_PERCAP T_VIOLNT, by(DIVISION)
```



### Two-way Title Options

- Same title options as with histogram
  - `title(insert name of graph)`
  - `subtitle(insert subtitle of graph)`
  - `note(insert note to appear at bottom of graph)`
  - `caption(insert caption to appear below notes)`

### Two-way Title Options Example

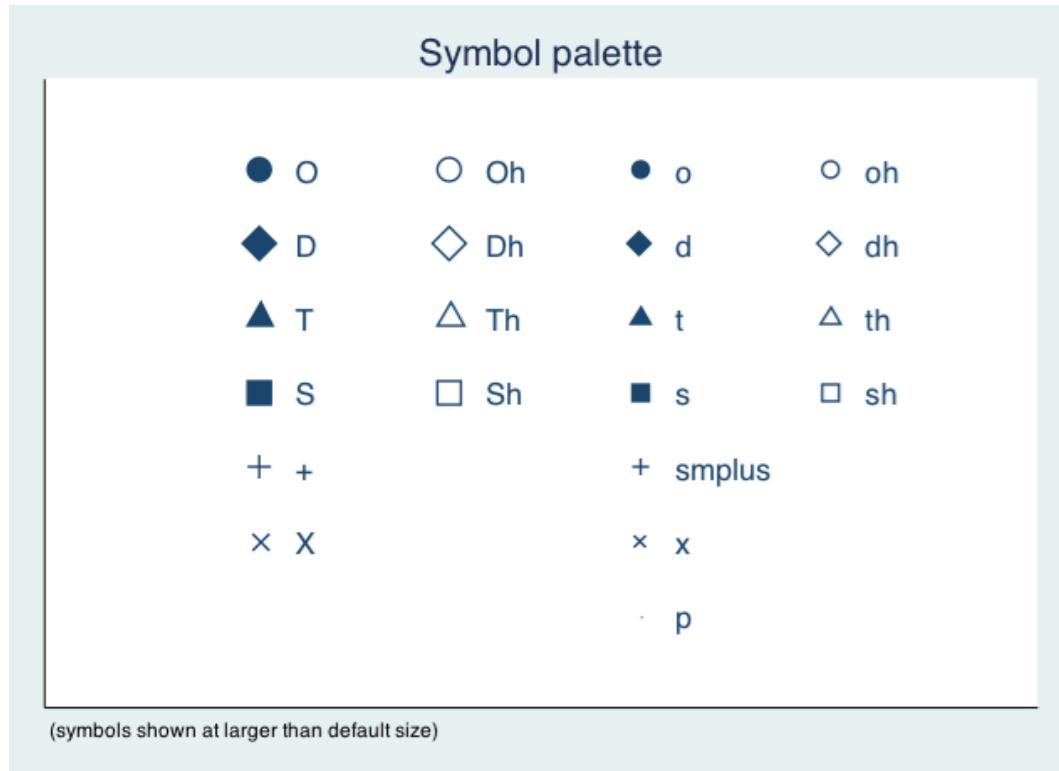
```
twoway scatter T_PERCAP T_VIOLNT, ///
    title(Comparison of Per Capita Income ///
        and Violent Crime Rate at Tract level) ///
    xtitle(Violent Crime Rate) ytitle(Per Capita Income) ///
    note(Source: National Neighborhood Crime Study 2000)
```

- The title is a bit cramped—let's fix that:

```
twoway scatter T_PERCAP T_VIOLNT, ///
    title("Comparison of Per Capita Income" ///
    "and Violent Crime Rate at Tract level") ///
    xtitle(Violent Crime Rate) ytitle(Per Capita Income) ///
    note(Source: National Neighborhood Crime Study 2000)
```

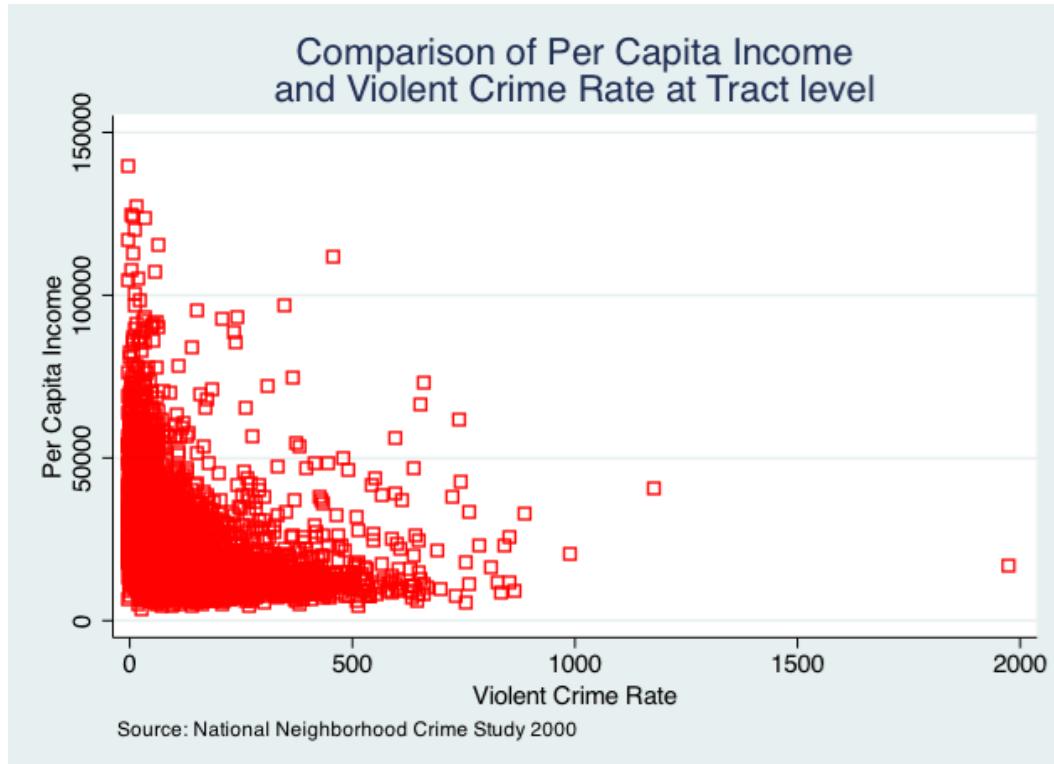
### Two-way Symbol Options

- A variety of symbol shapes are available: use palette symbolpalette to see them and msymbol() to set them



### Two-way Symbol Options

```
twoway scatter T_PERCAP T_VIOLNT, ///
    title("Comparison of Per Capita Income" /// 
    "and Violent Crime Rate at Tract level") ///
    xtitle(Violent Crime Rate) ytitle(Per Capita Income) ///
    note(Source: National Neighborhood Crime Study 2000) ///
    msymbol(Sh) mcolor("red")
```



### 12.9.3 Overlaying Twoway Graphs

- Very simple to combine multiple graphs...just put each graph command in parentheses
  - `twoway (scatter var1 var2) (lfit var1 var2)`
- Add individual options to each graph within the parentheses
- Add overall graph options as usual following the comma
  - `twoway (scatter var1 var2) (lfit var1 var2), options`

#### Overlaying Points & Lines

```
twoway (scatter T_PERCAP T_VIOLNT) ///
(lfit T_PERCAP T_VIOLNT), ///
title("Comparison of Per Capita Income" ///
"and Violent Crime Rate at Tract level") ///
xtitle(Violent Crime Rate) ytitle(Per Capita Income) ///
note(Source: National Neighborhood Crime Study 2000)
```

#### Overlaying Points & Labels

```
twoway (scatter T_PERCAP T_VIOLNT if T_VIOLNT==1976, ///
    mlabel(CITY)) (scatter T_PERCAP T_VIOLNT), ///
    title("Comparison of Per Capita Income" /// 
        "and Violent Crime Rate at Tract level") ///
    xlabel(0(200)2400) note(Source: National Neighborhood ///
        Crime Study 2000) legend(off)
```

### 12.9.4 Exercise 3

#### The TwoWay Family

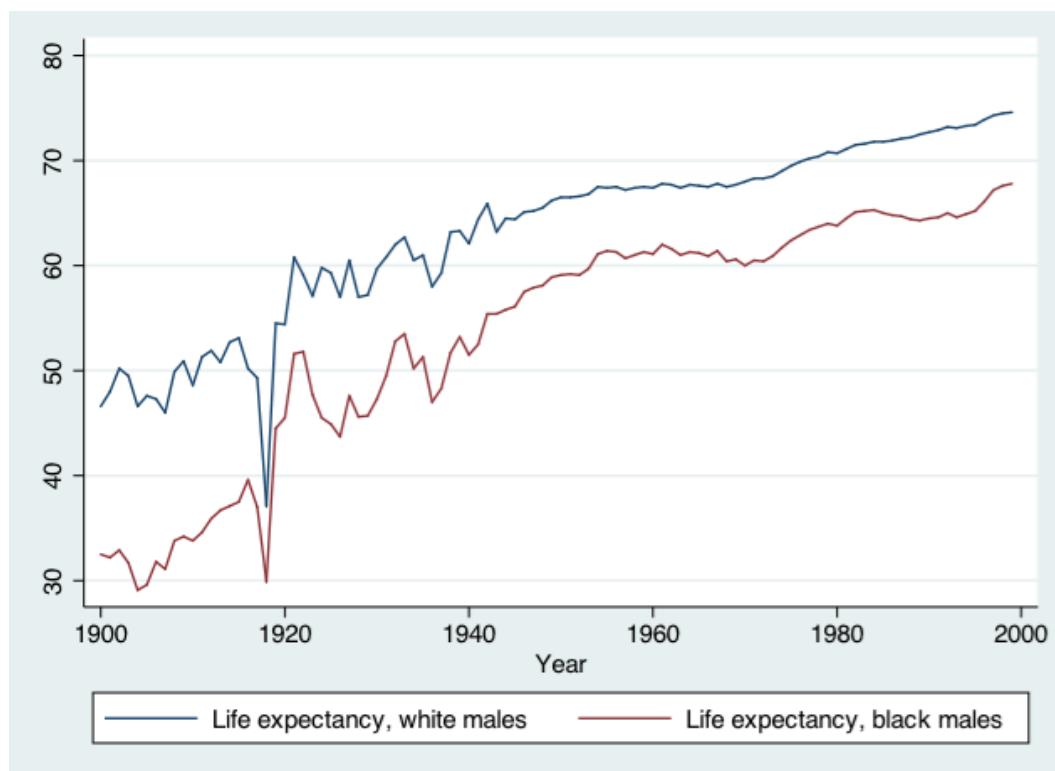
Open the datafile, NatNeighCrimeStudy.dta.

1. Create a basic twoway scatterplot that compares the city unemployment rate (`C_UNEMP`) to the percent secondary sector low-wage jobs (`C_SSLOW`)
2. Generate the same scatterplot, but this time, divide the plot by the dummy variable indicating whether the city is located in the south or not (`C_SOUTH`)
3. Change the color of the symbol that you use in this scatter plot
4. Change the type of symbol you use to a marker of your choice
5. Notice in your scatterplot that is broken down by `C_SOUTH` that there is an outlier in the upper right hand corner of the “Not South” graph. Add the city name label to this marker.
6. Review the options available under “help twowayoptions” and change one aspect of your graph using an option that we haven’t already reviewed

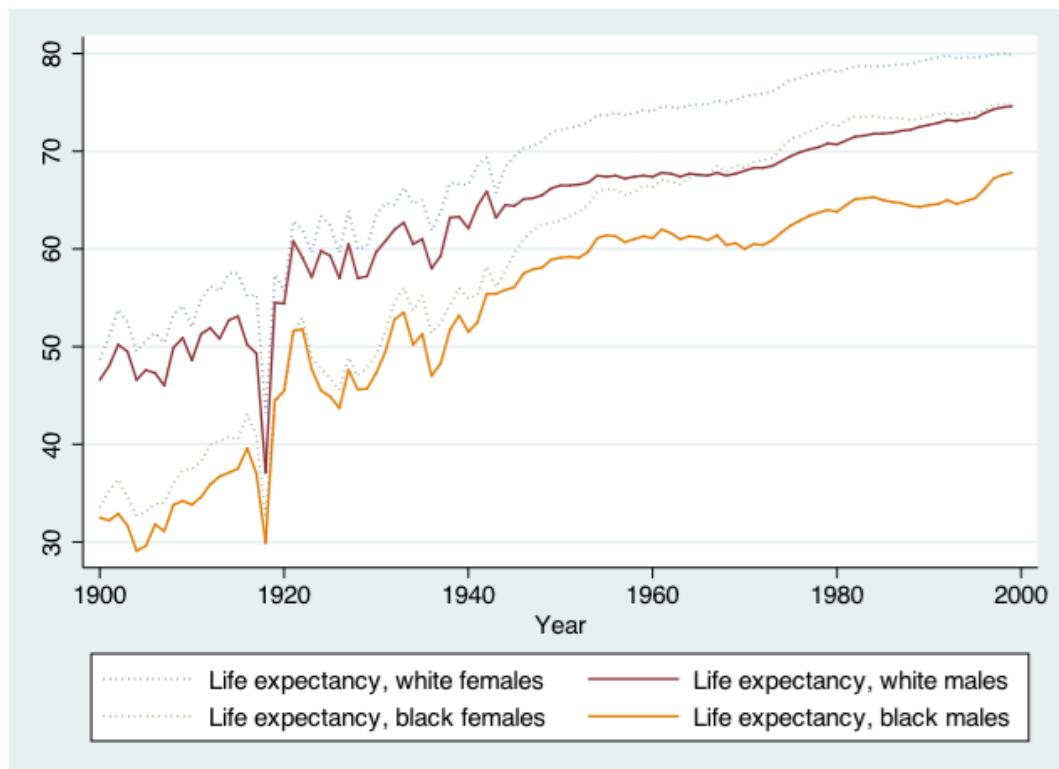
## 12.10 Twoway Line Graphs

- Line graphs helpful for a variety of data
  - Especially any type of time series data
- We’ll use data on US life expectancy from 1900-1999
  - `webuse uslifeexp, clear`

```
webuse uslifeexp, clear
twoway (line le_wm year, mcolor("red")) ///
    (line le_bm year, mcolor("green"))
```

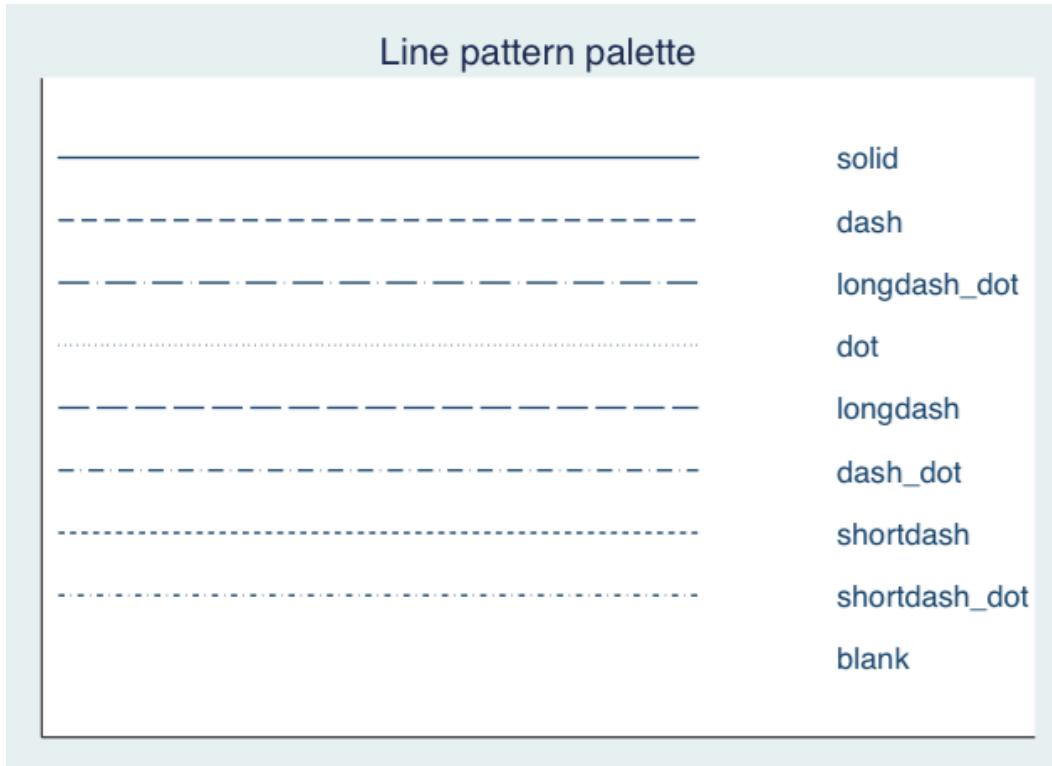


```
twoway (line (le_wfemail le_wmale le_bf le_bm) year, ///
lpattern(dot solid dot solid))
```



### Stata Graphing Lines

palette linepalette



## 12.11 Exporting Graphs

- From Stata, right click on image and select “save as” or try syntax:
  - `graph export myfig.esp, replace`
- In Microsoft Word: insert -> picture -> from file
  - Or, right click on graph in Stata and copy and paste into MS Word

## 12.12 Exercise Solutions

### 12.12.1 Ex 0: prototype

\*\*

### 12.12.2 Ex 1: prototype

\*\*

### 12.12.3 Ex 2: prototype

\*\*

### 12.12.4 Ex 3: prototype

\*\*

## 12.13 Wrap-up

### 12.13.1 Feedback

These workshops are a work in progress, please provide any feedback to: [help@iq.harvard.edu](mailto:help@iq.harvard.edu)

### 12.13.2 Resources

- IQSS
  - Workshops: <https://dss.iq.harvard.edu/workshop-materials>
  - Data Science Services: <https://dss.iq.harvard.edu/>
  - Research Computing Environment: <https://iqss.github.io/dss-rce/>
- HBS
  - Research Computing Services workshops: <https://training.rcs.hbs.org/workshops>
  - Other HBS RCS resources: <https://training.rcs.hbs.org/workshop-materials>
  - RCS consulting email: <mailto:research@hbs.edu>
- Stata
  - UCLA website: <http://www.ats.ucla.edu/stat/Stata/>
  - Stata website: <http://www.stata.com/help.cgi?contents>
  - Email list: <http://www.stata.com/statalist/>